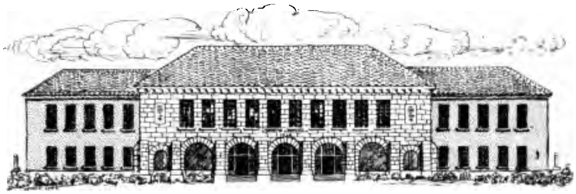
EMENTARY
LATIN

SMITH





The Appian Way.

ELEMENTARY LATIN

BY

M. L. SMITH
HIGH SCHOOL, GALESBURG
ILLINOIS

Omne tulit punctum qui miscuit utile dulci. — HORACE

ALLYN AND BACON
BOSTON NEW YORK CHICAGO
ATLANTA SAN FRANCISCO

NAE

Norwood Press
J. S. Cushing Co. — Berwick & Smith Co.
Norwood, Mass., U.S.A.

PREFACE

Elementary Latin, the 1920 edition of Smith's *Latin Lessons*, retains the general plan of the original book. The changes are in matters of detail and serve to emphasize the four fundamental aims of the previous edition. These aims are to make Latin seem alive; to give the first year study a value for general culture; to minimize the difficulties of beginning Latin; to prepare thoroughly for the second year work.

To carry further the first two aims of the book, the number of illustrations has been nearly doubled, and a description in English is attached to each. These descriptions taken together give a general idea of the life and customs of the Romans.

To minimize the difficulties of beginning Latin, the early lessons have been divided and made shorter, so that the approach to the subject is much more gradual in the new edition than in the old. The first ten lessons of the former edition make twenty in the new book.

Another feature not only lessens the difficulties of the first year but also carries out the fourth aim, which is to help prepare more thoroughly for the second year's work. This new feature is the introduction of forty passages in connected Latin. These begin in the fifth lesson and continue throughout the book. They are supplemented by the Story of Ulysses and by interesting passages from Caesar.

In a word, the author has endeavored to make *Elementary Latin* simpler and more thorough than its predecessor, and at the same time more interesting and attractive.

M. L. S.

GALESBURG, ILLINOIS,
April 8, 1920.

CONTENTS

ILLUSTRATIONS

INTRODUCTION

I. **The Latin Alphabet.** — Latin is the language of the people who inhabited ancient Latium. The chief city of Latium was Rome. The conquests of the Romans made Latin the principal language not only of Italy but of all Western Europe. The modern languages of Italy, France, Spain, and Portugal are derived directly from Latin, and most English words come from it directly or indirectly.

Not only have English and Latin many similar words and constructions, but the Latin alphabet is the same as the English, except that it has no **j** and no **w**. **I** is generally a consonant between vowels, and at the beginning of a word before a vowel: **eius, iubeō.**

(*a*) The vowels are **a, e, i, o, u, y.**
(*b*) The diphthongs are **ae, au, oe, ei, eu, ui.**
(*c*) The double consonants are **x** (= *cs* or *gs*) and **z** (= *ds*).

II. **Vowels.** — English vowels have various sounds, as *a* in *fate*, *fat*, *far*, and *fall*. But Latin vowel sounds are simple and uniform.

The *quantity* of a vowel refers to the length of time given to its pronunciation. A vowel is either long or short. Twice as much time should be given to the pronunciation of a long vowel as to a short one. A long vowel is marked ¯. The sounds are as follows:

LONG	SHORT
ā as in *father*: **lātus.**	**a** as in *idea*: **ab.**
ē as in *they*: **lātē.**	**e** as in *net*: **et.**
ī as in *machine*: **dīcō.**	**i** as in *cigar*: **in.**
ō as in *old*: **mōns.**	**o** as in *wholly*: **rosa.**
ū as in *rude*: **mūrus.**	**u** as in *put*: **sub.**

III. **Diphthongs.** — Latin diphthongs are easy to learn. They are always long and each has always the same sound, so that a pupil does not have the trouble a foreigner has in learning to pronounce English *hear*, *heard*, *head*, and *heart*.

ae like *ai* in *aisle:* **prae.**
au like *ow* in *how:* **laudō.**
oe like *oi* in *oil:* **proelium.**
ei like *ei* in *reign:* **hei.**
eu like *eu* in *feud:* **neuter.**
ui like *we:* **cui** (kwe).

IV. **Consonants.** — Latin consonants, except *v*, *x*, and *i*, are pronounced as in English. Some English consonants have more than one sound, but each Latin consonant has only one.

c like *c* in *can:* **castra.**
g like *g* in *get:* **gerō.**
s like *s* in *yes:* **cōnsul.**
t like *t* in *tin:* **tertia.** (Never soft like *sh.*)
v like *w* in *went:* **ventus.**
z like *dz* in *adze.*
i (consonant) has the sound of *y* in *yet:* **iubeō.**
ch has the sound of *k:* **pulcher.**
bs and **bt** have the sound of *ps* and *pt:* **urbs, obtineō.**

V. **Quantity of Vowels.** — The quantity of vowels should be learned by observation. A few rules, however, are given:

(*a*) A vowel is long before **nf, ns, nx,** and **nct**; also when it is the result of contraction.
(*b*) A vowel is short before another vowel or **h**, and before **nd** or **nt.**

VI. **Syllables.** — There are as many syllables in Latin words as there are vowels or diphthongs, **mī′les, lau′dant, pu el′la, per suā′dē.**

In the division of words into syllables,

(*a*) A single consonant goes with the following vowel; as in **fe′rō.**
(*b*) If two or more consonants are between two vowels, the division is *generally* made after the first consonant, as **ma gis′ter.**

VII. **Quantity of Syllables.** — A syllable is long or short, according to the time required in pronouncing it.

(*a*) A syllable is long if it contains a long vowel or a diphthong.

(*b*) A syllable is generally long if it contains a short vowel followed by two or more consonants or by *x* or *z*.
(*c*) Otherwise a syllable is short.

VIII. **Accent.** — Unlike English, Latin accent is very simple and uniform.

(*a*) Words of two syllables are always accented on the first, as **tu'ba.**
(*b*) Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult (the next to the last) if that is a long syllable, otherwise on the antepenult (the one before the penult): **Rō mā nō'rum, in'co lae.**

IX. **Gender.**[1] — The gender of the great majority of Latin nouns is determined by the ending of the nominative singular. The rules for the gender of such nouns are given with the various declensions. The following general rules, however, may be a help to pupils in determining gender:

(*a*) Names of males, rivers, winds, and months are masculine.
(*b*) Names of females, trees, and countries are feminine.
(*c*) Indeclinable nouns, infinitives, phrases, and clauses used as nouns are neuter.
(*d*) The gender of most other nouns is determined by the ending of the nominative singular. See §§ 7, 32, 45, etc.

---

[1] Compare § 610.

LATIN LESSONS

LESSON I

THE VALUE OF LATIN

*Labor omnia vincit. — Work wins everything.**

1. English and Latin. — More than half our English words are derived, directly or indirectly, from the Latin. Some, like *labor* and *animal*, come directly with no change. Others, like *cause*, *form*, *note*, are almost exactly like their Latin equivalents (*causa*, *forma*, *nota*). Still others come indirectly, like *people*, *space*, *peace* (*populus*, *spatium*, *pax*).

Many English words which are commonly misspelled offer no difficulty to students of Latin. A few examples are: *library*, from the Latin noun *librarium; laboratory*, from *laboratorium; committee*, from *com-mittere; supersede*, from *super-sedere; accommodate*, from *accommodatus*, the perfect participle of *accommodare;* and *separate*, from the participle of *separare*.

2. An English-Latin Letter. — The value of Latin is well shown in the following letter, written by a business man — a firm believer in Latin — to a doubting pupil.

"Latin is a great help in everything you study. In bookkeeping, you won't confuse *debit* and *credit* if you know their derivation. In botany, agriculture, and nearly all the sciences, most of the names come from the Latin (or Greek).

---

* **Literally:** ***Labor conquers all things.*** **The motto of Oklahoma.**

"But in English — the most everyday, practical study of all — Latin helps you most. If you know Latin, you never misspell *separate*, *preparation*, *precedence*, *laudable*, and so on. Consciously or unconsciously you use it all the time, not only indirectly in fully half the words you speak or write, but directly as well. You see a poster:

High School *versus* **Academy**

Game called at 3 *P.M.*

Do you know the italicized words and letters? In the game only *bona fide* students are allowed to play; others are unfit to represent your *Alma Mater*. You go to the game and pay your money (which has *e pluribus unum* stamped on it) to the manager, who is *ex officio* gatekeeper. Your team beats the other (or *vice versa*) and the captain makes an *ex tempore* speech. You pretend the other team is dead, and you hold a *post mortem* celebration, parading the streets with a big banner with a *facsimile* of the rival school marked *Requiescat in Pace*.

"If the principal opposes athletics, you may argue *pro* and *con(tra)*, urging a *referendum* to the students. A single *lapsus linguae* may spoil your case *in toto*. You may use an effective *a priori* argument, or say there is *prima facie* evidence that football is a good thing; but if you fail to make your point, things remain *in statu quo*, the principal gives his *ultimatum*, and you make your *exit*.

"And so I could go on *ad infinitum* not only about football, but about *fiat* money, *ad valorem* tariff duties, *ex post facto* laws, and *ante bellum* days, when the *per capita* income of the country was less *per annum* than it is now. But you ought to be studying your Latin, instead of reading about it, so I will stop."

LESSON II

THE LATIN CASES

Tempus fugit. — *Time flies.*

3. English and Latin Inflection. — In the last two examples of § 1 (*separate* and *accommodate*) we saw that the perfect passive participle in Latin is not formed as in English by prefixing words like *having been.* Instead, the form is changed merely by varying the ending.

This change of form or ending is called *inflection.*[1] The inflection of verbs is called *conjugation;* that of nouns, pronouns, and adjectives, *declension.* Accurate knowledge of these inflections is of great practical value in English spelling and is essential to intelligent reading of Latin.

4. Declension. — In English the form of a noun changes only in the possessive and the plural. The objective is like the nominative, and the same form is used with a preposition to show other relations.

In Latin a noun usually changes its form not only for the possessive and plural, but for the objective case as well. And many uses which in English are indicated by prepositions are shown in Latin by changing the form of the noun.

These changes in the form are made by adding certain endings to a permanent part of the word which we call the *base.* To *decline* a noun is to give all its different forms in a regular order. These forms taken together are called the *declension* of a noun.

[1] English has some inflection, as *I, me, mine; love, loved, loving;* but there is so little that it is usually called an *uninflected* language.

5. The Cases. — In declining Latin nouns we may give six cases: the **nominative, genitive, dative, accusative, vocative,** and **ablative.** The table below shows their uses and their English equivalents.

Latin case	Use in the sentence	English case
Nominative	Subject	Nominative
Genitive	To denote possession and other relations	Possessive or the objective with *of*
Dative	Indirect object	The objective with *to* or *for*
Accusative	Direct object	Objective
Vocative	Case of address	Nominative independent
Ablative	Adverbial phrases	The objective with *from; with* or *by; in, on,* or *at*

These cases correspond in general to the English, except the ablative, which has three fundamental ideas: (1) that of *separation* (English *from* with the objective), (2) that of *association* (English *with*) or *means* (English *by*), and (3) that of *place where* (English *in, on,* or *at*).

6. *Tell what case in Latin is used to express each noun in the following sentences:*

1. Work wins everything. 2. The boy's books are on the table. 3. Mark gave his pencil to his sister. 4. Caesar was an enemy of the Gauls. 5. The girl gave her friend Julia a rose. 6. Lucius, give your sister that book on the table.

7. The farmer's field was in Gaul. 8. We told a story to the girl. 9. The woman saw many roses in the field. 10. The girl was carrying water from the river. 11. The picture was painted by an artist. 12. He came from the town with a trumpet in his hand.

13. The native land of the boy's friend was Gaul. 14. The girl lent the farmer her father's horse. 15. She went with her brother and found the horse in the field. 16. John, give a glass of water to the man on the horse. 17. In the picture the boy is bringing food from the house and giving it to the soldier. 18. There are beautiful flowers in the forests of Gaul.



A ROMAN AMPHITHEATER IN GAUL.

Gaul and the Gauls are often mentioned in these sentences and throughout the book. The reason is that the story most often read in second year Latin is Caesar's account of his conquest of Gaul. In this story Caesar tells of his battles, many of which were fought on the same fields as battles of the World War; he, too, had a Battle of the Marne. And the trenches with which he fortified his camps were like the modern trenches, and the helmets the Roman soldiers wore resembled the "tin hats" of our American soldiers.

After Caesar had conquered Gaul, the Romans "modernized" it: they built roads, bridges, theaters, arenas, temples, ornamental arches, and waterworks. One of their amphitheaters is shown in the picture above. It is at Nîmes in southern France.

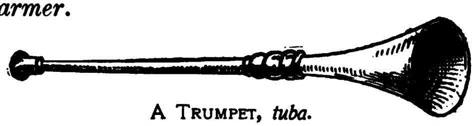
Nîmes was an American "leave area" during the World War and American soldiers played football and basketball in this amphitheater, the interior of which is shown on page 12.

LESSON III

FIRST DECLENSION

Experientia docet. — *Experience is the best teacher.**

7. First declension nouns end in **-a** in the nominative and in **-ae** in the genitive. They are feminine, except a few which are obviously masculine from their meaning; as **agricola**, *farmer*.



A TRUMPET, *tuba*.

The tuba was used by the Romans to give the signal to advance or retreat in battle.

8. **Tu'ba**, fem., *a trumpet*. BASE, **tub-**

CASES	SINGULAR		TERMINATIONS	PLURAL		TERMINATIONS
Nom.	tu'**ba**,	*a trumpet*	**a**	tu'**bae**,	*trumpets*	**ae**
Gen.	tu'**bae**,	*of a trumpet*	**ae**	tub**ā'rum**,	*of trumpets*	**ārum**
Dat.	tu'**bae**,	*to a trumpet*	**ae**	tu'**bīs**,	*to trumpets*	**īs**
Acc.	tu'**bam**,	*a trumpet*	**am**	tu'**bās**,	*trumpets*	**ās**
Abl.	tu'**bā**,	*by* or *with a trumpet*	**ā**	tu'**bīs**,	*by* or *with trumpets*	**īs**

(*a*) The vocative case is omitted in the paradigms, since it is generally like the nominative.

(*b*) The base is obtained by dropping the termination of the genitive singular: **tubae**, base **tub-**.

(*c*) There is no word in Latin for *a*, *an*, or *the*. **Tuba** may be translated *trumpet*, *a trumpet*, *the trumpet*, according to the sense.

(*d*) Note that the ablative singular differs from the nominative singular in having a long ending. Note also which forms are identical.

(*e*) To learn the declension pronounce all the forms with their meanings, being careful of the accent. Write the forms in order, marking all long vowels. Write the declension from memory and then give it orally. Work for accuracy and speed.

* Literally: *Experience teaches.*

9. VOCABULARY

agri'cola, -ae,[1] m., *farmer.*
a'qua, -ae, f., *water.*
fē'mina, -ae, f., *woman.*
Gal'lia, Gal'liae, f., *Gaul.*
lit'tera, -ae, f., *letter* (of the alphabet); pl., *letter, epistle,* or *letters.*
pīctū'ra, -ae, f., *picture.*
prōvin'cia, prōvin'ciae, f., *province.*
puel'la, -ae, f., *girl.*
ter'ra, -ae, f., *earth, land.*
tu'ba, -ae, f., *trumpet, the straight Roman war trumpet.*

(*a*) Decline each of these nouns like **tuba**. Avoid accenting the last syllable.

10. ***What Latin words do the following suggest?***

aquatic terrestrial literature feminine

(*a*) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

EXERCISES

11. ***Pronounce, give case and number, and translate:***[2]

1. Galliā. 2. Litter**īs** (*two ways*). 3. Terra. 4. Prōvinci**ae** (*three ways*). 5. Agricol**ārum**. 6. Fēmin**am**. 7. Terr**ā**. 8. Tub**ārum**. 9. Puell**ae** (*three ways*). 10. Pīctūr**ās**.

12. ***Translate; mark all long vowels in written work:***

1. To the farmers. 2. Of Gaul. 3. For the provinces. 4. The earth (*acc.*). 5. The girls (*acc.*). 6. Of the water. 7. For the women. 8. With a trumpet. 9. By a letter. 10. Of the pictures.

---

[1] In the vocabularies the genitive singular ending is placed after the nominative to indicate the declension.

[2] Remember what was said in § 8, c.

LESSON IV

PRESENT INDICATIVE

*Excelsior. — Onward and upward.**

13. The **person** and **number** of a Latin verb are shown by its ending, which is called its **personal ending**. On account of these personal endings the pronoun subject of a verb is expressed only when it shows emphasis or contrast.

The following are the regular personal endings of the active voice:

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
First Person.	**-ō** *or* **-m**,	*I.*	**-mus**,	*we*
Second Person.	**-s**,	*thou, you.*	**-tis**,	*you.*
Third Person.	**-t**,	*he, she, it.*	**-nt**,	*they.*

14. **Por'tō**, *I carry*

Present Tense

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
1. por'tō,	*I carry.*	1. portā'**mus**,	*we carry.*
2. por'tā**s**,	*you carry.*	2. portā'**tis**	*you carry.*
3. por'ta**t**,	*he carries.*	3. por'ta**nt**,	*they carry.*

(*a*) Latin has no progressive or emphatic forms. **Portō** means *I carry, I am carrying*, or *I do carry*.

15. VOCABULARY

a'mō, *I love.*	**pa'rō**, *I prepare.*
lau'dō, *I praise.*	**por'tō**, *I carry.*
nār'rō, *I tell.*	**pug'nō**, *I fight.*
oc'cupō, *I seize.*	**vo'cō**, *I call.*

(*a*) Conjugate each of these verbs like **portō**.

* The motto of New York State and the title of a poem by Longfellow. Literally: *Higher*.

16. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

laud narrate portable pugnacious

(*a*) **Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.**

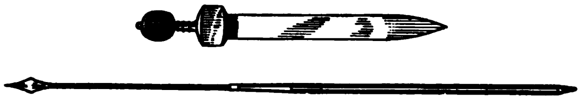
RULES

17. **Subject.** — The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative case.

The girl loves. **Puella amat.**
The farmers are fighting. **Agricolae pugnant.**

18. **Agreement of Verb.** — A verb agrees with its subject in person and number.

The girls are praising. **Puellae laudant.**
The farmer is fighting. **Agricola pugnat.**



Roman Sword and Javelin.

The Romans used the sword, like our bayonet, for hand-to-hand fighting, and the javelin to hurl at the enemy from a distance.

EXERCISES

19. *Translate, and give the construction*[1] *of each noun:*

(*a*) 1. **Laudāmus.** 2. **Vocātis.** 3. **Nārrās.** 4. **Parō.** 5. **Occupant.**

(*b*) 1. **Puella amat.** 2. **Agricolae pugnant.** 3. **Nārrāmus.** 4. **Fēminae laudant.** 5. **Parātis.**

20. *Translate, marking all long vowels:*

(*a*) 1. You (*plural*) fight. 2. They praise. 3. We do love. 4. I am carrying. 5. The farmers are calling.

(*b*) 1. You (*singular*) seize. 2. The woman is calling. 3. We are preparing. 4. The girls are praising. 5. You (*plural*) are telling.

---

[1] **By construction we mean case and rule.**

LESSON V

DIRECT OBJECT

Roma aeterna. — Rome the eternal.

21. Direct Object. — The direct object of a verb is in the accusative case.

I am carrying a picture. **Pīctūram portō.**
We love the girls. **Puellās amāmus.**

22. VOCABULARY

fā'bula, -ae, f., *story.*
lin'gua, -ae, f., *tongue, language.*
memo'ria, memo'riae, f., *memory.*
nōn, adv., *not.*
pa'tria, pa'triae, f., *country, native land.*
ro'sa, -ae, f., *rose.*
sil'va, -ae, f., *forest, woods.*
vi'a, -ae, f., *way, road.*

(*a*) Decline each noun like **tuba.**

23. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

fable patriot linguist silvan rose

(*a*) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

EXERCISES

24. *Translate,*[1] *and give the construction of each noun:*

(*a*) 1. Agricola patriam amat. 2. Puellae pīctūrās portant. 3. Tubās nōn portāmus. 4. Fēminae silvam amant. 5. Agricolās vocās.

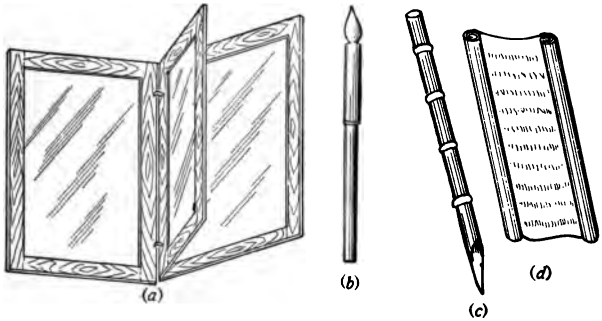
(*b*) 1. Viā. 2. Memoriam. 3. Linguīs. 4. Litterās parāmus. 5. Prōvinciam occupātis.

[1] Notice that the usual Latin order is subject, object, verb.

25. ***Translate, marking the long vowels:***

(*a*) 1. They praise (their)[1] native land. 2. I am carrying the trumpet. 3. A girl is telling a story. 4. The farmers seize the province. 5. You (*sing.*) are preparing the road.

(*b*) 1. The women do not carry water. 2. The farmer is calling the girls. 3. He does not tell stories. 4. You (*plu.*) are seizing Gaul. 5. We love roses.



ROMAN WRITING MATERIALS.

The tablets (*a*), which look like a modern slate, had a hard surface covered with wax. The Romans wrote on this with the stylus (*b*). The writing was rubbed out simply by smoothing over the wax. On the scroll (*d*) a pen (*c*) and ink were used just as we use them to-day.

26. Latin Questions. — When asking a question which may be answered either by *yes* or by *no*, append **-ne** to the emphatic word, usually the first word. The accent is on the syllable before the **-ne**.

The answer *yes* or *no* may be expressed by repeating the sentence to express an affirmative answer, or by repeating it with the negative word **nōn**, *not*, to express a negative answer.

[1] Words in parentheses are not to be translated.

ORAL EXERCISE

27. *Answer these questions in Latin, taking care to change the person of the verb when necessary.*

1. Portās'ne litterās? 2. Fābulās'ne nārrat? 3. Amās'ne patriam? 4. Puellās'ne laudātis? 5. Vocō'ne fēminam?



THE ROMAN ARENA AT NÎMES.

ARĒNA[1] RŌMĀNA

Ecce pīctūra. Arēna[2] est (*it is*). Arēna in Galliā est. Gallia patria[2] agricolārum est. Agricolae Galliam amant.

Rōmānī (*the Romans*) Galliam occupant. Viās parant. Agricolae nōn pugnant. Gallia prōvincia[2] Rōmānōrum[3] est.

---

[1] New words will be found in the General Vocabulary.

These Reading Lessons are put in for additional practice in reading continued narrative and may be omitted by teachers who wish a briefer course.

[2] Predicate nominative (§ 41). [3] *of the Romans.*

LESSON VI

REVIEW

Facta non verba. — *Deeds not words.*

28. Derivatives. — Write all the English words you can that seem to be derived from the following:

aqua	portō	pugnō	terra
vocō	fēmina	laudō	nārrō
lingua	silva	fābula	patria

29. Word Drill. — Give the nominative and genitive singular of the Latin words for the following:

girl	Gaul	native land	farmer
rose	story	forest	trumpet

(*a*) The following words of the first declension have the same form in both Latin and English: **alumna, antenna, arena, formula, inertia, larva, nebula, vertebra.** Look up the meanings of all that you do not know.

30. Form Drill. — 1. Decline **agricola.** 2. Conjugate **occupō** in the present tense.

31. Questions. — 1. What gender are nouns of the first declension? 2. Give the rule for the agreement of a verb with its subject. 3. Give the rule for the direct object. 4. What are the personal endings of a verb? 5. In what three ways may **pugnant** be translated? 6. What two cases are alike in the singular of the first declension? 7. What two are alike in the plural? 8. How are the following pronounced[1]: **ē, e, ae, ī, i, ā, a, v, c**? 9. How is the number of syllables[2] in a Latin word determined? 10. Pronounce the following: **vir, vi′rī, amī′cīs, lēgā′tum, nūn′tius, vi′a, vo′cō, op′pidum, par′vus.**

[1] See Introduction, II, III, and IV. [2] See Introduction, VI.

LESSON VII

SECOND DECLENSION

Errare humanum est. — To err is human.

32. There are **five declensions** of Latin nouns. They are distinguished by the ending of the *genitive singular.* **Second declension** nouns end in **-ī** in the genitive singular. They are *masculine* if they end in **-us**, **-er**, or **-ir** in the nominative singular.

33. **Amī'cus**, m., *friend.* **Pu'er**, m., *boy.* **A'ger**, m., *field.*

	BASE, **amīc-**	BASE, **puer-**	BASE, **agr-**	TERMINATIONS
		SINGULAR		
Nom.	amī'cus	pu'er	a'ger	**us, er**
Gen.	amī'cī	pu'erī	a'grī	**ī**
Dat.	amī'cō	pu'erō	a'grō	**ō**
Acc.	amī'cum	pu'erum	a'grum	**um**
Abl.	amī'cō	pu'erō	a'grō	**ō**
		PLURAL		
Nom.	amī'cī	pu'erī	a'grī	**ī**
Gen.	amīcō'rum	puerō'rum	agrō'rum	**ōrum**
Dat.	amī'cīs	pu'erīs	a'grīs	**īs**
Acc.	amī'cōs	pu'erōs	a'grōs	**ōs**
Abl.	amī'cīs	pu'erīs	a'grīs	**īs**

(*a*) Nouns of the second declension ending in **-us** like **amīcus** have the vocative singular in **-e**, as **amīce**, *O friend!*

(*b*) **Fīlius** and proper nouns ending in **-ius** form their vocative singular in **-ī** instead of **-ie**.

(*c*) Nouns of the second declension ending in **-ius** and **-ium** regularly form their genitive singular in **-ī** instead of **-iī**. The accent rests on the penult, the next to the last syllable.

34. VOCABULARY

a'ger, a'grī, m., *field.*
amī'cus, -ī, m., *friend.*
e'quus, e'quī, m., *horse.*
nūn'tius, nūn'tī, m., *messenger.*
lēgā'tus, -ī, m., *lieutenant: ambassador.*
pu'er, -ī, m., *boy.*
vir, -ī, m., *man.*

35. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

legate	puerile	amicable
equine	virile	agrarian

(*a*) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

RULE

36. Possession.—Possession is denoted by the genitive case.

The man's horse. **Equus virī.**
A friend of the ambassador. **Amīcus lēgātī.**



LEGATUS.

EXERCISES

37. *Translate, and give the construction of each noun:*

(*a*) 1. Lēgātī Galliam occupant. 2. Amīcum agricolae amat. 3. Equōs virī vocāmus. 4. Puer litterās lēgātī portat. 5. Nūntius fēminās vocat.

(*b*) 1. Amīcī agricolārum viam occupant. 2. Linguam prōvinciae nōn laudāmus. 3. Amīcus puellae fābulās nārrat. 4. Fēmina memoriam puellārum laudat. 5. Agrōs virōrum occupātis.

38. *Translate, giving special attention to noun and verb endings:*

(*a*) 1. We seize the provinces. 2. The girl praises the boy's memory. 3. The farmers are carrying the women's

letters. 4. The messenger calls the man's friend. 5. The boy praises the lieutenant's horse.

(*b*) 1. The girl is preparing the man's letter (*plu.*). 2. You (*sing.*) love the forests of Gaul. 3. I am praising the boy's friend. 4. The farmers love the land. 5. The boys do not carry the lieutenants' trumpets.



ROMAN MANUSCRIPTS.

Most of the Latin works that have come down to us were written originally on such rolls as these.

ORAL EXERCISE

39. *Answer these questions in Latin, taking care to change the person of the verb when necessary:*

1. Pugnāsne? 2. Vocantne amīcōs? 3. Laudāsne equum virī? 4. Fābulāsne nārrāmus? 5. Lēgātīne pugnant?

LESSON VIII

CONJUGATION OF *SUM*

Ave, Maria.—Hail, Mary.

40. Sum, *I am*, is an irregular verb.

Present Tense

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1.	**sum,** *I am.*	**sumus,** *we are*
2.	**es,** *thou art (you are).*	**estis,** *you are*
3.	**est,** *he, she, it is.*	**sunt,** *they are*

41. Predicate Nominative. — A noun or pronoun used in the predicate after an intransitive verb is in the nominative case. This is called the *predicate nominative.*[1]

Adjectives are used in this construction the same as nouns and pronouns, and are called *predicate adjectives.*

The boy is a messenger. **Puer est nūntius.**
The girl's friend is a lieutenant. **Amīcus puellae lēgātus est.**

EXERCISES

42. *Read the Latin and translate:*

(*a*) 1. Sumus amīcī. 2. Nūntiī sunt agricolae. 3. Amīcus puerī est lēgātus. 4. Vir est nūntius. 5. Estis fēminae.

(*b*) 1. Es puer. 2. Tubam lēgātī nōn portās. 3. Patria agricolae est Gallia. 4. Estis puellae. 5. Virī sunt agricolae.

43. *Translate, giving special attention to noun and verb endings:*

(*a*) 1. You are farmers. 2. The boys are friends. 3. I am a messenger. 4. They are the farmer's horses. 5. Boys fight.

---

[1] Compare the English use, § 613.

(*b*) 1. The boy praises the girl's memory. 2. You are not the woman's friend. 3. Are the messengers carrying letters? 4. Are you the boy's friend? 5. Gaul is the farmer's native land.

ORAL EXERCISE

44. *Answer these questions in Latin, taking care to change the person of the verb when necessary:*

1. Estne vir lēgātus? 2. Amīcīne sumus? 3. Laudāsne equum amīcī? 4. Lēgātīne estis? 5. Esne amīcus virī?



ROMAN BOXERS.

That Romans enjoyed the art of boxing is shown by these statues, though we to-day may not think much of the "style" displayed. But the bouts were fast and furious, as you can read in Virgil, where there is a long account of an exciting contest between Entellus and Dares.

GALLIA

Gallia est prōvincia. Gallia patria est agricolārum. Agricolae terram et linguam Galliae amant. Occupantne agricolae silvās? Agricolae pugnant et silvās occupant. Puellae Galliae fābulās amant. Puellae litterās parant et portant. Memoriam puellārum laudāmus.

LESSON IX

SECOND DECLENSION, NEUTER

Post proelium, praemium.—After the battle, the reward.

45. Second declension nouns which end in **-um** in the nominative singular are *neuter*.

(*a*) Neuter nouns of all declensions have the ***nominative and accusative cases alike***, and in the plural these cases always end in **-a**.

46. **Bel'lum**, n., *war*. BASE, **bell-**

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
Nom.	bel'lum	um	bel'la	a
Gen.	bel'lī	ī	bellō'rum	ōrum
Dat.	bel'lō	ō	bel'līs	īs
Acc.	bel'lum	um	bel'la	a
Abl.	bel'lō	ō	bel'līs	īs

47. VOCABULARY

bel'lum, -ī, n., *war*.
dō'num, -ī, n., *gift, present*.
frūmen'tum, -ī, n., *grain*.
īn'sula, -ae, f., *island*.
op'pidum, -ī, n., *town*.
prae'mium, prae'mī,[1] n., *reward*.
rēgī'na, -ae, f., *queen*.
et (conjunction), *and*.

(*a*) Decline the above neuters like **bellum**.

48. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

premium insular donation vocation

(*a*) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

49. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Oppida nōn occupātis. 2. Virī bellum amant. 3. Frūmentum agricolārum portāmus. 4. Est[2] praemium. 5. Rēgīnae dōna portant.

---

[1] See § 33, *c*. [2] **Est** and **sunt** are often translated *there is* and *there are*.

(*b*) 1. Estne īnsula? 2. Puer frūmentum et aquam portat. 3. Estne rēgīna Galliae? 4. Agricolae agrōs amant. 5. Lēgātī pugnant et oppidum occupant.

50. *Translate, giving special attention to the nouns:*

(*a*) 1. The boy and the girl are friends. 2. The men seize the island. 3. The boys carry grain. 4. We love rewards. 5. You (*sing.*) are praising the queen.



THE COLOSSEUM AT ROME.

Compare this with the pictures on pages 5 and 81 and facing 36.

(*b*) 1. Do the girls love roses? 2. The queen carries the gift. 3. The messenger and the lieutenant praise the farmer's horses. 4. The men love (their) country. 5. Do you carry water?

ORAL EXERCISE

51. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Amatne rēgīnam? 2. Laudāsne puerōs? 3. Amantne praemium? 4. Puellāsne vocāmus? 5. Litterāsne portant?

LESSON X

ADJECTIVES

Pro bono publico. — For the public good.

52. Latin Adjectives. — Latin adjectives are declined like nouns. They have a masculine, a feminine, and a neuter form to agree with their nouns in gender.

Adjectives of the first and second declensions have their feminine forms like nouns of the first declension, and their masculine and neuter forms like masculine and neuter nouns of the second declension.

53. **Magnus**,[1] *great, large.* BASE, **magn-**

SINGULAR

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
Nom.	**mag'nus**	**mag'na**	**mag'num**
Gen.	**mag'nī**	**mag'nae**	**mag'nī**
Dat.	**mag'nō**	**mag'nae**	**mag'nō**
Acc.	**mag'num**	**mag'nam**	**mag'num**
Abl.	**mag'nō**	**mag'nā**	**mag'nō**

PLURAL

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
Nom.	**mag'nī**	**mag'nae**	**mag'na**
Gen.	**magnō'rum**	**magnā'rum**	**magnō'rum**
Dat.	**mag'nīs**	**mag'nīs**	**mag'nīs**
Acc.	**mag'nōs**	**mag'nās**	**mag'na**
Abl.	**mag'nīs**	**mag'nīs**	**mag'nīs**

What is the vocative singular of **magnus**? See § 8, *a*, and § 33, *a*.

[1] No other forms are used so constantly and in so many different ways as those in this section. They should be learned so that they "say themselves."

54. VOCABULARY

al'bus, al'ba, al'bum, *white.*
al'tus, al'ta, al'tum, *high, deep.*
bo'nus, bo'na, bo'num, *good, kind.*
lon'gus, lon'ga, lon'gum, *long, tall.*
mag'nus, mag'na, mag'num, *great, large.*
mul'tus, mul'ta, mul'tum, *much;* plural, *many.*
par'vus, par'va, par'vum, *small, little.*

(*a*) Decline **via longa, agricola bonus, puer parvus, praemium magnum.**

55. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

long magnify multiply albino

(*a*) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

RULE

56. Agreement of Adjectives with Nouns.—An adjective agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case.[1]

The boy is small. **Puer parvus**[2] **est.**
The farmers are good. **Agricolae bonī**[2] **sunt.**

(*a*) Notice that the adjective does not always end like the noun. **Agricolae,** although of the first declension, is masculine from its meaning, so **bonī** is masculine, nominative, plural, to agree with it.

EXERCISES

57. *Translate, giving the reason for the ending of each adjective:*

(*a*) 1. Īnsula magna est. 2. Multa bella longa sunt. 3. Multum frūmentum portāmus. 4. Memoria lēgātī bona est. 5. Puer parvus fābulās multās nārrat.

(*b*) 1. Vir bonās litterās puerī parvī laudat. 2. Rēgīna puerōs bonōs vocat. 3. Puellae rosās albās amant. 4. Lēgātī agrōs agricolārum occupant. 5. Multa oppida magna sunt.

[1] This is true whether the adjective is in the predicate or directly attached to the noun. [2] Predicate adjective, see § 41.

58. *Translate, marking all long vowels:*

(*a*) 1. The gifts are large. 2. The men seize the town. 3. The man's trumpet is large. 4. The good farmers are preparing (their) fields. 5. You are a good friend.

(*b*) 1. The water is deep. 2. The messenger's horse is small. 3. The rewards are great. 4. The small boy is (my) friend. 5. The lieutenant loves (his) country.

ORAL EXERCISE

59. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Equusne puerī magnus est? 2. Bellane longa sunt? 3. Bonīne virī pugnant? 4. Estne ager agricolae parvus? 5. Lēgātīne multās īnsulās occupant?



Oppugnātiō Oppidī

Oppidum magnum est. In oppidō sunt virī et puerī. Virī pugnant; puerī nōn pugnant. Puerī parvī sunt. Multum frūmentum in oppidō est.

Lēgātus bellum parat. Lēgātus et nūntius amīcī sunt. Nūntius lēgātum laudat. Equus nūntium portat. Lēgātus virōs vocat. Virī pugnant et oppidum occupant.

LESSON XI

REVIEW

*Absit omen! – May there be no ill omen.**

60. Derivatives. — Write all the English words you can that seem to be derived from the following:

magnus	longus	multus	dōnum
equus	īnsula	praemium	vocō



THE APPIAN WAY.

With the spread of Roman power, good roads became a necessity, in order to communicate quickly with all parts of the Empire. These roads were much like our macadam roads, of sand, stone, and cement. The first of these was called the Via Appia, after the censor Appius Claudius, who started its construction. It extended from Rome to Brundisium, the port of embarkation for Greece.

The paving blocks in the foreground were laid by the Romans twenty-two centuries ago and are still in good condition.

* Literally: *May the omen be absent!* Just as we say: "*Knock on wood!*"

61. Word Drill. — Give the nominative and genitive singular and the gender of the Latin words for the following:

queen	lieutenant	war	gift
friend	man	girl	letter
reward	grain	horse	town
messenger	field	language	boy

(*a*) The following words of the second declension have the same form in both Latin and English: **album, alumnus, animus, campus, chorus, circus, data** (*plu.*), **dictum, focus, forum, frustum, fulcrum, fungus, genius, insignia** (*plu.*), **locus, maximum, medium, memorandum, minimum, minister, odium, radius, rostrum, stratum, syllabus, terminus, vacuum, vinculum.** Look up the meanings of all that you do not know.

62. Form Drill. — 1. Decline **lēgātus, dōnum, bonus.** In how many seconds can you write the declension of **magnus**? In how many seconds can you recite it? 2. Conjugate **sum** and **pugnō** through the present tense.

63. Questions. — 1. What is the gender of nouns of the second declension? 2. What cases are alike in the neuter gender? 3. What is the ending of these cases in the plural? 4. What use do you know for the genitive case? the accusative? 5. What case in English corresponds to each of these? 6. What two uses do you know for the nominative? 7. Why must an adjective have three genders?

64. EXERCISES FOR SIGHT READING

1. Es amīcus nūntiōrum. 2. Sumus bonī amīcī rēgīnae. 3. Magna oppida Galliae occupātis. 4. Tuba parva est. 5. Multae īnsulae sunt parvae.



Via Appia.

This is the so-called Via Appia Nuova, or New Appian Way, a view taken nearer to Rome than the picture on page 24. The tombs of wealthy Romans, seen in ruins in the other picture, did not begin as near the city as this.

In the background are the ruins of the Claudian Aqueduct, one of the many sources of Rome's pure water supply. It brought water from the hills southeast of Rome.

Via Appia

Pīctūra est pulchra. Pīctūra[1] Viae Appiae est. Via Appia antīqua via est. Via Appia est longa et alba. Aquaeductus aquam nōn portat. Aquaeductus ruīna est.

Arborēs sunt in agrō. Sunt (*there is*) frūmenta[2] in agrīs. Vir frūmentum in (*to*) oppidum portat. Via Appia pulchra est.

---

[1] See § 41. [2] Used in the plural to indicate standing grain.

LESSON XII

PRINCIPAL PARTS OF VERBS

Cor unum, via una. — *One heart, one way.*

65. The **Principal Parts** of a Latin verb are the *Present Indicative*, *Present Infinitive*, *Perfect Indicative*, and *Perfect Participle*. These are called principal parts because, when they are known, all forms of the verb may readily be found.

Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Ind.*	*Perf. Part.*
por'tō	**portā're**	**portā'vī**	**portā'tus**

(*a*) Form the principal parts of **amō**, **laudō**, **occupō**, **parō**, **nārrō**.

66. Verb Stems. — The fixed parts of a verb, to which the different endings are added, are called **stems**. Every regular verb has three stems: *present*, *perfect*, and *participial*, corresponding to its principal parts.

To find the *present stem* of a verb drop **re** from the present infinitive active: **portāre**; stem, **portā-**.

67. The first conjugation includes all verbs whose present infinitive ends in **-āre**. The present stem ends in **ā-**.

Each form of the **present indicative** is composed of the *present stem* plus the proper *personal ending*.

Present Indicative

por'tō, *I carry.*	**portā'mus**, *we carry.*
por'tās, *you carry.*	**portā'tis**, *you carry.*
por'tat, *he carries.*	**por'tant**, *they carry.*

(*a*) Notice that **ā** of the stem is dropped before **-ō** in the first person singular and that **ā** becomes short before **-t** and **-nt**.

68. VOCABULARY

dō, da're, de'dī, da'tus,[1] *give.*

su'perō, superā're, superā'vī, superā'tus, *surpass, conquer, defeat, overcome.*

cē'lō, cēlā're, cēlā'vī, cēlā'tus, *conceal.*

vul'nerō, vulnerā're, vulnerā'vī, vulnerā'tus, *wound.*

(*a*) Conjugate each of these verbs in the present indicative.

69. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

conceal vulnerable donate dative

(*a*) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

EXERCISES

70. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Puella bona fābulās nārrat. 2. Puerī equōs albōs nōn cēlant. 3. Agricola multum frūmentum portat. 4. Agricolam superāmus. 5. Amīcum vulnerātis.

(*b*) 1. Puer dōna dat. 2. Fēminās vocās. 3. Pīctūrae magnae sunt. 4. Lēgātī agricolās superant. 5. Amīcum virī laudāmus.

71. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. We conquer Gaul. 2. The queen is the small boy's friend. 3. The man wounds (his) friend's horse. 4. The messenger is carrying a trumpet. 5. The girl gives small gifts.

(*b*) 1. The woman carries a white rose. 2. The way is not long. 3. We are concealing a small letter. 4. The towns are large. 5. Many men love war.

ORAL EXERCISE

72. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Superāsne? 2. Vulneratne amīcum? 3. Dantne dōna? 4. Amātisne rosās? 5. Cēlāsne nūntium?

---

[1] This verb has short **a** in the present stem, except in the forms **dās**, the imperative **dā**, and the participle **dāns**.



A Roman Street Scene.

LESSON XIII

IMPERFECT AND FUTURE TENSES. INDIRECT OBJECT

*Da dextram misero.—Lend a hand.**

73. The **imperfect**[1] **indicative** is formed by the *present stem* plus the *tense sign* **-ba-** plus the *personal endings*.

Imperfect Indicative

portā'bam, *I was carrying.*	**portābā'mus,** *we were carrying*
portā'bās, *you were carrying.*	**portābā'tis,** *you were carrying.*
portā'bat, *he was carrying.*	**portā'bant,** *they were carrying.*

(*a*) The personal ending **-m** is always used for the first person singular of the imperfect tense in the active voice.

74. The **future indicative** is formed by the *present stem* plus the *tense sign* **-bi-** plus the *personal endings*. The **i** of the tense sign is dropped before the personal ending **-ō** in the first person singular, and appears as **u** before the ending **-nt** in the third person plural.

Future Indicative

portā'bō, *I shall carry.*	**portā'bimus,** *we shall carry.*
portā'bis, *you will carry.*	**portā'bitis,** *you will carry.*
portā'bit, *he will carry.*	**portā'bunt,** *they will carry.*

75. VOCABULARY

dīligen'tia, -ae, f., *diligence, care.*	**ser'va, -ae,** f., *female servant, slave.*
fos'sa, -ae, f., *ditch.*	**ser'vus, -ī,** m., *male servant, slave.*
Gal'lī, -ō'rum, m., *Gauls.*	**sig'num, -ī,** n., *signal, standard.*
mū'rus, -ī, m., *wall.*	**in,** prep. with abl., *in, on.*
pī'lum, -ī, n., *javelin.*	**sed,** conjunction, *but.*

(*a*) Compare **Gallia** and **Gallī**; **serva** and **servus**.

* Virgil. Literally: *Give the right hand to the unfortunate.*

[1] The imperfect indicative represents an act as going on in past time or as repeated in past time.

76. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

diligent sign mural servant

(*a*) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.



MURUS FOSSAQUE.[1]

The Romans always fortified their camps with a wall and a ditch, although trench warfare in the modern sense was unknown to them.

DRILL ON VERB FORMS

77. *Analyze*[2] *each form and translate:*

(*a*) 1. Vulnerābam, vocābis, amātis. 2. Parat, portāmus, occupābunt. 3. Damus, laudābat, vocābunt. 4. Pugnābis, nārrābant, superāmus. 5. Vulnerābit, occupābimus, dabunt.

(*b*) 1. Parābās, laudābātis, cēlābimus. 2. Occupant, vulnerābit, dabitis. 3. Portō, laudābit, amābunt. 4. Vulnerābāmus, vulnerābitis, dās. 5. Nārrābam, cēlābō, vulnerātis.

---

1 The little word **-que**, *and*, is added to the second of two words that are closely linked together.

2 To analyze a verb form divide it into *stem*, *tense sign*, and *personal ending*. Notice that the active verb is translated from right to left.

portā ba m
carrying was I } *I was carrying.*

I shows the person and number, *was* the tense, and *carrying* the meaning of the simple verb.

78. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. They will fight, I was fighting, we shall fight. 2. We are calling, he will call, I am calling. 3. They are, they are concealing, they were concealing. 4. You were praising, we shall praise, they praise. 5. I shall give, you (*plur.*) are giving, they will give.

(*b*) 1. We are, we are carrying, they will carry. 2. You (*sing.*) were telling, we shall tell, he tells. 3. We shall prepare, you are preparing, we were preparing. 4. I am, I call, I shall call. 5. We were seizing, they seize, he gives.

RULE

79. Indirect Object. — The indirect object is expressed by the dative case.[1]

The farmer gives a horse to the boy. **Agricola puerō equum dat.**
The lieutenant is giving the messenger a signal. **Lēgātus nūntiō signum dat.**

EXERCISES

80. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Lēgātō fābulās nārrātis. 2. Vir servō signa dabit. 3. Agricolae bonī equīs frūmentum dabunt. 4. Virī amīcīs pīla dabant. 5. Fossae sunt altae.

(*b*) 1. Dīligentia puerī est magna. 2. Sumus bonae servae. 3. Mūrus oppidī est altus. 4. Agricolae in silvīs equōs cēlābant. 5. Gallī in Galliā pugnābant.

Note. — The indirect object is generally placed before the direct object.

81. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. The friends of the Gauls are many. 2. The wall is high, but the ditch is small. 3. The wars in Gaul are long. 4. The boy will give a present to (his) friend. 5. The girls were telling stories to the boys.

---

[1] Compare § 657. *a*.

(*b*) 1. We shall seize the towns in the province. 2. The queen will praise the diligence of the boys and girls. 3. We were wounding the Gauls. 4. The walls of many towns are high. 5. The slaves conceal the standard and the javelins.



THE PORTA SAN SEBASTIANO AT ROME.

This is the gate by which the Appian Way enters Rome.

ORAL EXERCISE

82. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Servusne equōs cēlābit? 2. Dabisne bonō puerō dōnum? 3. Puerīne in agrō magnō sunt? 4. Nūntiusne Gallīs signum dabat? 5. Gallīne in multīs bellīs pugnābant?

LESSON XIV

ADJECTIVES (*Continued*). ABLATIVE OF MEANS

*Alis volat propriis.—She flies with her own wings.**

83. **Miser**, *wretched*. BASE, **miser-**

SINGULAR

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nom.	mi'ser	mi'sera	mi'serum
Gen.	mi'serī	mi'serae	mi'serī
Dat.	mi'serō	mi'serae	mi'serō
Acc.	mi'serum	mi'seram	mi'serum
Abl.	mi'serō	mi'serā	mi'serō

PLURAL

Nom.	mi'serī	mi'serae	mi'sera
Gen.	miserō'rum	miserā'rum	miserō'rum
Dat.	mi'serīs	mi'serīs	mi'serīs
Acc.	mi'serōs	mi'serās	mi'sera
Abl.	mi'serīs	mi'serīs	mi'serīs

84. **Pulcher**, *beautiful*. BASE, **pulchr-**

SINGULAR

Nom.	pul'cher	pul'chra	pul'chrum
Gen.	pul'chrī	pul'chrae	pul'chrī
Dat.	pul'chrō	pul'chrae	pul'chrō
Acc.	pul'chrum	pul'chram	pul'chrum
Abl.	pul'chrō	pul'chrā	pul'chrō

PLURAL

Nom.	pul'chrī	pul'chrae	pul'chra
Gen.	pulchrō'rum	pulchrā'rum	pulchrō'rum
Dat.	pul'chrīs	pul'chrīs	pul'chrīs
Acc.	pul'chrōs	pul'chrās	pul'chra
Abl.	pul'chrīs	pul'chrīs	pul'chrīs

* The motto of Oregon. Used for *to stand on one's own feet.*

85. VOCABULARY

cā'rus, -a, -um, *dear.*
fī'dus, -a, -um, *faithful.*
lī'ber, -era, -erum, *free.*
ma'lus, -a, -um, *bad.*
mi'ser, -era, -erum, *wretched, unhappy.*
ni'ger, -gra, -grum, *black.*
pul'cher, -chra, -chrum, *beautiful.*

(*a*) Note that **līber** and **miser** retain the **e**, like **puer**; **niger** and **pulcher** drop it, like **ager**.

86. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

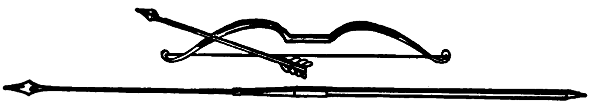
liberty miserable fidelity negro

(*a*) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

RULE

87. Ablative of Means or Instrument. — Means or instrument is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

They fight with javelins. **Pīlīs pugnant.**
The servant gives the signal with a trumpet. **Servus tubā signum dat.**



ROMAN BOW, ARROW, AND JAVELIN.

88. *Translate, naming the case of each noun and giving the reason for the use of that case:*

(*a*) 1. Servī malī sunt. 2. Gallī tubīs signa dabant. 3. Servae fīdae in silvā sunt. 4. Puella bona est, sed puer est malus. 5. Lēgātīs multa dōna dabimus.

(*b*) 1. Servus virī līber nōn est. 2. Puellae rosam pulchram dabō. 3. Virī miserī pīlīs pugnābant. 4. Cārās puellās laudābimus. 5. Virī līberī servōs nigrōs vulnerābant

89. *Translate, always marking the long vowels:*

(*a*) 1. The men are on the high wall. 2. The messenger is faithful. 3. They will seize the small island. 4. They were giving letters to the messenger. 5. We shall give the letters to the little girls.

(*b*) 1. Bad boys were fighting. 2. The Gauls will wound the slaves with long javelins. 3. The girl's friend will give a reward to the messenger. 4. The lieutenant was giving a signal to (his) friend with a trumpet. 5. The black slaves will not conquer the free men.

ORAL EXERCISE

90. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Suntne puerī fīdī? 2. Pugnābisne pīlīs? 3. Puerīsne fābulās nārrābātis? 4. Dabuntne signum tubā? 5. Estne pīctūra pulchra?

Servus Malus

In oppidō erat (*was*) vir. Equus virī in agrō erat. Mārcus, puer[1] līber, amīcus virī erat. Mārcus equum amābat, sed servus virī equum nōn amābat.

In agrō fossa alta erat (*there was*). Servus pīlum longum in fossā cēlat. Factum malum in animō[2] est. Mārcus servum spectat, tum exclāmat, "Equumne pīlō vulnerābis? Equus nōn tuus sed virī[3] est." Mārcus virō signum dat et virum vocat. Vir servum gladiō[4] vulnerat. Servus pīlō equum nōn vulnerat.

Vir dīligentiam Mārcī laudat et puerō ēgregiō magnum numerum librōrum pulchrōrum dat. Servī[3] malī supplicium nōn parvum est.

---

[1] Apposition.
[2] Supply *his* in translating.
[3] See § 36.
[4] See § 87.

LESSON XV

CONJUGATION OF *SUM* (*Continued*)

Sum quod eris. – *I am what you will be.**

91. Conjugation of the irregular verb *sum*. For the present tense see § 40.

Imperfect Indicative

e'**ram**, *I was.*	**erā'mus**, *we were.*
e'**rās**, *you were.*	**erā'tis**, *you were.*
e'**rat**, *he was.*	e'**rant**, *they were.*

Future Indicative

e'**rō**, *I shall be.*	e'**rimus**, *we shall be.*
e'**ris**, *you will be.*	e'**ritis**, *you will be.*
e'**rit**, *he will be.*	e'**runt**, *they will be.*

92. VOCABULARY

do'mina, -ae, f., *mistress, lady.*
do'minus, -ī, m., *master, lord.*
gla'dius, gla'dī, m., *sword.*
li'ber, li'brī, m., *book.*
magis'ter, -trī, m., *teacher.*
Mār'cus, -ī, m., *Marcus.*
nu'merus, -ī, m., *number.*
sum, es'se, fuī, *be.*

nōnne, interrogative particle expecting the answer *yes.*
num, interrogative particle expecting the answer *no.*

(*a*) Compare **domina** and **dominus**; **liber** and **līber**. The words *library* and *liberate* will help you remember how the latter are declined.

93. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

gladiator   library   dominant   numerous

(*a*) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

* Inscription sometimes seen on tombstones.



The Colosseum Seen through the Arch of Titus.

EXERCISES

94. *Translate, naming the case of each noun and giving the reason for the use of that case:*

(*a*) 1. Mārcus gladiō longō pugnābit. 2. Gallī tubā lēgātō signum dabunt. 3. Gladiō Mārcum vulnerābimus. 4. Līberī virī erāmus. 5. Servī pīlīs et gladiīs pugnābant.

(*b*) 1. Malus dominus eris. 2. Equus niger virī in silvā est. 3. Librī magistrī erant pulchrī. 4. Servī miserī dominōs malōs nōn amant. 5. Servae fīdae dominam cāram amābant.

95. *Translate, marking all long vowels:*

(*a*) 1. I shall be a faithful teacher. 2. Many Gauls are free. 3. The black slaves were wretched. 4. The bad master fights with a javelin. 5. With the trumpet we shall give the signals to the men.

(*b*) 1. I shall conceal the black horse in the forest. 2. The books were beautiful. 3. The teacher will give rewards to the faithful boys. 4. You (*plu.*) will tell the story to (your) friends. 5. (There) was a large number of boys and girls in the town.

96. Interrogative Particles. — When a negative answer is expected, the question is introduced by **num**; when an affirmative answer is expected, the question is introduced by **nōnne**. The **nōn** in **nōnne**, just as *not* in English, is used to show that an affirmative answer is expected.

Are not the slaves faithful? **Nōnne servī fīdī sunt?**

ORAL EXERCISE

97. *Answer these questions in Latin.*

1. Nōnne lēgātī pīlīs pugnant? 2. Num servī miserī erant? 3. Eritne numerus Gallōrum in oppidō magnus? 4. Eratne pīlum virī longum? 5. Nōnne dominī gladiīs pugnābunt?

LESSON XVI

PERFECT TENSE[1]

Laborare est orare. — To labor is to pray.*

98. The perfect stem is found by dropping **ī** from the perfect indicative active — **portāvī**; stem, **portāv-**. (§ 65).

99. The perfect indicative active has the following **characteristic personal endings.**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
First Person	**-ī**	**-imus**
Second Person	**-istī**	**-istis**
Third Person	**-it**	**-ērunt (-ēre)**

100. Perfect tense = *perfect stem + the characteristic personal endings.*

Perfect Indicative Active

I have carried, I carried, I did carry

portā'vī	portā'vimus
portāvis'tī	portāvis'tis
portā'vit	portāvē'runt (-ē're)

(*a*) The perfect indicative represents an act as completed at the time of speaking (*have carried*), or merely as having occurred in past time (*carried*). *I have carried* is known as the perfect definite; *I carried* as the perfect indefinite or historical perfect.

The imperfect expresses an action as going on in past time: *I was carrying.*

(*b*) Following the same rules as for **portō**, conjugate **sum** through the perfect indicative, § 591.

(*c*) Conjugate in the perfect each of the verbs in the following vocabulary.

* Motto of the Benedictine monks.

[1] Compare §§ 639 and 641.

101. VOCABULARY

aedi'ficō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *build.*
con'vocō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *call together, call.*
hi'emō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *pass the winter, winter.*
lī'berō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *set free.*
mōn'strō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *show.*
nūn'tiō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *announce.*
ser'vō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *save, guard.*
vās'tō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *lay waste.*

102. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

convoke conserve edifice devastate

(*a*) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

103. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Hiemāvērunt. 2. Convocāvistis. 3. Mūrum aedificāvī. 4. Puerō librum mōnstrāvimus. 5. Agrōs vāstāvistis.

(*b*) 1. Bonī puerī fuistis. 2. Bona domina erō. 3. Mārcō gladium dedimus. 4. Magistrī miserī nōn fuērunt. 5. Gladiō virum vulnerāvistī.

104. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. You (*plu.*) have announced. 2. The faithful messenger called together the boys and girls. 3. The bad men laid waste (their) native land. 4. We shall save the small town with swords and javelins. 5. The Gauls have passed the winter in Gaul.

(*b*) 1. The teachers have shown great diligence. 2. Marcus has given a book to (his) dear friend. 3. We have been good masters. 4. The number of small islands is great. 5. The men will build a high wall.

ORAL EXERCISE

105. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Vāstāvistīne patriam? 2. Fuistīne bonus puer? 3. Num virī servōs līberāvērunt? 4. Nōnne oppidum servāvit? 5. Num in Galliā hiemāvistis?

LESSON XVII

PLUPERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT TENSES

Dux femina facti. — *A woman is the leader of the deed.* *

106. The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses indicative active are formed on the perfect stem.

Pluperfect tense = *perfect stem* + *tense sign* **era** + *regular personal endings.*

Future perfect tense = *perfect stem* + *tense sign* **eri** + *regular personal endings.*

107. **Pluperfect Indicative Active**

I had carried

(*a*)	portā'veram	portāverā'mus
	portā'verās	portāverā'tis
	portā'verat	portā'verant

Future Perfect Indicative Active

I shall have carried

(*b*)	portā'verō	portāve'rimus
	portā'veris	portāve'ritis
	portā'verit	portā'verint

(*c*) Following the same laws, conjugate **sum** through the pluperfect and future perfect indicative tenses, § 591.

108. A synopsis of a verb is a group of forms of any person and number of that verb throughout all the tenses.

The synopsis of **portō** in the first person singular indicative active is: **portō, portābam, portābō, portāvī, portāveram, portāverō.**

* Virgil.

EXERCISES ON VERB FORMS

109. *Analyze each form:*

(*a*) 1. Pugnāverat, pugnābunt, pugnāvistī. 2. Aedificābat, convocāvērunt, nūntiat. 3. Occupāvī, occupābam, occupāverit. 4. Dedimus, dant, dederās. 5. Servābit, servāvistī, servāvērunt.

(*b*) 1. Vocābāmus, vocāveritis, vocāvistis. 2. Laudāverat, laudāmus, laudāverō. 3. Erāmus, fuerint, fuērunt. 4. Fuistī, fuerās, fuerit. 5. Līberābant, vāstāvērunt, mōnstrābō.

(*c*) Give the synopsis in the indicative active of the following forms: laudō, pugnās, occupat, sumus, datis, vulnerant.

110. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. I have called, you were calling, you will call. 2. We shall have given, he gave, they had given. 3. You had wounded, they will have wounded, we are wounding. 4. They have seized, we shall seize, he seizes. 5. They will have prepared, I shall prepare, we prepare.

(*b*) 1. You have told, I had told, they told. 2. They have been, he was, you will have been. 3. They had been, we shall be, I have been. 4. You have been, he had been, we shall have been. 5. I shall build, they passed the winter, he had announced.

ORAL EXERCISE

111. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Pugnāvistīne? 2. Nōnne fuerās fīdus? 3. Num puerō gladium dederat? 4. Nōnne in Galliā hiemābis? 5. Nārrāvistīne Mārcō fābulam?

LESSON XVIII

EXPRESSIONS OF PLACE

Ad maiorem Dei gloriam. — *To the greater glory of God.**

112. Place. — In general, place is expressed as follows:

Place *in* or *on* which — **in** with the *ablative* case.
Place *from* which — **ā** or **ab** with the *ablative* case.
Place *out of* which — **ē** or **ex** with the *ablative* case.

Place *into* which — **in** with the *accusative* case.
Place *to* which — **ad** with the *accusative* case.

Note. — **Ab** and **ex** must be used before a vowel or *h*; before consonants **ā** or **ab**, **ex** or **ē** may be used.

EXERCISES ON PREPOSITIONS

113. *Translate:*

1. Ad mūrum. 2. In fossīs. 3. In bellum. 4. Ex oppidō. 5. In agrīs. 6. Ab nūntiō. 7. In patriam. 8. Ad silvās. 9. In Galliā. 10. Ex prōvinciā.

114. *Translate, marking all long vowels:*

1. To the island. 2. In the towns. 3. To Gaul. 4. From the town. 5. On land. 6. From the fields. 7. Into the ditch. 8. Out of the woods. 9. From the walls. 10. Into Gaul.

115. VOCABULARY

cas'tra, -ō'rum, n., *camp.*
cō'pia, -ae, f., *abundance, plenty*; plural, *forces.*
fī'lia, -ae, f., *daughter* (**-ābus** in dat. and abl. plu.).
fī'lius, fī'lī, m., *son.*
ā or **ab**, prep. with abl., *from.*
ad, prep. with acc., *to, toward.*
in, prep. with abl., *in, on;* with acc., *into, against.*
ē or **ex**, prep. with abl., *out of, from.*

* Motto of the Jesuits.

116. ***What Latin words do the following suggest?***

filial copious insuperable

(*a*) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.



POMPEII AND ITS DESTROYER.

In 79 A.D. Pompeii, near the Bay of Naples, was buried in ashes by an eruption of the volcano Vesuvius. It has now been excavated and much of our knowledge of Roman life, art, and customs comes from its remains. This picture shows the market-place or Forum, and Vesuvius.

EXERCISES

117. ***Translate, giving the construction of each noun:***

(*a*) 1. Fuerant castra in Galliā. 2. Dominus servās ā prōvinciīs convocāverit. 3. In castrīs virōs servāverās. 4. Gallī ex oppidō in castra cōpiam frūmentī portāverant. 5. Vir fīliīs et fīliābus cōpiam librōrum dedit.

(*b*) 1. Cōpiās Gallōrum gladiīs superāverint. 2. In Galliā hiemāvimus. 3. In mūrō gladiōs et pīla cēlāvistis. 4. Fīlia fēminae ad magistrum librōs multōs et magnōs portāvit. 5. Servus dominō cārō numerum magnum pīlōrum dederat.

118. *Translate, marking all long vowels:*

(*a*) 1. The free men passed the winter on the island. 2. The faithful messenger calls the boys out of the field into the forest. 3. The Gauls gave beautiful presents to their sons and daughters. 4. The forces will have carried grain from the small town to the camp. 5. The black slave was concealing the grain in the forest.

(*b*) 1. Marcus had not been a friend of the Gauls. 2. The good farmer's sons and daughters had concealed (their) books. 3. The signal of the messenger saved the men. 4. You had wounded (your) friends with javelins. 5. You will give a book to (your) daughter, but a sword to (your) son.

ORAL EXERCISE

119. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Puerīne[1] ex agrō equum vocāvērunt? 2. Nōnne in Galliā hiemābātis? 3. Portāverāsne frūmentum ad castra? 4. Nōnne servus est miser? 5. Num fīlia puella mala fuit?

Carolus et Pōma[2]

Carolus agricolae fīlius erat et bonus puer, sed malōs amīcōs habēbat. Agricola fīliō calathum pōmōrum magnōrum plēnum dedit. In calathō erant multa et bona pōma, sed pauca vitiāta.

Puer pōma cēlāvit, sed vitiāta pōma maculāvērunt bona, et mox nūlla bona erant. Tum agricola fīlium monuit: "Pauca vitiāta pōma maculant multa bona. Sīc malī amīcī bonōs puerōs vitiābunt."

---

[1] Pronounce and think of the words in groups: **Puerīne ex͡ agrō equum͡ vocāvērunt?** [2] Refer to the general vocabulary for new words.

LESSON XIX

REVIEW

Nihil dictum quod non dictum prius. — *We can say nothing but what hath been said.**

120. Derivatives. — Write all the English words you can that seem to be derived from the following :

dīligentia	servō	cōpia	fīlius
mūrus	signum	līber	liber
gladius	numerus	dominus	dō
convocō	vulnerō	aedificō	mōnstrō

121 Word Drill. — See how many seconds it takes you to give the nominative and genitive singular of the Latin words for the following:

master	sword	signal	book
number	diligence	ditch	teacher
slave	Marcus	javelin	daughter
son	abundance	reward	island

122. Form Drill. — 1. Name the principal parts of a verb. 2. Name the six indicative tenses in order. 3. Give the formula for making each. 4. Give the principal parts of **dō** and conjugate it through the indicative. 5. Give the principal parts of **sum** and conjugate it through the indicative. 6. Give a synopsis in the indicative active of the following forms: **sum, dās, līberat, mōnstrāmus, servātis, nūntiant.**

123. Questions. — 1. What case denotes possession? the direct object? the indirect object? What is the Eng-

* Terence. Literally: *Nothing has been said which has not been said before.* The English is from Burton's *Anatomy of Melancholy.*

lish equivalent of each? 2. What case and what preposition are used to express place *in* which, *into* which, *to* which, *from* which, *out of* which? 3. How is the *present* stem of a verb found? the *perfect* stem? 4. What tenses are formed on the *present* stem? on the *perfect* stem? 5. What tenses have tense signs? Name the tense signs.



THE STREET OF THE TOMBS AT POMPEII.

These tombs were not so imposing as those on the Appian Way (page 24), but they were well preserved by being buried in ashes.

6. What tense has characteristic endings? Name them. 7. What English tense is equivalent to the pluperfect?

124. EXERCISES FOR SIGHT READING

1. Fēminae in īnsulīs erunt. 2. Puellae dōnum dabis. 3. Virī dīligentiam servārum laudābunt. 4. Mūrī oppidī altī erunt et fossa longa erit. 5. Equus albus in agrum puerum portābat. 6. Dīligentia servae fīdae magna erat. 7. Erimus bonī amīcī magistrī. 8. Numerus servōrum in Galliā magnus erat. 9. Vir malus in silvā equum dominī cēlābat. 10. Lēgātī ā mūrō cōpiās vocāvērunt.

LESSON XX

THIRD DECLENSION

Ad astra per aspera. — "*To the stars through bolts and bars.*" *

125. The third declension consists of all words whose genitive singular ends in **-is**. They may be masculine, feminine, or neuter.

Many nouns of the third declension have their nominative just like the base, or differ only in the quantity of the last vowel. Note that masculines and feminines are declined alike.

	Cōnsul, m., *consul* BASE, **cōnsul-**		**Soror**, f., *sister* BASE, **sorōr-**	TERMINATIONS
		SINGULAR		
Nom.	cōn'sul	*Nom.*	so'ror	—
Gen.	cōn'sul**is**	*Gen.*	sorō'r**is**	**is**
Dat.	cōn'sul**ī**	*Dat.*	sorō'r**ī**	**ī**
Acc.	cōn'sul**em**	*Acc.*	sorō'r**em**	**em**
Abl.	cōn'sul**e**	*Abl.*	sorō'r**e**	**e**
		PLURAL		
Nom.	cōn'sul**ēs**	*Nom.*	sorō'r**ēs**	**ēs**
Gen.	cōn'sul**um**	*Gen.*	sorō'r**um**	**um**
Dat.	cōnsu'l**ibus**	*Dat.*	sorō'r**ibus**	**ibus**
Acc.	cōn'sul**ēs**	*Acc.*	sorō'r**ēs**	**ēs**
Abl.	cōnsu'l**ibus**	*Abl.*	sorō'r**ibus**	**ibus**

Note. — Compare the following case endings:

Declension	I	II	III
Accusative singular:	**-am**	**-um**	**-em**
Genitive plural:	**-ārum**	**-ōrum**	**-um**
Accusative plural:	**-ās**	**-ōs**	**-ēs**

* The motto of Kansas and an appropriate one for school classes. Literally: *To the stars through difficulties.*

126. VOCABULARY

ar'bor, -oris, f., *tree*.
cōn'sul, -ulis, m., *consul*.
explōrā'tor, -ō'ris, m., *scout*.
imperā'tor, -ō'ris, m., *commander-in-chief, general*.
mercā'tor, -ō'ris, m., *merchant*.
so'ror, -ō'ris, f., *sister*.
ti'mor, -ō'ris, m., *fear, dread*.
vic'tor, -ō'ris, m., *victor*.
victō'ria, -ae, f., *victory*.
lā'tus, -a, -um, *broad, wide*.
ubi, interrogative adverb, *where?* relative adverb, *where, when*.
quis, interrogative pronoun, *who?*

(*a*) Decline the above nouns in **-or** like **soror**.

127. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

arbor	victor	explorer	timorous
sorority	latitude	liberate	victory

(*a*) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

RULE

128. Parsing. — To parse a noun give (1) declension, (2) nominative and genitive singular, (3) gender, (4) number, (5) case, (6) rule.

In 129, (*a*) 1, **mūrum** would be parsed as follows: **mūrum**: *second declension*, **mūrus, mūrī**; *masculine* (*gender*); *singular* (*number*); *accusative* (*case*), *direct object* of the verb **aedificābunt**.

EXERCISES

129. *Translate, parsing the nouns and giving synopses of the verbs:*

(*a*) 1. Victōrēs mūrum altum aedificābunt. 2. Erat magnus timor. 3. Amīcī mercātōrum agrōs multōs et lātōs vāstābant. 4. Magister sorōrī parvae pulchrum librum mōnstrāvit. 5. Fīlius imperātōris tubā cōnsulī victōriam magnam nūntiat.

(*b*) 1. Es fīlia cāra. 2. Ad fēminam bonam dōna pulchra portāverāmus. 3. Dominus bonus servōs fīdōs līberāverat. 4. Fuērunt in silvā multae et magnae arborēs. 5. Lēgātī ex oppidō in castra explōrātōrēs convocāvērunt.

130. *Translate, marking long vowels:*

(*a*) 1. There will be a great reward. 2. The scout's sister had been in the victor's field. 3. The faithful consul has set free many slaves in (his) native land. 4. The woman will praise (her) son's victory. 5. The lieutenants have not conquered the Gauls.

(*b*) 1. The victors gave many large gifts to (their) sons, but will not give the boys swords. 2. You are a good man,



A ROMAN SWORD IN ITS SHEATH.

Notice the delicate ornamentation.

but you are not free. 3. The commander-in-chief will announce the victory to the faithful consul. 4. The man called (his) sons and daughters out of the forest into the town. 5. We had shown the beautiful trees to (our) friends.

131. Questions. — Questions which cannot be answered by *yes* or *no* are introduced by an interrogative pronoun or adverb. In such questions **ne** is not used.

Where was the merchant? **Ubi erat mercātor?**
Who is the general? **Quis est imperātor?**

ORAL EXERCISE

132. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Ubi soror puerī erat? 2. Quis es? 3. Nōnne magna victōria fuit? 4. Esne amīcus imperātōris? 5. Aedificāvitne altum mūrum?

LESSON XXI

THIRD DECLENSION. ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT

*Cum grano salis. — With a grain of salt.**

133. In many nouns of the third declension the nominative differs a little from the base. Notice that the English derivative usually is formed from the base and not from the nominative. *Military* — **milit**; *judicial* — **iudic.**

	Mīles, m., *soldier* Base, **mī'lit-**	**Iūdex**, m., *judge* Base, **iū'dic-**	**Frāter**, m., *brother* Base, **frā'tr-**
		SINGULAR	
Nom.	mī'les	iū'dex	frā'ter
Gen.	mī'litis	iū'dicis	frā'tris
Dat.	mī'litī	iū'dicī	frā'trī
Acc.	mī'litem	iū'dicem	frā'trem
Abl.	mī'lite	iū'dice	frā'tre
		PLURAL	
Nom.	mī'litēs	iū'dicēs	frā'trēs
Gen.	mī'litum	iū'dicum	frā'trum
Dat.	mīli'tibus	iūdi'cibus	frā'tribus
Acc.	mī'litēs	iū'dicēs	frā'trēs
Abl.	mīli'tibus	iūdi'cibus	frā'tribus

134. VOCABULARY

Cae'sar, -aris, m., *Caesar.*
dux, du'cis, m., *leader.*
frā'ter, -tris, m., *brother.*
iū'dex, -icis, m., *judge.*
la'pis, -idis, m., *stone.*
de'cimus, -a, -um, *tenth.*
le'giō, -ō'nis, f., *legion.*
lī'berī, -ō'rum, m., *children.*
mā'ter, -tris, f., *mother.*
mī'les, -itis, m., *soldier.*
pa'ter, -tris, m., *father.*
tē'lum, -ī, n., *weapon.*
oppug'nō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *attack, storm.*
cir'cum, preposition with accusative, *around.*
cum, preposition with ablative, *with.*

* Taking a remark *cum grano salis* implies an exaggeration.

(*a*) Note carefully:

līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,	*to set free.*	Compare the English
līber, -era, -erum,	*free.*	
līberī, -ōrum,	*freeborn children.*	*liberate, liberty.*
liber, librī,	*book.*	*library.*



THE LIBRARY OF HADRIAN'S VILLA.

Hadrian was one of the greatest Roman emperors (117–138 A.D.). Near Rome he built a magnificent villa, the library of which is shown here.

135. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

fraternity	decimal	judicial	paternal
lapidary	maternal	legion	fraternal

(*a*) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

RULE

136. Ablative of Accompaniment. — Accompaniment (in company with or in conflict with) is expressed by the **ablative with cum.**

The boy is with his father. **Puer cum patre est.**
Caesar fought with the Gauls. **Caesar cum Gallīs pugnāvit.**

EXERCISES

137. *Translate, and give construction of each noun:*

(*a*) 1. Dux cum frātre erat. 2. Līberī cum iūdice erunt. 3. Gallī cum Caesare pugnābant. 4. Pater cum fīliābus est. 5. Caesar cum decimā legiōne oppidum Gallōrum oppugnāvit.

(*b*) 1. Mīles tubā decimae legiōnī victōriam nūntiāvit. 2. Malus vir lapide mīlitem vulnerāverit. 3. Lāta fossa circum mūrum fuerat. 4. Līberī iūdicis patrī tēla mōnstrābunt. 5. Ducēs cum multīs mīlitibus oppida magna oppugnāverant.

138. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. The soldiers fought with the tenth legion. 2. The men saved the town of (their) fathers. 3. The leaders will storm the wall around the camp. 4. The girl was with (her) brother in the native land of the Gauls. 5. Caesar gives a signal to (his) faithful legions.

(*b*) 1. The general and (his) children are good friends. 2. The judge's mother and sister were unhappy. 3. The messenger carried a letter from the merchant to the farmer. 4. The lieutenants have announced the victories of the soldiers. 5. The leader's forces passed the winter in camp and (there) was great fear.

ORAL EXERCISE

139. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Quis iūdex erit? 2. Pugnāvistīne tēlīs? 3. Quis cum Gallīs pugnābat? 4. Mīlitēsne oppidum oppugnāvērunt? 5. Ubi erant bonī līberī?

SERVUS FĪDUS

Bellum erat. Cōnsul magnās cōpiās convocāvit et castra in silvā locāvit. Cōnsul dux mīlitum erat et bellum amābat, sed līberī mīlitum bellum nōn amābant.

Barbarī castra oppugnant.[1] Cōnsul decimam legiōnem ēvocat. Mīlitēs pugnant et barbarōs superant. Tum cōnsul,[2] "Nunc patriam servāvistis. In oppidō patrēs mīlitum et mātrēs et frātrēs et sorōrēs et fīliī et fīliae fāmam dē victōriā exspectant. Quis nūntius erit et victōriam nūntiābit? Longa est via ā castrīs ad oppidum, et silvae nigrae sunt. In silvīs



THE OLYMPEIUM AT ATHENS.

The temple to Olympian Zeus was the largest sacred building of antiquity. It was about 130 by 350 feet, while an idea of the height may be gained from the columns in the picture. This was another of Hadrian's works, although it had been begun by the Athenians many centuries before.

multī barbarī sunt. Mīlitēs dēfessī sunt. Ubi est servus nōn timidus?"

Tum servus parvus litterās ē castrīs in oppidum portāvit et victōriam nūntiāvit. Cōnsul servum fīdum līberāvit. Servus cōnsulī ob iūdicium bonum grātiās ēgit.

Nōnne servus lībertātem amāvit?

---

[1] In narrative the present tense is often used instead of the perfect.
[2] Supply *said*.

LESSON XXII

SECOND CONJUGATION

*Auribus teneo lupum. — I've caught a Tartar.**

140. The Four Conjugations. — There are four regular conjugations of verbs. They are distinguished by the vowel before **-re** in the present infinitive active. Their stems are all found in the same way as those of **portō.** See §§ 66 and 98

	Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Ind.*	*Perf. Part.*	*Stem Vowel*
1st	**por'tō**	**portā're**	**portā'vī**	**portā'tus**	**ā**
2d	**mo'neō**	**monē're**	**mo'nuī**	**mo'nitus**	**ē**
3d	**dū'cō**	**dū'cere**	**dū'xī**	**duc'tus**	**e**
4th	**au'diō**	**audī're**	**audī'vī**	**audī'tus**	**ī**

141. The Second Conjugation. — The same rules as to stem, tense sign, and personal ending are followed for forming the various indicative tenses in the second conjugation as in the first. The *present stem* is **monē-**; the *perfect stem*, **monu-**.

In the first person singular of the present tense **e** of the stem is retained before the personal ending **-ō, moneō.**

142. Conjugation of **mo'neō**, *I advise, warn.*

Indicative Active

PRESENT		PERFECT	
I advise, warn		*I have advised, warned*	
mo'neō	**monē'mus**	**mo'nuī**	**monu'imus**
mo'nēs	**monē'tis**	**monuis'tī**	**monuis'tis**
mo'net [1]	**mo'nent**	**mo'nuit**	**monuē'runt (-ē're)**

* Terence. Literally: *I hold a wolf by the ears.*

[1] Note that the quantity of **e** corresponds to that of **a** in the first conjugation. See § 67. *a.*

IMPERFECT		PLUPERFECT	
I was advising, warning		*I had advised, warned*	
monē'bam	**monēbā'mus**	**monu'eram**	**monuerā'mus**
monē'bās	**monēbā'tis**	**monu'erās**	**monuerā'tis**
monē'bat	**monē'bant**	**monu'erat**	**monu'erant**

FUTURE		FUTURE PERFECT	
I shall advise, warn		*I shall have advised, warned*	
monē'bō	**monē'bimus**	**monu'erō**	**monue'rimus**
monē'bis	**monē'bitis**	**monu'eris**	**monue'ritis**
monē'bit	**monē'bunt**	**monu'erit**	**monu'erint**

143. VOCABULARY

ha'beō, -ē're, -uī, -itus, *have, hold, consider.*

mo'neō, -ē're, -uī, -itus, *advise, warn.*

te'neō, -ē're, -uī, ——, *hold.*

mo'veō, -ē're, mō'vī, mō'tus, *move*; (with **castra**) *break up.*

ti'meō, -ē're, -uī, ——, *fear, be afraid of.*

vi'deō, -ē're, vī'dī, vī'sus, *see.*

144. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

admonish	timid	tenacious
visible	movable	motion

(*a*) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

EXERCISES ON VERB FORMS

145. *Analyze each form:*

(*a*) 1. Habēbam, habuit, habēbunt, habuerātis. 2. Vidēmus,[1] vīdimus, videt, vīdit. 3. Timēbō, timuērunt, timuerint, timuit. 4. Movēbunt, mōvimus, movent, mōverātis. 5. Tenēbant, tenuistī, tenuit, tenuerint.

---

[1] Compare **vidēmus**, **vīdimus**; **videt**, **vīdit**.

(*b*) 1. Portat, laudāvī, timuī, nūntiāvit. 2. Parāvistis, vīdistis, dedistis, mōnstrābāmus. 3. Timēs, tenuerō, habēbat, vīdērunt. 4. Vidēbant, vāstās, monet, mōvit. 5. Portāvit, monuit, dedit, fuit.

(*c*) Give synopses in the indicative active of: **habeō, tenēs, timet, movēmus, vidētis, movent.**

146. *Translate, marking long vowels:*



THE AMPHITHEATER AT POMPEII.
Compare this with the pictures on pages 12 and 236.

(*a*) 1. We were moving, they had moved, he will move. 2. I shall warn, you had warned. 3. We have feared, they have seen, I shall have. 4. You have stormed, we were having. 5. They gave, they had been, they were seeing.

(*b*) 1. He warned, he gave, he saw. 2. He will have seen, he had held, you (*plu.*) are fearing. 3. You (*sing.*) were seeing, I had moved, you will have held. 4. They warn, we seized, he carries. 5. They had called, I am seeing, you moved.

ORAL EXERCISE

147. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Movēbisne? 2. Num mīlitem vīdistis? 3. Nōnne frātrem monuerās? 4. Habuistīne tēla? 5. Timetne cōnsul?



THE COLOSSEUM.

LESSON XXIII

THIRD DECLENSION (*Continued*)

Mens sana in corpore sano. — A sound mind in a sound body.*

148. The terminations of **neuters** of the third declension differ from masculines and feminines in the nominative and accusative, singular and plural. Compare § 45, *a*.

	Caput, n., *head* BASE, **capit-**	**Flūmen**, n., *river* BASE, **flūmin-**	**Corpus**, n., *body* BASE, **corpor-**	TERMINATIONS
		SINGULAR		
Nom.	ca′put	flū′men	cor′pus	—
Gen.	ca′pit**is**	flū′min**is**	cor′por**is**	**is**
Dat.	ca′pit**ī**	flū′min**ī**	cor′por**ī**	**ī**
Acc.	ca′put	flū′men	cor′pus	—
Abl.	ca′pit**e**	flū′min**e**	cor′por**e**	**e**
		PLURAL		
Nom.	ca′pit**a**	flū′min**a**	cor′por**a**	**a**
Gen.	ca′pit**um**	flū′min**um**	cor′por**um**	**um**
Dat.	capi′t**ibus**	flūmi′n**ibus**	corpo′r**ibus**	**ibus**
Acc.	ca′pit**a**	flū′min**a**	cor′por**a**	**a**
Abl.	capi′t**ibus**	flūmi′n**ibus**	corpo′r**ibus**	**ibus**

149. VOCABULARY

ca′put, ca′pitis, n., *head*.
clā′mor, clāmō′ris, m., *shout, noise*.
co′mes, co′mitis, m. and f., *companion*.
cor′pus, cor′poris, n., *body*.
flū′men, flū′minis, n., *river*.
ho′mō, ho′minis, m. and f., *man, human being*.
pēs, pe′dis, m., *foot*.
rēx, rē′gis, m., *king*.
quid, interrog. pron., *what?*

150. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

capital	regal	pedestrian
pedestal	corporal	corpse

(*a*) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

* Juvenal.

RULE

151. Ablative of Manner. — Manner is expressed by the ablative with **cum**. **Cum** may be omitted when the ablative is modified by an adjective.

He works with care. **Cum dīligentiā labōrat.**
He works with great care. **Magnā[1] cum dīligentiā labōrat.**
Magnā dīligentiā labōrat.

EXERCISES

152. *Translate, and give principal parts of each verb:*

(*a*) 1. Homō cum clāmōre comitem vocābat. 2. Mīlitēs cum dīligentiā oppidum servāvērunt. 3. Magistrī magnīs cum clāmōribus equōs vocāvērunt. 4. Caesar magnā cum dīligentiā decimam legiōnem in castrīs tenuerit. 5. Pedēs et corpus equī vidēmus.

(*b*) 1. Fīlius rēgis bonōs comitēs habēbit. 2. Hominēs decimam legiōnem timuerant. 3. Rēx magnum flūmen in silvā vīdit. 4. Hominēs castra mōverint. 5. Niger equus corpus magnum sed caput parvum habet.

153. *Translate, marking long vowels:*

(*a*) 1. The good teacher will advise the brother and sister. 2. With many shouts the soldiers seized the town. 3. The children feared the man's companion. 4. We fought with bad men, but were not victors. 5. The man's body was large, but (his) feet were small.

(*b*) 1. The men had wounded the horse's head with large stones. 2. We saw the judge and the king on the river. 3. Many men fear deep rivers. 4. The Gauls have walls around (their) towns. 5. With great fear the merchants had seen the soldiers.

---

[1] When the noun of a prepositional phrase is modified by an adjective, the adjective is often placed before the preposition.



THE ROMAN FORUM.

Probably no spot in the world is more interesting historically than the Forum, the center of life and political activity under the Republic and the Empire. Here the Romans gathered to discuss the topics of the day; here the populace thronged, clamoring for bread and games (panem et circenses); here the Gracchi and Cicero harangued the multitude.

In the picture the column at the extreme left is one of three remaining of the Temple of Vespasian; the arch at the left is that of Septimius Severus; in the center is the Temple of Saturn; while in the right center is the flat floor of the Basilica Julia. In front of this (to the left of it in the picture) ran the Sacred Way, which wound through the Forum and passed under the Arch of Titus (see cut on page 84) at the back of the picture to the right. To the left of the Arch of Titus is seen the Colosseum. In the right center of the Forum are two of the columns of the Temple of Castor. Compare this picture with those on pages 133, 190, and facing 129.

ORAL EXERCISE

154. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Quid vīdistī? 2. Suntne magnī lapidēs in flūmine? 3. Habēsne comitem? 4. Num ducēs castra mōvērunt? 5. Quis habet magnum caput?

LESSON XXIV

THIRD DECLENSION. I-STEMS

Ars longa, vita brevis. — "*Art is long and time is fleeting.*" *

155. Third declension nouns which have **i** before, or in place of, the vowel of certain endings are called **i-stems.**

(*a*) In the first declension we noticed that **a** seemed the predominant vowel; in the second, **o**. So we speak of them as the **a**-declension and the **o**-declension and we say their *stems* end in **ā** and **o**. Similarly we speak of the third declension as the consonant or **i**-declension, because its stems end in a consonant or in **i**. In the consonant stems which we have been studying so far the *stem* is just like the *base*. We are now to study **i**-stems. Their *stem* is made by adding **i** to the *base*.

156. The following nouns regularly have **i**-stems:

1. Masculine and feminine nouns ending in **-ēs** and **-is**, not increasing[1] in the genitive; nouns ending in **-ns**, **-rs**, and monosyllables in **-s** or **-x** following a consonant.

These all end in **-ī** or **-e** in the ablative singular, **-ium** in the genitive plural, and **-īs** or **-ēs** in the accusative plural.[2]

2. Neuter nouns ending in **-e**, **-al**, or **-ar**.

These end in **-ī** in the ablative singular, **-ium** in the genitive plural, and in **-ia** in the nominative and accusative plural.

---

* Literally: *Art is long, life short.*

[1] The expression "not increasing in the genitive" is used to distinguish nouns like **hostis**, whose genitive has the same number of syllables as the nominative, from nouns like **miles**, **militis**, whose genitive has more syllables than the nominative.

[2] Originally the accusative singular ended in **-im**, the ablative singular in **-ī**, and the accusative plural in **-īs**; but these endings have been largely displaced by **-em**, **-e**, and **-ēs**.

157.

Hos'tis, m., *enemy*.	**Ma're**, n., *sea*.	
BASE, **host-**	BASE, **mar-**	
STEM, **hosti-**	STEM, **mari-**	

	SINGULAR		TERMINATIONS M. and F.	Neut.
Nom.	**hos'tis**	**ma're**	**is**	**e**
Gen.	**hos'tis**	**ma'ris**	**is**	**is**
Dat.	**hos'tī**	**ma'rī**	**ī**	**ī**
Acc.	**hos'tem**	**ma're**	**em (im)**	**e**
Abl.	**hos'te**	**ma'rī**	**e (ī)**	**ī**
	PLURAL			
Nom.	**hos'tēs**	**ma'ria**	**ēs**	**ia**
Gen.	**hos'tium**	**ma'rium**	**ium**	**ium**
Dat.	**hos'tibus**	**ma'ribus**	**ibus**	**ibus**
Acc.	**hos'tīs, ēs**	**ma'ria**	**īs, ēs**	**ia**
Abl.	**hos'tibus**	**ma'ribus**	**ibus**	**ibus**

Note. — A few nouns like **ignis**, *fire*, have **ī** or **e** in the ablative singular.

158. VOCABULARY

a'nimal, -ā'lis, (-**ium**[1]), n., *animal.*
cae'dēs, -is, (-**ium**), f., *slaughter.*
hos'tis, hos'tis, m., *an enemy* — **hos'tēs, hos'tium,** *the enemy.*
ig'nis, -is, (-**ium**), m., *fire.*
ma're, -is, (-**ium**[2]), n., *sea.*
mōns, mon'tis, (-**ium**), m., *mountain.*
nox, noc'tis, (-**ium**), f., *night.*
pars, par'tis, (-**ium**), f., *part.*
por'ta, -ae, f., *gate.*
rī'pa, -ae, f., *bank* (of a river).
urbs, ur'bis, (-**ium**), f., *city.*
sae'pe, adverb, *often.*

159. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

hostile	ignite	marine	nocturnal
partial	riparian	portal	urban

(*a*) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

[1] Genitive plural. [2] The genitive plural is not used.

EXERCISES

160. *Translate, and decline the nouns:*

(*a*) 1. Multa animālia fuērunt in marī. 2. In Galliā noctēs sunt longae. 3. Agrōs hostium ignī vāstābimus. 4. Caput pars corporis est. 5. Caesar cum hostibus saepe pugnāvit et caedēs fuit magna.

(*b*) 1. Rīpae flūminis altae erant. 2. Dux mīlitēs in castrīs tenuit. 3. Agrōs ab urbe ad montem vāstāvit. 4. Mīlitēs ā portīs urbis tēla portābunt. 5. Patrēs fīliōs magnā cum dīligentiā monuerant.



CAESAR.

Caius Julius Caesar was the greatest Roman and one of the greatest men that ever lived, famous alike as general, statesman, and writer. Part of his *Gallic War*, referred to on page 5, will be found on pages 255–266.

161. *Translate, marking long vowels:*

(*a*) 1. Caesar had been victor. 2. (There) have been many fires on the mountain. 3. The enemy will pass the winter in the city. 4. (There) was a great slaughter of the enemy on the bank of the river. 5. The general's brother and sister see the large rivers.

(*b*) 1. There are often beautiful stones in the river. 2. They broke camp and stormed the gates of the enemy's town. 3. The lieutenants had seen the fires of the enemy's camp from the city. 4. The men announced (their) victory to Caesar with great shouts. 5. The little children had feared the large animals.

162. *State in Latin five facts.* One pupil may state a fact to another and he in turn tell it to the class in English.



RUINS OF THE SO-CALLED IMPERIAL PALACE AT TREVES.

Roman civilization spread not only through France and England but also into the valleys of the Moselle and Rhine. Treves was the Augusta Treverorum of the Romans and the chief city of the Treveri of whom Caesar writes in his *Gallic War*. It has more Roman remains than any other city of western Europe, including besides the palace above, an amphitheater, baths, and a great stone gateway.

HELVĒTIĪ

Gallia est omnis dīvīsa[1] in partēs trēs. Ūnam partem incolunt[2] Belgae, aliam[3] Aquītānī. Tertiam partem incolunt Gallī.

Helvētiī gēns[4] Gallōrum sunt. Cum Germānīs continenter bellum gerunt. Germānī trāns Rhēnum incolunt.[2] Flūmen Rhēnus agrōs Helvētiōrum ā Germānīs dīvidit. Agrī nōn lātī sunt. Helvētiī multum frūmentum nōn habent.

---

[1] *Divided.* [2] Notice that *incolunt* means *inhabit* when it is transitive and *dwell* when it is intransitive. [3] Supply *incolunt*. [4] See § 41.

LESSON XXV

REVIEW

Consensus facit legem. — *General consent makes the law.*

163. Derivatives. — Write all the English words you can that seem to be derived from the following:

arbor	lātus	victōria	fēmina
dux	frāter	pater	mīles
decimus	caput	corpus	homō
pēs	moveō	teneō	videō
hostis	ignis	pars	urbs

164. Word Drill. — (*a*) Give the nominative and genitive singular and the gender of the Latin nouns for the following:

gate	victory	foot	mother
man	slaughter	head	river
body	tree	brother	father
mountain	soldier	sister	enemy
city	children	sea	legion
weapon	fire	night	king
judge	stone	bank	leader

(*b*) See how many seconds it takes you to give the principal parts of the Latin verbs for the following:

advise	lay waste	show	hold
set free	have	see	storm
build	announce	give	conquer
move	fear	seize	warn

(*c*) The following words of the third declension have the same form in English and Latin: **animal, apex, arbor, ardor, axis, bases, candor, censor, cognomen, color, competitor, consul, dictator, discolor, error, favor, finis, furor, genus, gladiator, honor, horror, interior, janitor, labor, languor,**

liquor, major, minor, multiplex, odor, omen, onus, opus, orator, pallor, pastor, posterior, prior, ratio, senator, senior, speculator, splendor, superior, tutor, ulterior, vapor, vertex, victor, vigor. Look up the meanings of those you do not know.

165. Form Drill. — 1. Decline **iūdex, imperātor, flūmen, hostis, mare.** 2. Conjugate **videō** through the indicative active. 3. Give the genitive singular ending of nouns of the first, second, and third declensions; also the accusative singular, genitive plural, and accusative plural endings. 4. Make a statement in Latin containing an ablative of means and an ablative of accompaniment. 5. Make a statement in Latin containing an ablative of manner.

166. Questions. — 1. Of what gender are nouns of the first declension? of the second? of the third? 2. What are the nominative endings of masculine nouns of the second declension? of neuter nouns of the second declension? 3. How do i-stems differ from consonant stems in declension? 4. How are the conjugations of verbs distinguished? 5. How does the present stem of the first conjugation always end? the present stem of the second conjugation?

EXERCISES FOR SIGHT READING

167. 1. Puella fēminae librum dedit. 2. Multa aqua in agrō fuit. 3. Tēla explōrātōris multa et magna erant. 4. Iūdex fīliābus librōs pulchrōs dedit, sed fīliīs pīla. 5. Multī ducēs magnam mīlitum dīligentiam laudant. 6. Virī malum cōnsulem nōn amāverant. 7. Comes rēgis urbēs et flūmina vidēbit. 8. Hominēs decimam legiōnem timuerant. 9. Serva ā dominā ad mātrem dōna pulchra portābat. 10. Multī mercātōrēs montēs et mare vidēbunt.

LESSON XXVI

PASSIVE VOICE. ABLATIVE OF AGENT

Tempora mutantur. — *Times are changed.*

168. The Passive Voice[1] has the following **personal** endings:

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st	**-r**	**-mur**
2d	**-ris (re)**	**-minī**
3d	**-tur**	**-ntur**

The rules for forming the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future* indicative are the same as in the active voice, the passive personal endings taking the place of the active ones.

169. PASSIVE VOICE

Present Indicative

SINGULAR	PLURAL
por'tor, *I am carried.*	portā'**mur**, *we are carried.*
portā'**ris** (-**re**), *you are carried.*	portā'**minī**, *you are carried.*
portā'**tur**, *he is carried.*	portan'**tur**, *they are carried.*

Imperfect Indicative

SINGULAR	PLURAL
portā'**bar**, *I was (being) carried.*	portā**bā**'mur, *we were carried.*
portā**bā**'ris (-re), *you were carried.*	portā**bā**'minī, *you were carried.*
portā**bā**'tur, *he was carried.*	portāban'tur, *they were carried.*

Future Indicative

SINGULAR	PLURAL
portā'**bor**, *I shall be carried.*	portā'**bimur**, *we shall be carried.*
portā'**beris** (-re), *you will be carried.*	portā**bi**'minī, *you will be carried.*
portā'**bitur**, *he will be carried.*	portā**bun**'tur, *they will be carried.*

[1] Compare §§ 630 and 631.

(*a*) Note the change in the vowel of the tense sign in the first and second person singular and third person plural of the future passive.

(*b*) Compare carefully the English translation of the active and passive of each tense.

170. Perfect Tenses. — The perfect stem is not used in the passive voice. The participial stem is used instead. This is found by dropping **-us** from the perfect passive participle (the last one of the principal parts).

The *perfect*, *pluperfect*, and *future perfect* tenses in the passive are made by combining the participial stem, plus the endings seen in **magnus, -a, -um,** with forms of **sum.** The ending of the participial stem agrees with the subject and this form is conjugated with **sum** for the perfect, **eram** for the pluperfect, and **erō** for the future perfect.

Perfect

I have been (*was*) *carried*, etc.

portā'tus, (-a, -um)	**sum**	**portā'tī (-ae, -a)**	**su'mus**
	es		**es'tis**
	est		**sunt**

Pluperfect

I had been carried, etc.

portā'tus, (-a, -um)	**e'ram**	**portā'tī (-ae, -a)**	**erā'mus**
	e'rās		**erā'tis**
	e'rat		**e'rant**

Future Perfect

I shall have been carried, etc.

portā'tus, (-a, -um)	**e'rō**	**portā'tī, (-ae, -a)**	**e'rimus**
	e'ris		**e'ritis**
	e'rit		**e'runt**

(*a*) Conjugate **portō** in the feminine and neuter through the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses in the passive voice.

EXERCISES ON VERB FORMS

171. *Analyze each Latin form:*

(*a*) 1. Laudābantur, laudātī sumus, laudāvī. 2. Portāberis, portātum erat, portor. 3. Pugnāvimus, pugnābunt, pugnāverāmus. 4. Occupāta sunt, occupāta est, occupātur. 5. Amābiminī, amātī erimus, amātae erant.

(*b*) 1. Vulnerātus es, vulnerābāminī, vulnerāberis. 2. Dantur, dabuntur, dedimus. 3. Data erunt, cēlāberis, amābuntur. 4. Vocābāmur, vocāvistis, vocātum erat. 5. Aedificāvit, nūntiābitur, līberāta est.



PORTA A ROMANIS AEDIFICATA.

This is the Porta San Paolo at Rome, with the Pyramid of Cestius.

172. *Translate, marking long vowels:*

(*a*) 1. You will be wounded. 2. They had been concealed. 3. I shall be praised. 4. It will be announced. 5. They (*neut.*) have been seized.

(*b*) 1. It has been carried. 2. They were conquered. 3. They have passed the winter. 4. We have been called together. 5. It was saved.

173. VOCABULARY

centu'riō, -ō'nis, m., *centurion.*
Iū'lia, -ae, f., *Julia.*
proe'lium, proe'lī, n., *battle.*
stel'la, -ae, f., *star.*
vī'cus, -ī, m., *village.*
sem'per, adv., *always, ever.*
vir'tūs, -ū'tis, f., *virtue, valor, courage.*
dēfes'sus, -a, -um, *tired, weary.*
cul'pō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *blame, censure.*
nā'vigō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *sail.*

(*a*) Compare **vīcus, oppidum, urbs**; **saepe** and **semper**; **bellum** and **proelium**.

174. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

virtue culpable navigate constellation

(*a*) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

RULE

175. Ablative of Agent. — The personal agent with a passive verb is expressed by the ablative with **ā** or **ab**.

The good boy is praised by his father. **Puer bonus ā patre laudātur.**
The book was carried by the teacher. **Liber ā magistrō portābātur.**

EXERCISES

176. *Translate, and give the rule for each noun in the ablative case:*

(*a*) 1. Puer bonus ā mātre nōn saepe culpābitur. 2. Dominus in marī nāvigāvit. 3. Līberī ā Iūliā amantur. 4. Agrī ā mīlitibus vāstābuntur. 5. Vīcī parvī hostium ā cōpiīs Caesaris occupātī sunt.

(*b*) 1. In Galliā proelia ā fīdō centuriōne semper nūntiāta erant. 2. Lēgātī ā portīs tubā ā dēfessō mīlite vocābuntur. 3. Corpus equī multīs lapidibus vulnerābātur. 4. Agrī Galliae ignī ab hostibus vāstātī erunt. 5. Centuriōnēs urbēs magnās cum virtūte oppugnāverant.

177. *Translate:*



CENTURIO.

The Roman centurion commanded a century or company of 100 men.

(*a*) 1. The number of stars is great. 2. The teacher has been blamed by the boy's friend. 3. The centurions sailed with the soldiers. 4. Julia and (her) companion will have been loved by many friends. 5. The signals had always been given with a trumpet by the soldier.

(*b*) 1. The valor of the faithful soldiers will always be praised by the leaders. 2. The sons and daughters of the king are in the city with (their) dear friends. 3. The leader breaks camp and the tired soldiers are called into the village. 4. We see a part of the battle from the bank of the river. 5. The soldiers attacked the city with great valor.

ORAL EXERCISE

178. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Puerne ā mātre culpābātur? 2. Quis fīdō mīlitī tēlum dedit? 3. Lēgātusne mīlitēs vocābit? 4. Frūmentumne in oppidum portātum est? 5. Quis amīcus puerōrum erit?

LESSON XXVII

THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES

*Iacta alea est. — The die is cast.**

179. Adjectives of the third declension have the same endings as nouns of the third declension. Those ending in **-er** have a different form for each gender in the nominative singular and are called adjectives of *three endings*: **ācer, ācris, ācre.** Learn the declension of **ācer**, § 570.

(*a*) Almost all adjectives of the third declension, except comparatives, follow the inflection of **i**-stems; that is, they have **-ī** in the ablative singular, **-ium** in the genitive plural, **-īs** or **-ēs** in the accusative plural, masculine and feminine, and **-ia** in the nominative and accusative plural neuter.

180. VOCABULARY

ae'stās, -tā'tis, f., *summer.*
an'nus, -ī, m., *year.*
celer'itās, -tā'tis, f., *swiftness.*
cī'vis, cī'vis, (-ium), m. and f., *citizen.*
hō'ra, -ae, f., *hour.*
mēn'sa, -ae, f., *table.*
nau'ta, -ae, m., *sailor.*
nā'vis, nā'vis, (-ium), f., *ship.*
ā'cer, ā'cris, ā'cre, *sharp, keen, active.*
ce'ler, ce'leris, ce'lere, *quick, swift.*
ter'tius, -a, -um, *third.*

181. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

civic nautical navy accelerate

(*a*) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

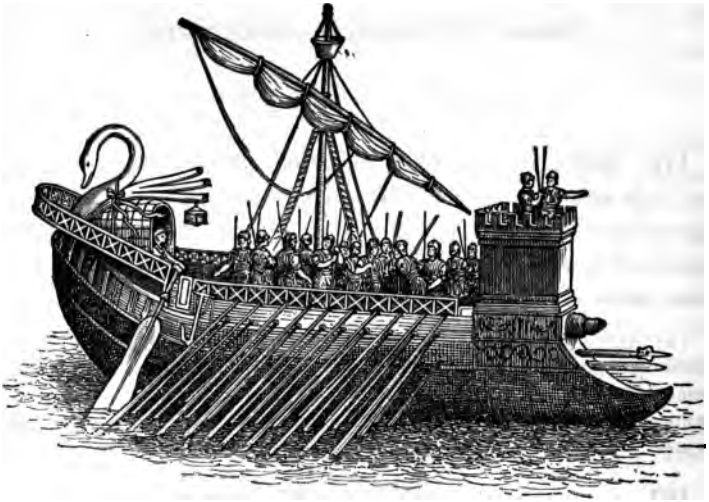
* Said by Caesar when he crossed the Rubicon. Quoted by Suetonius.

RULE

182. Ablative of Time. — Time when, or within which, is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

They were fighting at the tenth hour. **Decimā hōrā pugnābant.**

Many towns were stormed in one year. **Multa oppida ūnō annō oppugnāta sunt.**



Navis Romana.

This is a *trireme* or ship with three banks of oars. These usually furnished the power for the ship. The sail was not constructed for tacking and was used only with a following or favorable wind. Note that one of the meanings of **secundus** (from **sequor,** *to follow*) is *favorable.*

EXERCISES

183. *Translate, and give the construction of each noun:*

(*a*) 1. Aestāte mīlitēs Caesaris saepe pugnābant. 2. Dux dēfessus nocte castra movet. 3. Tertiā hōrā frūmentum ex nāvibus in oppidum ab nautīs portātum erat. 4. Centuriō cum decimā legiōne annō tertiō oppidum magnā cum virtūte occupāvit. 5. Virtūs cīvium magna erat.

(*b*) 1. Nautae nāvibus nāvigant. 2. Hominēs magnā cum celeritāte in vīcum portātī sunt. 3. Nāvēs celerēs ad Iūliam litterās portāverant. 4. Librī in mēnsā magnā sunt. 5. Gladiī ā filiīs iūdicis portātī erunt.

184. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. The good king was loved by the faithful citizens. 2. In the third year of the war Caesar built many ships and he was not blamed by the citizens. 3. Good sailors see the stars and the sea and ships. 4. The man's companion was a swift messenger. 5. At nine o'clock[1] the tired soldiers were overcome with great swiftness by the enemy.

(*b*) 1. A high wall has been built around the village. 2. (There) are always many battles in a long war. 3. Weapons will be shown to the active soldier by the good leader. 4. The consul's native land had broad fields. 5. Many villages had been laid waste with fire by the enemy.

185. Composition. — State in Latin three facts about the table or the things upon it. When one pupil has stated a fact, another should translate it.

PHRASES FROM CAESAR

186. *Commit to memory with the translation:*

1. Aestāte. 2. Tertiā hōrā. 3. Magnā cum celeritāte. 4. Cum decimā legiōne. 5. Memoriā tenēre, *to remember.*

Auxilium Amīcī

Est flūmen lātum et altum. Hominēs in flūmine nāvigant. Rīpās flūminis agricolae tenent. Frūmentum nāvigiīs in urbēs terrae ā nautīs portātur.

Nauta erat quī (*who*) nāvigium habuit. Saepe amīcus dē ventīs magnīs nautam admonuit, sed nauta ventōs nōn timē-

[1] The third hour.

bat. Cōpia frūmentī in nāvigium portāta est. Nauta sociōs pecūniā (*by means of money*) comparāvit et cum sociīs in flūmine nāvigāvit. Mox ventus magnus,[1] et nāvigium in perīculō fuit.

Erat in flūmine īnsula parva et in īnsulā vīlla. Amīcus nautae, quī forte in vīllā fuit, perīculum vīdit et multīs cum hominibus celeriter auxilium dedit; et[2] nauta et nautae[3] comitēs servantur.

Virtūtem et celeritātem virī ācris memoriā tenēbimus.



THE TEMPLE OF FORTUNA AT POMPEII.

This picture is interesting not so much for the ruins of the temple as for showing the ancient pavement and ruts worn by wagons, as well as the stepping stones on which the Pompeians crossed the street when it was wet.

[1] Supply fuit. [2] et . . . et, *both . . . and*. [3] See § 36.

LESSON XXVIII

THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES

*Fortes fortuna iuvat. — Fortune favors the brave.**

187. Adjectives of the third declension which end in **-is** have the masculine and feminine alike in the nominative singular and are called adjectives of *two endings:* **fortis, forte.** Learn the declension of **fortis,** § 571.

188. VOCABULARY

perī'culum, -ī, n., *danger.*
tem'pus, tem'poris, n., *time.*
vigi'lia, -ae, f., *watch* (part of the night).
bre'vis, -e, *short.*
for'tis, -e, *brave.*
gra'vis, -e, *heavy, severe.*
le'vis, -e, *light* (in weight).
om'nis, -e, *all, every.*
liben'ter, adv., *gladly.*
labō'rō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *labor, work.*
pro'perō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *hurry, hasten.*

189. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

temporary	brevity	grave	fortitude
levity	omnibus	peril	vigil

(*a*) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

EXERCISES

190. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Brevī tempore servī rēgis līberābuntur. 2. Pars cīvium ā fortī nautā laudābātur. 3. Cīvēs gravibus lapidibus vulnerātī erant. 4. Omnēs nautae ex urbe in nāvēs properāvērunt et in marī nāvigābant. 5. Centuriō levī gladiō pugnāverit.

* From the Roman dramatic poet, Terence.

(*b*) 1. Tertiā vigiliā noctis mīlitēs in magnō perīculō erant. 2. Virī in agrīs libenter labōrāverant. 3. Mīlitēs fortēs in castrīs saepe hiemāvērunt. 4. Decima legiō ā Gallīs nōn saepe superāta erat. 5. Pīctūrās multās et magnās in mēnsā vidēbāmus.

191. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. The nights in the summer were short. 2. The book will be light, but the stone will be heavy. 3. The good citizens always love a good king and do not fear (him). 4. The brave citizen had always been praised by the consul. 5. In the third watch of the night part of the soldiers were in camp.


IMPERATOR.

(*b*) 1. Good children are often glad to work (gladly work). 2. The tired citizens had often been censured by the brave leader. 3. In the summer all the sailors hastened to the ships with great swiftness. 4. A watch is a part of the night. 5. The boy had a heavy stone and wounded a large animal in (his) father's field.

PHRASES FROM CAESAR

192. *Commit to memory with the translations:*

1. Brevī tempore. 2. Tertiā vigiliā. 3. Cum mīlitibus decimae legiōnis.

LESSON XXIX

SECOND CONJUGATION, PASSIVE

Fas est et ab hoste doceri.—It is right to learn even from a foe.*

193. The passive of the second conjugation is formed according to the same rules as that of the first conjugation. See Lesson XXVI.

(*a*) Conjugate **moneō** according to the rules before consulting the book. Compare with § 587.

194. Adjectives of the third declension not ending in **-er** or **-is** and not of the comparative degree have one ending. Learn the declension of **potēns**, § 572.

195. VOCABULARY

Rō'ma, -ae, f., *Rome.*
de'cem, indeclinable adj., *ten.*
po'tēns, poten'tis, adj., *powerful, mighty.*
vē'lōx, vēlō'cis, adj., *swift.*
prōmo'veō, -ē're, -mō'vī, -mō'tus, *move forward.*
reti'neō, -ē're, -uī, reten'tus, *restrain, detain, retain.*
dē'leō, -ē're, -ē'vī, -ē'tus, *destroy.*

(*a*) Give synopses of **dēleō** and **retineō** in the indicative active and passive.

196. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

velocity   potential   promote   retain

(*a*) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

---

* **Literally:** *To be taught even by a foe.*

EXERCISES ON VERB FORMS

197. *Translate and analyze each form:*

(*a*) 1. Labōrat, monēmur, datur. 2. Vīsae sunt, vīdērunt, videntur. 3. Tenētur, tenēbātur, tenuerant. 4. Mōvī, mōtus est, movēbitur. 5. Habēbit, vidēbāris, culpāberis.

(*b*) 1. Dēlēvit, properāvit, dedit. 2. Monuerāmus, vīsī erāmus, tenuerint. 3. Dēlēbantur, datum est, monitī sumus. 4. Vulnerātī erātis, cēlābitur, vocāta eris. 5. Fuerant, erātis, fuimus.

198. *Translate, marking long vowels:*

(*a*) 1. We had, you were seen, they have been restrained. 2. He had been, he had been wounded, I am seen. 3. They will have been warned, it was given, we are. 4. They (*neut.*) had been destroyed, we have destroyed, it is destroyed. 5. It has been moved, they will be seen, I have seen.

(*b*) 1. He had held, he had been seen, he will be held. 2. You (*sing.*) will be warned, you will warn, he had been warned. 3. You (*plu.*) hasten, you (*plu.*) are seen, they had given. 4. We shall have been blamed, you had moved, they will be seen, it had been given. 5. We shall be destroyed, they have been destroyed, you (*sing.*) will be destroyed.

EXERCISES

199. *Translate, and conjugate each passive verb through the tense in which it is used.*

(*a*) 1. Cīvēs malī ab imperātōre bonō culpātī sunt. 2. Decem celerēs nūntiī ab hostibus vidēbantur. 3. Urbs magna ā duce fortī dēlēta erat. 4. Rōma erat urbs potēns et virī Rōmae Gallōs multōs superāvērunt. 5. Lēgātus magnum numerum nāvium vēlōcium habuit.

(*b*) 1. Tertiā hōrā mīlitēs ex castrīs magnā cum celeritāte properābunt. 2. Decimā hōrā ab explōrātōre celerī monēbe-



A Roman Triumph.

ris. 3. Dēfessae legiōnēs in castrīs retinēbantur. 4. Signa brevī tempore prōmōta erunt. 5. Fīliī agricolārum cum patribus in agrīs saepe libenter labōrāverant.

200. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Many are wounded in a short time. 2. The brave lieutenants have not been detained in camp. 3. Many large cities had been destroyed by the powerful general. 4. The tenth legion had been moved forward with great swiftness. 5. Ten swift ships were destroyed by the brave sailors.

(*b*) 1. The signals were seen by the Gauls at the third watch. 2. The lieutenant had been warned by all the scouts. 3. The mountains are high and the rivers are deep. 4. The fires of the enemy's camp were seen at night by the tired soldiers. 5. (There) had been a great slaughter.

ORAL EXERCISE

201. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Ubi castra Caesaris erant? 2. Pugnābisne libenter? 3. Nōnne cīvēs erunt potentēs? 4. Num noctēs brevēs sunt? 5. Quid in mēnsā est?

Dux Mīlitibus

"Tertiā vigiliā noctis hostēs urbem oppugnābunt. Ūnō annō multōs hostēs superāvistis. Aestāte et hieme ad portās urbis properāvistis. Anteā fortēs erātis, nunc etiam fortēs eritis. Perīculum nōn leve est, sed fortūna erit bona. Patrēs et līberī mīlitum proelium spectābunt. Libenter labōrābimus et brevī tempore nūntius vērus omnibus fīnitimīs victōriam nūntiābit."

Tum dux castra mōvit et mīlitēs ad portās dūxit.

LESSON XXX

REVIEW

Esse quam vidērī.* — *To be rather than to seem.*

202. Derivatives. — Write all the English words you can that seem to be derived from the following:

culpō	vēlōx	annus	cīvis
hōra	nauta	celer	tempus
brevis	fortis	gravis	omnis

203. Form Drill. — 1. Name the passive personal endings. 2. Give the formula for making each tense in the indicative mood, passive voice. 3. Conjugate **dō** and **dēleō** through the indicative mood, active and passive voices. See how rapidly you can do it.[1] 4. Decline **celer, brevis, vēlōx.**

204. Syntax Drill. — 1. Name two uses for the ablative without a preposition. 2. Name two uses for the ablative with **ā** or **ab**. 3. How is an ablative of means distinguished from an ablative of agent? 4. Into what three classes are adjectives of the third declension divided? 5. How do we determine to which one of these classes an adjective belongs?

205. Composition. — Write in Latin five or more connected sentences, telling something about the general and

* The motto of North Carolina.

[1] For form drill in declensions and conjugations it is often interesting to *keep score.* See how many seconds it takes each member to recite a certain declension or conjugation. Add five seconds for each mistake. Post on the blackboard the holders of "records" in the different "events," and give volunteers chances to lower these records from time to time.

his soldiers. (The best papers may be written on the board and read at sight by the class.)

206. EXERCISES FOR SIGHT READING

1. Erat magna caedēs hostium. 2. Tēlum fīdō mīlitī ā duce dabātur. 3. Aqua ad equōs albōs ā servīs portāta est.



THE COLOSSEUM.

This is a different view from the one on page 20. This huge amphitheater which seated nearly 100,000 was the scene of the gladiatorial combats of which the Romans were so fond. Here, too, early Christian martyrs were thrown to the lions to delight the depraved populace. Although the Colosseum was used as a quarry for building stone during the Middle Ages, it was so vast that it was but partly ruined.

4. Hominēs sunt miserī, sed nōn malī. 5. Multī et bonī cīvēs ā Caesare amātī erant. 6. Lēgātī magnā virtūte pugnābunt. 7. Pulchrī librī līberīs ā mātribus datī sunt. 8. Perīculum semper timuimus. 9. Imperātor bonus cīvēs malōs culpāvit. 10. Tertiā vigiliā dux oppidum hostium dēlēvit.

LESSON XXXI

POSSUM. COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE

*Possunt quia posse videntur. — They can because they think they can.**

207. Conjugation of *possum*, *I am able* or *I can* (= **potis,** *able* + **sum,** *I am*). Principal parts: **possum, posse, potuī.** It has no passive voice.

(*a*) **Possum** = **pot** + **sum**; the **t** becomes **s** before those forms of the verb **sum** which begin with **s**. The perfect stem tenses are formed according to the formula given for those tenses. See §§ 100 and 106.

Conjugate the indicative mood of **possum**, according to the above. Compare with § 591.

208. VOCABULARY

moe'nia, -ium, n., *fortifications* (walls of a city).
pa'lūs, -ū'dis, f., *swamp, marsh.*
po'pulus, -ī, m., *people, nation.*
cotīdiā'nus,[1] **-a, -um,** *daily.*
Rōmā'nus, -ī, m., *a Roman.*
Rōmā'nus, -a, -um, *Roman.*
dē'beō, -ē're, -uī, -itus, *owe, ought, must* (used with infinitive).
pos'sum, pos'se, po'tuī, *can, be able* (used with infinitive).
com'pleō, -ē're, -ē'vī, -ē'tus, *fill, cover.*
fe'rē, adv., *almost.*
cotī'diē,[1] adv., *daily, every day.*

209. ***What Latin words do the following suggest?***

possible complementary debit population

(*a*) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

RULE

210. Complementary Infinitive. — **Possum** and some other verbs take an infinitive to complete their meaning; this is called a *complementary infinitive.*

Caesar could fight. **Caesar pugnāre potuit.**
We ought to love our country. **Patriam amāre dēbēmus.**

*Virgil. Literally: *Because they seem to be able.*
[1] Spelled also with two t's.

EXERCISES

211. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Urbēs dēlēre potuerant. 2. Potuistīne monēre līberōs? 3. Omnēs hostēs superāre potuimus. 4. In proeliō perīculum timēre nōn dēbēmus. 5. Ā palūde ad rīpam flūminis castra movēre possumus.

(*b*) 1. Cum populō Rōmānō labōrāre nōn potuērunt. 2. Omnia moenia ab hostibus cotīdiē vidēbantur. 3. Mōns cōpiīs hostium complētus erat. 4. Tertiā vigiliā noctis imperātor magnō cum clāmōre mīlitibus signum dedit. 5. Rōmānī cum hostibus ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs pugnāvērunt.

212. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Caesar ought not to fear danger. 2. The Romans cannot defeat all (their) enemies in the swamp. 3. We could not overcome the Roman forces with swords and javelins. 4. The good soldiers were able to fight daily with great courage. 5. The Roman people could not love the enemies of (their) native land.

(*b*) 1. The banks of the broad river were high. 2. The swords had been retained with care. 3. Ten powerful cities have been seized by the enemy and filled with soldiers. 4. The boy's books are heavy, (his) sister's light. 5. Almost all the fortifications of the enemy were attacked in the third year of the war.

213. Composition. — Make five statements in Latin about things that are or have been possible.

POPULUS RŌMĀNUS

Populus Rōmānus ōlim potēns erat. Ferē omnēs gentēs orbis terrārum[1] pācāverat. In omnibus terrīs verba "Cīvis

---

[1] *orbis terrārum, world;* literally *the circle of the lands, i.e.* the lands lying around the Mediterranean.

Rōmānus sum!" hominem ex iniūriā servāre poterant. Itaque cīvitās Rōmāna praesidium in perīculīs dabat et magnum praemium virtūtis erat.

Poenae[1] nōn tardae ā barbarīs dabantur quī cīvem Rōmānum inimīcō modō (*in a hostile manner*) appellāre audēbant. In barbarōs iūdicia saepe inīqua fuērunt. Salūs cīvium suprēma lēx erat. Exempla multa et nōta in librīs scrīpta sunt.



THE ARCH OF TITUS.

In the background is the Palatine Hill, one of the "seven hills of Rome." This view looks toward the Forum, away from the Colosseum. The inscription reads: "The senate and the Roman people to divine Titus (son) of divine Vespasian and to Vespasian the August."

Titus was famous as the conqueror of Jerusalem. It was he who made the remark "I have lost a day," when on a certain evening he was unable to recall any good deed that he had done that day.

---

[1] For the meaning of poena with do, see general vocabulary.

LESSON XXXII

THIRD CONJUGATION

Montani semper liberi.* — *Mountaineers are always free. *

214. Third conjugation verbs end in **-ere** in the present infinitive. Principal parts of **dūcō**, *I lead:* **dū'cō, dū'cere, dūx'xī, duc'tus.** Present stem, **dūce-**; perfect stem, **dūx-**; participial stem, **duct-.**

(*a*) **Present tense** = *present stem* (with **e** changed to **i**) + *personal endings.* The vowel of the ending in the first person singular is simply ō, in the third person plural **u.**

Imperfect tense = *present stem* (with **e** lengthened) + *tense sign* **ba** + *personal endings.*

Future tense = *present stem* (with **e** lengthened) + *personal endings.* The vowel of the ending in the first person singular is **a** instead of **e**, in the third person singular and plural it is short **e.**

215. **Indicative Active**

SINGULAR		PLURAL
	PRESENT	
dū'cō	*I lead*	dū'cimus
dū'cis		dū'citis
dū'cit		dū'cunt
	IMPERFECT	
dūcē'bam	*I was leading*	dūcēbā'mus
dūcē'bās		dūcēbā'tis
dūcē'bat		dūcē'bant
	FUTURE	
dū'cam	*I shall lead*	dūcē'mus
dū'cēs		dūcē'tis
dū'cet		dū'cent

* The motto of West Virginia.

216. VOCABULARY

dū'cō, -ere, dū'xī, duc'tus, *lead.*
ēdū'cō, -ere, ēdū'xī, ēduc'tus, *lead out.*
redū'cō, -ere, redū'xī, reduc'tus, *lead back, withdraw.*
mit'tō, -ere, mī'sī, mis'sus, *send.*
āmit'tō, -ere, āmī'sī, āmis'sus, *send away, lose.*
remit'tō, -ere, remī'sī, remis'sus, *send back.*
pō'nō, -ere, po'suī, po'situs, *put, place;* (with **castra**) *pitch.*

217. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

position mission reduce remit

(*a*) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

EXERCISES ON VERB FORMS

218. *Analyze each Latin form:*

(*a*) 1. Ēdūcent, ēdūcēbat, redūcimus. 2. Mittēs, mittētis, mittunt. 3. Pōnēbant, pōnimus, castra pōnent. 4. Āmittis, āmittitis, āmittō. 5. Amat, timet, dūcam.

(*b*) 1. Mittēbās, pōnēbāmus, remittō. 2. Redūcam, mittit, āmittent. 3. Dūcet, dūcit, dūcēs. 4. Prōmovet, ēdūcēbātis, pōnēmus. 5. Redūcēs, redūcimus, redūcunt.

219. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. They were losing, you lose, you will lose. 2. You will send back, you are sending back, you send back. 3. I shall lead out, they will lead out, you will lead out. 4. We shall fight, we shall move, we shall send. 5. We are leading, they were pitching camp.

(*b*) 1. He will lead out, we were placing, you are sending. 2. I lose, we shall place, we were leading. 3. They will lead, we shall lose, I am sending. 4. He is sending away, we place, they lead. 5. We were sending, I shall send, you were leading.

ORAL EXERCISE

220. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Mittēsne līberōs? 2. Dūcēbāsne? 3. Num castra pōnit? 4. Nōnne mīlitēs remittēmus? 5. Dūcisne populum Rōmānum?



THE SO-CALLED TEMPLE OF VESTA AT ROME.

Perhaps no building in Rome has been the subject of more controversy than this. Because the temple of Vesta in the Forum was round, this was wrongly called the temple of Vesta, and although it has been called by ten different names, no one knows for certain what it was. It is now the church of Saint Mary of the Sun.

LESSON XXXIII

APPOSITION. PARSING

*Ignis aurum probat, miseria fortes viros.—Calamity is man's true touchstone.**

221. Apposition.—A noun in apposition with another noun or with a pronoun agrees with it in case.

We saw the city (*of*) *Rome.* **Vīdimus urbem Rōmam.**
The boy loves his sister Julia. **Puer sorōrem Iūliam amat.**

222. Parsing.—To parse a verb, give:

(1) Conjugation, (2) principal parts, (3) voice, (4) mood, (5) tense, (6) person, (7) number, (8) rule.

In § 223, *a*, 1, **remittit** would be parsed as follows: **remittit:** *third conjugation; principal parts*, remittō, remittere, remīsī, remissus; *active voice; indicative mood; present tense; third person; singular number;* agreeing with the subject **nauta.** *Rule:* A verb agrees with its subject in person and number.

EXERCISES

223. *Translate,*[1] *and parse each indicative verb form:*

(*a*) 1. Nauta, potēns vir, nāvēs remittit. 2. Caesar, bonus dux, castra pōnet. 3. Pater bonus ad fīliam Iūliam multa dōna mittit. 4. Virī omnia tēla āmittent. 5. Caesar, imperātor magnus, ad proelium mīlitēs Rōmānōs saepe ēdūcit.

(*b*) 1. Animālia in vīcum redūcere nōn potuērunt. 2. Virī frūmentō decem vēlōcēs nāvēs complēverant. 3. Tertiā vigiliā fīdus cīvis ad oppidum nūntium mittet. 4. Dux circum mūrum virōs ferē cotīdiē dūcet et portās urbis vidēbit. 5. Virī semper fortēs fuērunt et patriam amāvērunt.

* Seneca. Literally: *Fire tests gold, misfortune brave men.* The English is from Beaumont and Fletcher's *Cupid's Revenge.*

[1] Pronounce the Latin words in groups, and translate in groups.

224. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Boys often lose (their) books. 2. The citizens will place heavy stones on the wall. 3. The children are leading the horses to the river, and will give the animals water. 4. We had not been able to destroy the cities of the enemy. 5. In the summer of the third year of the war Caesar will break camp, and will send the soldiers back into the city of Rome.

(*b*) 1. Many (persons) have been wounded with swords by (their) companions. 2. We could not pitch the camp in a swamp. 3. We were glad to send (gladly sent) the women and children back to the fortifications. 4. The Gauls ought to send (their) weapons with great care. 5. The large ships will have been seized by Caesar.



ROMAN BALANCES.

These are some of the many utensils found at Pompeii, and show how far the Romans were advanced in a practical, material way.

ORAL EXERCISE

225. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Quid nauta videt? 2. Estne nauta in marī? 3. Ubi Caesar castra pōnet? 4. Duxne virōs ēdūcit? 5. Labōrāsne cum dīligentiā cotīdiē?

LESSON XXXIV

THIRD CONJUGATION. ABLATIVE OF CAUSE

Lux et veritas. — *Light and truth.**

226. Third Conjugation, Perfect Tenses. — Following the rules in §§ 100 and 106 conjugate **dūcō** through the *perfect*, *pluperfect*, and *future perfect active*. Compare with § 588.

227. VOCABULARY

auxi'lium, auxi'lī, n., *aid, help;* pl., *auxiliary forces, troops.*
fī'nis, -is, (-ium), m., *end,* pl., *territory.*
i'ter, iti'neris, n., *journey, road, march.*
lūx, lū'cis, f., *light.*
prīn'ceps, -cipis, m., *chief.*
prī'mus, -a, -um, *first,* **prī'mā lū'ce**, *at daybreak.*
scrī'bō, scrī'bere, scrīp'sī, scrīp'tus, *write.*
cōnscrī'bō, -ere, -p'sī, -p'tus, *enroll, enlist, levy.*
cur'rō, cur'rere, cucur'rī, cur'sus, *run.*
relin'quō, relin'quere, relī'quī, relic'tus, *leave.*
trāns, prep. with acc., *across.*
cūr, interrog. adv., *why?*

228. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

scripture current primary relinquish itinerary

(*a*) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

RULE

229. Ablative of Cause. — Cause may be expressed by the ablative, usually without a preposition.

The man ran from fear. **Vir timōre cucurrit.**
Caesar praised the soldiers on account of their victories. **Caesar victōriīs mīlitēs laudāvit.**

* The motto of Yale University.

EXERCISES

230. *Translate, and explain the use of each ablative and accusative:*

(*a*) 1. Dux dīligentiā fīdum mīlitem laudāvit. 2. Līberī perīculō cucurrērunt. 3. Prīnceps victōriā magnā virōs laudābit. 4. Caesar auxilia trāns flūmen dūxerit. 5. Rēx multās et longās litterās ad centuriōnem scrīpsit.



THE CLAUDIAN AQUEDUCT.

This most magnificent of Roman aqueducts was finished by the Emperor Claudius in 52 A.D. It brought water from springs in the Sabine Hills east of Rome. It is shown also in the picture on page 26.

(*b*) 1. Iter nōn longum erat. 2. Ad castra auxilia remittere dēbēmus. 3. In fīnibus Gallōrum multōs mīlitēs cōnscrīpserit. 4. Ex fīnibus hostium in urbem rēgis cucurristī. 5. Prīmā lūce prīnceps in castrīs auxilia relīquit.

231. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. The end of the journey will be in a swamp. 2. The soldiers ran because of (their) great fear. 3. The Romans cannot send back aid to the town because of the great danger. 4. The journey into the territory of the enemy was

short. 5. The mothers will praise the children for (their) diligence.

(*b*) 1. I shall write letters and send (them) to (my) friends. 2. In war the men leave the women and children in the town. 3. The horse ran with great swiftness. 4. At daybreak we had led the soldiers out of the camp. 5. Ten weary men left the battle and were blamed by the chief.

ORAL EXERCISE

232. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Cūr dux laudābitur? 2. Ubi prīma legiō fuerat? 3. Cūr potentēs hostēs superābantur? 4. Cūr virī currunt? 5. Quid rēx scrīpsit?

Puer et Pōma

Erat in agrō arbor, in quā (*on which*) pōma multa erant. Puer pōma vīdit. Prīmā lūce in arborem ascendit et decem pōma ab arbore remōvit. Iam ex arbore dēscendere oportuit[1] et ab agrō discēdere; sed agricola, quī puerum vīderat, magnum canem in agrum dūxit.

Tum puer perterritus (*thoroughly frightened*) magnō clāmōre locum complēvit; sed auxilium āfuit.[2] Agricola appropinquāvit et puerum ita monuit: "Pōma nōn tua[3] sunt. Cūr pōma aliēna ab arbore removēbās? Nōn aequum erat. Fūr es, et canis fūrēs mordēbit. Bonus puer esse dēbēs." Tum puer exclāmat: "Numquam iterum fūr erō. Nunc canem ex agrō ēdūc (*lead out*)."

Agricola rīsit,[4] canem abdūxit. Puer incolumis relīctus est, sed pōma āmīserat. Bonum cōnsilium agricolae posteā memoriā tenuit.

---

[1] *It was fitting* or *necessary*; **oportet** is an impersonal verb, *i.e.*, a verb used only in the third person singular, without a personal subject. Here the infinitives **dēscendere** and **discēdere** form the subject of **oportuit**.

[2] From **absum**. [3] From **tuus, -a, -um**. [4] From **rīdeō**.

LESSON XXXV

THIRD CONJUGATION, PASSIVE

*Nec pluribus impar.—A match for many.**

233. Following the rules in Lesson XXVI, conjugate **dūcō** through the *indicative passive*. Compare with § 588. Note the only peculiarity in the passive.

234. VOCABULARY

cī'vitās, -tā'tis, f., *state.*
co'hors, cohor'tis, f., *cohort* (the tenth part of a legion).
e'ques, e'quitis, m., *horseman*, pl., *cavalry.*
lēx, lē'gis, f., *law.*
nō'men, -inis, n., *name.*
ōrā'tiō, -ō'nis, f., *speech, oration.*
pe'des, pe'ditis, m., *foot soldier*, pl., *infantry.*
vul'nus, vul'neris, n., *wound.*
pār, (gen.) **pa'ris**, adj., *equal.*

235. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

legal equestrian nominate pedestrian

(*a*) **Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.**

EXERCISES ON VERB FORMS

236. *Analyze each form:*

1. Ductī erant, mīsit, curram, cōnscrīptī sumus. 2. Videt, dūcet, vīsae erimus, ēdūxit. 3. Positum erat, relinquar, scrībētur, missa est. 4. Dūceris, dūcēris, āmittēbantur, dabitur. 5. Habēbit, amāberis, remittentur, ēdūciminī.

237. *Translate:*

1. They have led out, we shall be sent. 2. The letter will be written, had been written. 3. They had run, you (*plu.*)

---

* **The motto of Louis XIV. Literally:** ***And not unequal to more.***

will run, I run. 4. We had been led back, it was placed, I led. 5. It has been moved, we shall move, I was seeing.

RULE

238. Ablative of Specification. — The ablative of specification is used without a preposition to define the application of a noun, adjective, or verb. It answers the question "In what respect?"

He was king in name. **Rēx nōmine erat.**
The boy was small in body. **Puer corpore parvus erat.**
He was not surpassed in courage. **Virtūte nōn superābātur.**

EXERCISES

239. *Translate, and parse all the nouns in the ablative case:*

(*a*) 1. Prīncipēs virtūte ā mīlitibus superātī sunt. 2. Equī ducum celeritāte parēs erunt. 3. Lēgēs cīvitātis bonae erant. 4. Equus celeritāte superābātur. 5. Auxilia virtūte equitēs superāvērunt.

(*b*) 1. Ōrātiō longa scrībētur. 2. Centuriō decimae legiōnis in castrīs relīctus erat. 3. Nōmina centuriōnum in librō scrībuntur. 4. Pār numerus peditum et auxiliōrum ā Caesare cōnscrībētur. 5. Dux fortis magnā celeritāte cucurrit, et tertiam cohortem legiōnis relīquit.

240. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. (There) was a city, Rome by name. 2. The cavalry and infantry will be equal in courage. 3. The state was destroyed by bad citizens. 4. At daybreak the horseman was sent into the city. 5. The chief's friend has written many orations.

(*b*) 1. They blamed the king because of the severe laws. 2. Many cohorts had been enlisted across the river, and Caesar

pitched his camp in the territory of the enemy. 3. The town has many gates, and in war many soldiers are left on the wall. 4. They sent the horseman into camp because of his wounds. 5. In the first watch we can see the camp of the Gauls.



A ROMAN CAMP.

Roman camps were always surrounded by a wall, **vallum**, and a ditch, **fossa**, which are plainly seen in this picture. Caesar's troops fortified a camp each night. The camps for winter quarters were more elaborate and often had towers along the walls with covered spaces between them.

ORAL EXERCISE

241. ***Answer these questions in Latin, using the passive voice in 1, 3, and 4:***

1. Quis litterās scrībet? 2. Ubi castra pōnēbās? 3. Ubi tēla relinquēbantur? 4. Quis ōrātiōnēs scrībit? 5. Cūr pedes cucurrit?

LESSON XXXVI

REVIEW

*Iustitia omnibus.—Justice for all.**

242. Derivatives.—Write all the English words you can which seem to be derived from the following:

populus	dēbeō	possum	compleō
dūcō	mittō	pōnō	auxilium
fīnis	iter	lūx	prīnceps
prīmus	scrībō	currō	relinquō
lēx	nōmen	ōrātiō	pedes

243. Form Drill.—1. Name each of the three stems of **laudō, moveō, mittō.** 2. In the third conjugation, of what tenses are the following the signs: **e, ī, ba, era, eri**? 3. Conjugate **possum** through the indicative mood.

244. Syntax Drill.—1. What is a *complementary infinitive?* 2. Give the rule for *apposition, cause, specification*, and illustrate each with a Latin sentence. 3. Give the principal parts and the stems of the following verbs: **dūcō, pōnō, scrībō, currō, relinquō.**

245. EXERCISES FOR SIGHT READING

1. Agricola bonus in agrīs equōs multōs et vēlōcēs habēbit. 2. Multōs peditēs cōnscrībere potuerāmus. 3. Cōpiae Rōmānae in rīpā castra pōnēbant. 4. Hostēs ex oppidō mittere nōn possumus. 5. Equī trāns agrum in silvās cucurrērunt. 6. Prīmā lūce mīlitēs castra relīquērunt. 7. In Galliā imperātor mīlitēs fortēs cōnscrīpserat. 8. Victōria ducis cīvitātī nūntiābitur. 9. Līberī in vīcum parvum remittentur.

* The motto of the District of Columbia.

10. Litterae multae ā rēge scrīptae sunt et trāns flūmen in fīnēs hostium missae sunt.

Rēx Galliae

In Galliā, quae (*which*) trāns mare est, fuit rēx, quī (*who*) magnam auctōritātem habuit. Magnās cōpiās et[1] equestrēs et pedestrēs cōnscrīpserat. Saepe rēx mīlitēs ex castrīs ēdūcēbat. Ita gentēs fīnitimās terrēbat.



Ancient Gallic Monuments.

These rude stones, called *menhirs*, were used by the ancient Gauls as monuments to their dead.

Bellum ā gente barbarā concitātum est. Rēx mīlitēs prōdūxit et magnā vōce dīxit: "Pācem iam (*longer*) nōn habēmus. Nunc est tempus cum barbarīs bellum gerere. Negōtium est difficile, sed, sī fortēs eritis,[2] patriam dēfendētis et hominēs malōs in servitūtem redigētis." Tum ad extrēmum fīnem Galliae prōcessit et cōpiās īnstrūxit.

Sed iter longum fuerat, et mīlitēs dēfessī erant. Barbarī nōn aderant. Rēx prīncipēs cōnsuluit. Breve tempus[3] mīlitibus ad quiētem dedit; tum sine proeliō omnēs cōpiās in castra remīsit et castrīs continuit.

---

[1] Et . . . et, *both . . . and.* [2] *are.* [3] Accusative case.

LESSON XXXVII

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

Magna est vis consuetudinis. — *Great is the force of habit.*

246. Comparison of Adjectives. — Adjectives expressing quality are compared,[1] in Latin as in English, in three ways: *regularly*, *irregularly*, and *by the use of the Latin words for "more" and "most."*

247. Regular Comparisons. — The nominative of the comparative is formed by adding **-ior**, *mas.* and *fem.*, **-ius**, *neut.*, and of the superlative by adding **-issimus, -a, -um** to the base of the positive.

Long, **longus**; *longer*, **longior**; *longest*, **longissimus.**
Swift, **vēlōx**; *swifter*, **vēlōcior**; *swiftest*, **vēlōcissimus.**

(*a*) The comparative may be translated *swifter*, *more swift*, *too swift*, or *rather swift;* the superlative, *swiftest*, *most swift*, or *very swift.*

(*b*) Compare the following: **brevis, fortis, altus, potēns.**

248. The *comparative* is declined like adjectives of the third declension, two endings, the neuter ending in **-ius.** They are *not* **i**-stems.

Longior, *longer*. BASE, **longiōr-**

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MAS. and FEM.	NEUTER	MAS. and FEM.	NEUTER
Nom.	lon'gior	lon'gius	longiō'rēs	longiō'ra
Gen.	longiō'ris	longiō'ris	longiō'rum	longiō'rum
Dat.	longiō'rī	longiō'rī	longiō'ribus	longiō'ribus
Acc.	longiō'rem	lon'gius	longiō'rēs (īs)	longiō'ra
Abl.	longiō're	longiō're	longiō'ribus	longiō'ribus

(*a*) The *superlative* is declined like **magnus, -a, -um.**

[1] Compare §§ 620 and 621.

249. VOCABULARY

altitū'dō, altitū'dinis, f., *height; depth.*

Germā'nia, -ae, f., *Germany.*

Germā'nus, -ī, m., *a German.*

Germā'nus, -a, -um, *German.*

magnitū'dō, magnitū'dinis, f., *greatness, size.*

multitū'dō, multitū'dinis, f., *great number, multitude.*

pāx, pā'cis, f., *peace.*

pōns, pon'tis, m., *bridge.*

vīs, vīs, vī, vim, vī, f., *force;* pl., **vī'rēs, vī'rium**, etc., *strength* (usually *bodily strength*).

vōx, vō'cis, f., *voice, word, expression.*

quam, adv., *than.*

aut, conj., *or.*



PONS ROMANUS.

This ancient bridge has been often restored. It was erected on the spot where the plebeians in 494 B.C. crossed the river, the Anio, in what was called the first "secession of the plebs." This was a huge strike, and it resulted in a revision of the debtor laws and the establishment of *tribunes of the people*, who had power to forbid, or veto, any unjust act of a magistrate. Thus the first big Roman strike brought about the first Roman "veto." (**Veto** means *I forbid*.)

250. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

multitude vim vocal magnitude pacify

(*a*) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

EXERCISES

251. *Translate, and decline each adjective:*

(*a*) 1. Germānī fortiōrēs fuērunt. 2. Iter brevius erit. 3. Rēgēs Germānī quam cīvēs potentiōrēs semper erant. 4. Virī vīribus fēminās superant. 5. Hominēs in pāce saepe fortiōrēs sunt quam in bellō.

(*b*) 1. Multitūdō tēlōrum gravissimōrum in ponte relīcta est. 2. Cohors in fīnibus Germānōrum cotīdiē cōnscrīpta erat. 3. Imperātor vōce cōnsulis vocābātur. 4. Altitūdō mūrī est magna. 5. Patrēs magnitūdine corporum fīliōs superant.

252. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Seas are deeper and wider than rivers. 2. Nights are very short in summer. 3. The infantry are often braver than the cavalry. 4. The consul's speeches are longer than (those) of the citizens. 5. Caesar with his powerful cavalry excelled the Germans in strength.

(*b*) 1. He was king of the Germans in name. 2. The mountain surpassed the wall in height. 3. The bravest men love peace. 4. The weary infantry could not pitch camp in Germany. 5. The Roman cohorts surpassed the Gauls in the great number of their men.

ORAL EXERCISE

253. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Eratne Caesar fortior quam Mārcus? 2. Ubi hominēs fortissimī sunt? 3. Estne iter breve? 4. Cūr līberī laudābantur? 5. Nōnne decem cohortēs in legiōne sunt?

LESSON XXXVIII

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES IN *-ER* AND *-LIS*

Similia similibus curantur.—*Like cures like.**

254. Adjectives ending in *-er* form their superlatives by adding **-rimus, -a, -um,** to the nominative singular masculine of the positive. The comparative is formed regularly.

mi'ser, mi'sera, mi'serum	mise'**rior, -ius**	miser'**rimus, -a, -um**
ā'cer, ā'cris, ā'cre	ā'**crior, -ius**	ācer'**rimus, -a, -um**

255. The following adjectives in **-lis** form their superlatives by adding **-limus, -a, -um** to the base of the positive. The comparative is formed regularly.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
fa'cilis, -e, *easy*	**facil'lior, -ius**	**facil'limus, -a, -um**
diffi'cilis, -e, *difficult*	**diffici'lior, -ius**	**difficil'limus, -a, -um**
si'milis, -e, *like*	**simi'lior, -ius**	**simil'limus, -a, -um**
dissi'milis, -e, *unlike*	**dissimi'lior, -ius**	**dissimil'limus, -a, -um**

(*a*) Compare the following: **celer, pulcher, līber, facilis.**

256. VOCABULARY

disci'pulus, -ī, m., *pupil.*
diffi'cilis, -e, *difficult.*
fa'cilis, -e, *easy.*
si'milis, -e, *like, similar.*
dissi'milis, -e, *unlike, dissimilar.*
ni'hil (or **nīl**), n., indeclinable noun, *nothing.*
prīvā'tus, -a, -um, *private.*

257. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

disciple   similar   difficult   facility

(*a*) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

* Literally: *Like things are cured by like.*

RULE

258. Dative with Adjectives. — The dative is used to complete the meaning of adjectives meaning *like*, *unlike*, *equal*, *unequal*, and *near*.

A sword is not like a javelin. **Gladius pīlō nōn similis est.**

The boys are not equal to their fathers in courage. **Puerī virtūte patribus nōn parēs sunt.**



SACRIFICING A BULL.

This Roman altar was found at Pompeii; it illustrates one phase of Roman religion, which is a fascinating subject. The Romans were very business-like about their religion, driving bargains with their gods and looking for omens till they found the one they wanted.

EXERCISES

259. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Iter facillimum erit. 2. Bellum pācī dissimillimum semper fuit. 3. Oppidum urbī simile nōn erat. 4. Nihil bonīs amīcīs pār esse potest. 5. Itinera difficiliōra fuērunt.

(*b*) 1. Prīvātus cīvis pār vīribus equitī erat. 2. Oppidum pulcherrimum vīsum erat. 3. Dux multa tēla ad mīlitēs mīsit. 4. Multa et pulcherrima animālia in marī vīsa sunt. 5. Caesar in flūmine Galliae pontem aedificāvit.

260. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. The soldiers were very active. 2. The book is not difficult, but very easy. 3. Javelins are unlike swords. 4. Nothing had been more difficult than a journey on the sea. 5. The laws of the Romans were very unlike (those) of the Germans.

(*b*) 1. The soldiers had been led out of the camp at daybreak. 2. Marcus had been more active than his brother. 3. The ditch around the wall was very deep and wide. 4. The river is rather long and very deep. 5. Many bridges have been built across[1] very wide rivers.



RELIEF UNDER THE ARCH OF TITUS.

This shows the spoils from the temple at Jerusalem, taken by Titus (see page 84) and carried in his triumph. These include the famous seven-branched candle-stick and the silver trumpets.

ORAL EXERCISE

261. ***Answer these questions in Latin:***

1. Estne liber difficilior? 2. Nōnne puer discipulus bonus est? 3. Erantne servī parēs dominīs? 4. Quid potest pulchrius esse quam rosa? 5. Estne urbs similis oppidō?

---

[1] *Across* (*over*, as in this sentence), **in** with the ablative; *across* (*on the other side of*) **trāns** with the accusative.

LESSON XXXIX

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

Salus populi suprema lex esto.*—*Let the safety of the people be the highest law.*

262. Irregular Comparison. — The following adjectives are irregularly compared:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bo'nus, *good*	**me'lior**, *better*	**op'timus**, *best*
ma'lus, *bad*	**pe'ior**, *worse*	**pes'simus**, *worst*
mag'nus, *great*	**ma'ior**, *greater*	**max'imus**, *greatest*
par'vus, *small*	**mi'nor (mi'nus)**, *smaller*	**mi'nimus**, *smallest*
mul'tus, *much*		**plū'rimus**, *most*
mul'tum (neut.)	**plūs**, *more*	**plū'rimum**, *most*
mul'tī, *many*	**plū'rēs**, *more*	**plū'rimī**, *most*
se'nex, *old*	**se'nior (ma'ior nā'tū**[1]), *older, elder*	**max'imus nā'tū**, *oldest, eldest*
iu'venis, *young*	**iū'nior (mi'nor nā'tū)**, *younger*	**mi'nimus nā'tū**, *youngest*

(*a*) Four adjectives with regular comparatives have two irregular superlatives:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
ex'terus, *outside*	**exte'rior**, *outer*	**extrē'mus** or **ex'timus**, *outermost, last*
in'ferus, *below*	**infe'rior**, *lower*	**in'fimus** or **ī'mus**, *lowest*
pos'terus, *following, next*	**poste'rior**, *later*	**postrē'mus** or **pos'tumus**, *last*
su'perus, *above*	**supe'rior**, *higher*	**suprē'mus** or **sum'mus**, *highest, last*

* The motto of Missouri.

[1] **Nātū**, *in age*, is ablative of specification and does not change its form as do **maior, maximus, minor,** and **minimus** to agree with their nouns.

(*b*) The following have no positive, but are formed from prepositions:

PREP.	POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
(cis, citrā)	—	**cite'rior**, *hither*	**ci'timus**, *hithermost*
(in, intrā)	—	**inte'rior**, *inner*	**in'timus**, *innermost*
(prae, prō)	—	**pri'or**, *former*	**prī'mus**, *first*
(prope)	—	**pro'pior**, *nearer*	**prox'imus**, *nearest, next*
(ultrā)	—	**ulte'rior**, *farther*	**ul'timus**, *last*

(*c*) Adjectives which have a vowel before the ending **-us** usually form the comparative and superlative by the use of the adverbs **magis**, *more*, and **maximē**, *most;* **idō'neus, magis idō'neus, maximē idō'neus.**

263. VOCABULARY

cite'rior, cite'rius, *hither.*
ex'terus, -a, -um, *outside.*
īn'ferus, -a, -um, *below.*
iu'venis, -e, *young* as noun, m., *young man, youth.*
idō'neus, -a, -um, *fit, suitable.*
pri'or, pri'us, *former.*
pos'terus, -a, -um, *following.*
pro'pior, pro'pius, *nearer, next.*
se'nex, gen., **se'nis**, *old;* as noun, m., *old man.*
su'perus, -a, -um, *above.*
ulte'rior, -ius, *farther.*
Helvē'tiī, -ō'rum, m., *Helvetians.*

264. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

exterior priority juvenile senior superior

(*a*) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

EXERCISES

265. *Translate, and compare all the adjectives:*

(*a*) 1. Virtūs Helvētiōrum maxima erat. 2. Vīdimus minus oppidum. 3. Puer maior nātū est quam soror. 4. Summus[1] mōns ab hostibus vīsus est. 5. Sumus[2] in īnferiōre parte flūminis.

(*b*) 1. Nihil melius est quam pāx. 2. Caesar in citeriōre Galliā peditēs retinuit. 3. Propiōrēs Rōmae quam castrīs fuerāmus. 4. Proximā nocte in ulteriōrem Galliam cōpiās mīsimus. 5. Prīma pars librī facilior quam extrēma habita est.

[1] *Top of the mountain.* [2] Compare **summus** and **sumus.**

266. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Small animals are often rather beautiful. 2. The boy's companion can be very good. 3. Very many wars were very long. 4. The youngest soldiers are often the most active. 5. The citizens are very bad.

(*b*) 1. Hither Gaul is nearer to Rome than farther Gaul. 2. The centurion's wounds had been very severe. 3. (There) are forests on the top of the mountain. 4. The smaller ships were better than the larger (ones). 5. We are hastening into the territory of the enemy and shall destroy the smaller towns.

PHRASES FROM CAESAR

267. *Commit to memory, with the translations:*

1. In citeriōre Galliā. 2. In ulteriōre Galliā. 3. Proximā nocte. 4. Castra mōvit. 5. Castra posuit.

A Practical Joke

Erat in Britanniā rēx quī quattuor fīliōs habuit. Dolor saepe in animō patris erat, quod[1] frāter cum frātre pugnābat. Robertus, quī maximus nātū fuit, ferōx iuvenis erat, sed saepe ā frātribus pācem petere coāctus est.[2]

Forte Robertus ante aedēs stābat. Frātrēs, quī[3] vīdērunt, vās aquae[4] plēnum in caput Robertī per fenestram effūdērunt. Robertus īrā permōtus (*rousing*) gladiō puerōs pressit, et ūnum leviter vulnerāvit. Tum rēx, quī iūniōrēs habēbat cāriōrēs[5] quam fīlium maximum nātū, Robertum ex urbe in exsilium relēgāvit.

---

[1] *Because.* [2] From **cogō**. [3] Supply *him*.
[4] **Plēnum** governs the genitive.
[5] **habēbat cāriōrēs**, *held dearer*, i.e., *loved more*.

LESSON XL

FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

*Cedant arma togae.—Peace hath her victories no less renowned than war.**

268. Adverbs[1] are derived from adjectives. They are formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions by adding **-ē** to the base of the positive: *wide*, **lātus**; *widely*, **lātē**. From adjectives of the third declension they are formed by adding **-iter**[2] to the base: *sharp*, **ācer**; *sharply*, **ācriter**.

269. The comparison of adverbs is like that of the adjectives from which they are derived, except that the comparative ends in **-ius** and the superlative in **-ē**.

Adj.	**lātus**, *wide*	**lātior**, *wider*	**lātissimus**, *widest*
Adv.	**lātē**, *widely*	**lātius**, *more widely*	**lātissimē**, *most widely*
Adj.	**ācer**, *sharp*	**ācrior**, *sharper*	**ācerrimus**, *sharpest*
Adv.	**ācriter**, *sharply*	**ācrius**, *more sharply*	**ācerrimē**, *most sharply*

270. VOCABULARY

Ci'cerō, -ō'nis, m., *Cicero.*
col'lis, -is, m., *hill.*
ge'rō, ge'rere, ges'sī, ges'tus, *carry on;* with **bel'lum**, *wage war.*
ā'criter, *sharply, fiercely.*
cele'riter, *quickly.*
di'ū, diū'tius, diūtis'simē, *long, for a long time.*
dīligen'ter, *carefully, diligently.*
fa'cile,[3] *easily.*
for'titer, *bravely.*
pa'rum, adv., (*too*) *little.*
quam, followed by the superlative, *as . . . as possible.*
quōmo'dō, interrog. adv., *how?*
at'que, conj., *and also, and.*
sex, indeclinable adj., *six.*

* Cicero. The motto of Wyoming. Literally: *Let arms give way to the toga.*

[1] Compare §§ 646–649.

[2] Present participles and some adjectives of one ending add **-ter** to the base to form the adverb: *careful*, **dīligēns**; *carefully*, **dīligenter.**

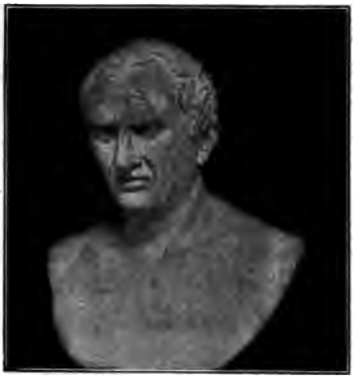
[3] An exception to the rule for formation of adverbs.

271. ***What Latin words do the following suggest?***

facile celerity sextette acrid

(*a*) **Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.**

RULE



CICERO.

Marcus Tullius Cicero (106–43 B.C.) was one of the greatest orators of all time. As consul he laid bare the conspiracy of Catiline against the state. His famous orations against Catiline have been preserved, and are usually read in the third year of Latin study.

272. Ablative of Degree of Difference. — Degree of difference is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

Six feet higher. **Sex pedibus altior.**

The boy is a year older than his sister. **Puer annō senior est quam soror.**

(*a*) The ablative **annō** denotes the degree of difference in age.

EXERCISES

273. *Translate; compare each adjective and adverb:*

(*a*) 1. Diū atque ācriter pugnāvērunt. 2. Pater multīs annīs senior quam fīlius est. 3. Lēgātī quam dīligentissimē labōrāverant. 4. Mōns plūrimīs pedibus altior quam collis erat. 5. Cicerō sex annīs maior nātū quam Caesar fuit.

(*b*) 1. Bella in extrēmīs fīnibus Helvētiōrum gesta sunt. 2. Fēmina minus facile atque minus celeriter cucurrit quam fīlia. 3. Rōmānī cum Germānīs bellum saepissimē gerēbant. 4. Rōma citeriōrī Galliae quam ulteriōrī propior est. 5. Mīlitēs fortēs magna oppida hostium facillimē dēlēre possunt.

274. ***Translate, putting each adverb before the word it modifies:***[1]

(*a*) 1. Peace is better than war. 2. The trees were six feet higher than the wall. 3. The tired men could not fight longer. 4. The farmer labored more diligently than the sailor. 5. The enemy led out their forces as quickly as possible.

(*b*) 1. They will hasten by forced (very great) marches into the farthest territory of the Gauls. 2. The ships were very small. 3. The commander-in-chief will wage war as fiercely as possible. 4. On the following night we seized the top of the mountain. 5. The old man fought more fiercely than his son.

PHRASES FROM CAESAR

275. *Commit to memory with the translations:*

1. Minus facile. 2. Diū atque ācriter. 3. Quam fortissimē. 4. Prīmā lūce. 5. Prīmā aestāte.

Horātius Coclēs

Porsena, rēx Etrūscōrum, cum Rōmānīs bellum gerēbat. Castra trāns flūmen Tiberim posuerat, et urbem Rōmam multīs mīlitibus obsidēbat.

Erat apud Rōmānōs vir fortissimus, Horātius nōmine, quod[2] oculum āmīserat Coclēs appellātus (*called*). In flūmine pōns erat, quī ad Etrūscōs pertinēbat. Horātius ad extrēmam partem pontis prōcessit atque ibi cōnstitit. Sōlus multōs hostēs exspectāvit.

Etrūscī magnā vī in Horātium pugnant. Frūstrā pugnant. Minās adhibent. Sed neque minīs nec[3] tēlīs hominem terrent. Ē proeliō excēdere coāctī sunt. Interim ā tergō[4] pōns inter-

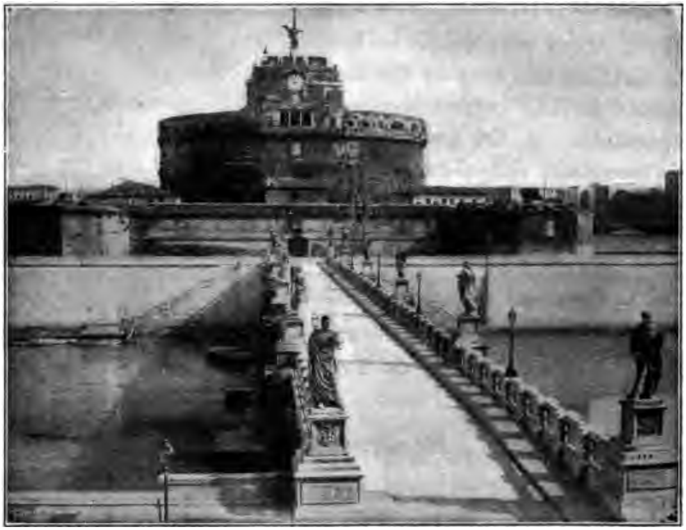
---

[1] An adverb generally stands before the word which it modifies.

[2] *Because.* [3] Neque . . . nec, *neither* . . . *nor.* [4] *I.e.*, behind Horatius.

scissus est. Tum Horātius armātus, ut erat, ad Rōmānōs incolumis trānāvit.

Horātiō pars agrī pūblicī satis[1] ampla ā Rōmānīs lēge data est, quod per virtūtem ac nātūram ēgregiam virī dignitās populī Rōmānī servāta erat, nec in servitūtem cīvēs abdūcēbantur.



THE TIBER AND HADRIAN'S TOMB.

The precise spot where Horatius swam the Tiber is not known, but it was not far from here. Across the river is the mausoleum of Hadrian, begun by this enthusiastic builder, but not finished till the next century. About 400 A.D. it was built into the fortifications of Rome and from then until recently was the main fortress of the city.

In 590 A.D. during a plague Pope Gregory the Great is said to have seen a vision of the Archangel Michael sheathing his sword above the fortress. When the plague subsided Gregory erected a statue to the archangel on the castle, which has since been known as the Castle of Sant' Angelo.

---

[1] An adverb modifying the adjective **ampla**.

LESSON XLI

REVIEW

*Nīl sine numine. – Nothing without divine guidance.**

276. Derivatives. — Write all the English words you can, that seem to be derived from the following:

pāx	**vīs**	**vōx**	**facilis**
similis	**maior**	**senex**	**iuvenis**
prior	**superus**	**dīligenter**	**celeriter**

277. Form and Word Drill. — 1. How are adjectives regularly compared? 2. How are adjectives ending in **-er** compared? 3. Give list of four adjectives in **-lis** having peculiar superlatives. 4. How are comparatives declined? Decline **melior.** 5. How are superlatives declined? Decline **optimus.** 6. Compare **prior, facilis, propior, senex, citerior, nōbilis, superus, idōneus, īnferus.** 7. Compare the Latin adjectives for the following, and form and compare the adverbs made from these adjectives:

sharp	*short*	*good*[1]	*quick*	*dear*
difficult	*faithful*	*brave*	*heavy*	*wide*
free	*bad*	*beautiful*	*small*[2]	*swift*

Time the class on this work. See footnote to page 80.

278. Syntax Drill. — Review all the rules learned thus far.

* The motto of Colorado. Literally: *Nothing without divinity.*

[1] Adv. **bene.** [2] Adv. **parum.**

EXERCISES FOR SIGHT READING

279. 1. Lēgēs cīvitātis ā cīvibus bonīs laudātae sunt. 2. Nūntiī multī ad Caesarem ā Germānīs missī sunt. 3. Fīlius magnitūdine corporis patrem superat. 4. Gallī et Germānī dissimillimī erant. 5. Prīmā lūce discipulī trāns agrum



THE RIVER RHINE.

The Rhine separated the Germans from the Gauls and Romans. When Caesar invaded Germany he built a famous bridge across the river. Piles from a Roman bridge have been found in the Rhine near Mayence.

cucurrērunt. 6. Mīlitēs Germānī brevissimō itinere magnā cum celeritāte ad urbem properāverant et mūrōs dēlēverant. 7. Cōnsulēs saepe meliōrēs quam rēgēs sunt. 8. Frūmentum trāns mare nāvibus portātum erat. 9. Iūlia iūnior est quam frāter Mārcus. 10. Germānī fortius pugnāvērunt quam pugnābunt.

LESSON XLII

FOURTH DECLENSION. GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE

*Quorum magna pars fui.—In which I was a chief actor.**

280. The fourth declension consists of those nouns whose genitive singular ends in **-ūs**. Those ending in **-us** in the nominative singular are masculine, with a few exceptions. Those whose nominative ends in **-ū** are neuter.

Exer′citus, m., *army*. BASE, **exercit-**

	SINGULAR	TERMINATIONS	PLURAL	TERMINATIONS
Nom.	exer′citus	**us**	exer′citūs	**ūs**
Gen.	exer′citūs	**ūs**	exerci′tuum	**uum**
Dat.	exerci′tuī	**uī**	exerci′tibus	**ibus**
Acc.	exer′citum	**um**	exer′citūs	**ūs**
Abl.	exer′citū	**ū**	exerci′tibus	**ibus**

Cornū, n., *horn*. BASE, **corn-**

Nom.	cor′nū	**ū**	cor′nua	**ua**
Gen.	cor′nūs	**ūs**	cor′nuum	**uum**
Dat.	cor′nū	**ū**	cor′nibus	**ibus**
Acc.	cor′nū	**ū**	cor′nua	**ua**
Abl.	cor′nū	**ū**	cor′nibus	**ibus**

281. VOCABULARY

cor′nū, -ūs, n., *horn, wing* (of an army).
do′mus, -ūs, f., *house, home.*
exer′citus, -ūs, m., *army.*
im′petus, -ūs, m., *attack.*
ma′nus, -ūs, f., *hand, band* (of soldiers).
occā′sus, -ūs, m., *setting.*
sōl, sō′lis, m., *sun.*
dex′ter, -tra, -trum, *right, right hand.*
sinis′ter, -tra, -trum, *left-hand.*
susti′neō, -ē′re, -uī, -ten′tus, *check, withstand.*
bene, adv., *well.*
vēlō′citer, adv., *swiftly.*
in′ter, prep. with acc., *between among.*

* Virgil. Literally: *Of which I was a large part.*

(*a*) **Domus**, f., *house, home*, sometimes has the endings of the second declension in the genitive, dative, and ablative singular, and in the genitive and accusative plural. Learn the declension of **domus**, § 568.

282. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

cornucopia manual solar domestic

(*a*) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

RULE

283. Genitive of the Whole. — The genitive denoting the whole of which a part is taken, is called the Genitive of the Whole.[1]

Part of the soldiers. **Pars mīlitum.**

The bravest of the men were in the army. **Fortissimī virōrum in exercitū erant.**

Note. — **Virōrum** denotes the whole of which **fortissimī** is a part. The ablative with **dē** or **ex** is sometimes used instead of the genitive of the whole, especially after cardinal numbers. *One of the boys.* **Ūnus ex puerīs.** *Ten of the horses were seen in the field.* **Decem ex equīs in agrō vidēbantur.**

EXERCISES

284. *Translate, and parse all the verbs:*

(*a*) 1. Fortissimus omnium Rōmānōrum erat Caesar. 2. Decem ex mīlitibus quam fortissimī fuerant. 3. Multī Helvētiōrum vulnerātī erant. 4. Pars manūs ā dextrō cornū[2] vidēbātur. 5. Sōlis occāsū Caesar summō in colle castra posuit.

(*b*) 1. Domus Caesaris pulcherrima erat. 2. Imperātor sinistrō cornū exercitūs propior quam dextrō erat. 3. Mīlitēs vēlōcissimē cucurrērunt et bellum bene gessērunt. 4. Impetūs dextrī cornūs facile sustinēbimus. 5. Multae et maximae arborēs inter domum et flūmen vidēbantur.

---

[1] Sometimes called the Partitive Genitive. [2] *On the right wing.*

285. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. We saw the houses of the enemy on the top of the hill. 2. Nothing could be equal to Caesar's armies. 3. Six of the attacks have been withstood very bravely. 4. War was waged long and fiercely in the territory of the Gauls. 5. Part of the bands of the enemy withstood the Roman army as well as possible.

(*b*) 1. At sunset the soldiers fought less easily. 2. Very many attacks of the enemy have been withstood by Caesar's forces. 3. Good laws are praised by the best citizens, but not by bad men. 4. The left wing of Caesar's army was not like the right (wing). 5. The soldiers on the left wing fought six hours longer than (those) on the right (wing).

PHRASES FROM CAESAR

286. *Commit to memory, with the translations:*

1. Sōlis occāsū. 2. Ā dextrō cornū. 3. Ā sinistrō cornū. 4. Ab summō colle. 5. Ab superiōre parte.

The Mouse-Tower. I

Erat ōlim in Germāniā famēs. Omnēs quī cibum male prōvīderant dēspērābant. Officia mīlitāria intermittēbant. Aut morbum aut mortem exspectābant. Multī ā prīncipe cibum petēbant, quī cōpiam frūmentī in horreīs habuit. Sed animum prīncipis crūdēlis ad misericordiam indūcere nōn poterant.

Quod crūdēlissimus erat, magnam multitūdinem in horreum perdūxit ubi frūmentum erat, et paulō post horreum incendit. Clāmōrēs miserrimī fuērunt, at prīnceps rīsit et exclāmāvit, "Strīdor mūrium est!" Tum in auribus prīncipis magna vōx: "Corpus tuum, miser,[1] mūrēs dēvorābunt." Graviter animō (*in mind*) commōtus est.

[1] Vocative.

LESSON XLIII

FIFTH DECLENSION. DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

Carpe diem. — *Seize the opportunity.**

287. The fifth declension consists of nouns whose genitive singular ends in **-ĕī**.[1] They are feminine, with a few exceptions.

	di'ēs, m., *day*. BASE, **di-**	**rēs**, f., *thing*. BASE, **r-**	TERMINATIONS
		SINGULAR	
Nom.	di'ēs	rēs	ēs
Gen.	diē'ī	re'ī	ĕī
Dat.	diē'ī	re'ī	ĕī
Acc.	di'em	rem	em
Abl.	di'ē	rē	ē
		PLURAL	
Nom.	di'ēs	rēs	ēs
Gen.	diē'rum	rē'rum	ērum
Dat.	diē'bus	rē'bus	ēbus
Acc.	di'ēs	rēs	ēs
Abl.	diē'bus	rē'bus	ēbus

(*a*) **Rēs pūb'lica** and **iūs iūran'dum** are compound nouns.

Rēs pūb'lica = **rēs** + fem. adj. **pūblica**, meaning the *public affair;* that is, the *state*. Both parts of the word are declined.

Iūs iūran'dum = **iūs** + neuter gerundive **iūrandum**. **Iūs** is a neuter noun of the third declension, and **iūrandum** is declined like the neuter of **magnus**. Both parts of the word are declined, but the plural has only the form **iura iuranda** (nom. and acc.).

---

* Horace. Literally: *Grasp the day*.

[1] Genitive and dative singular end in **-ēī** when a vowel precedes, in **-eī** when a consonant precedes.

288. VOCABULARY

a'ciēs, aciē'ī, f., *line of battle.*
amī'cus, -a, -um, *friendly.*
inimī'cus, -a, -um, *unfriendly.*
inimī'cus, -ī, m., *a personal enemy.* (Compare **hos'tis,** *a public enemy.*)
di'ēs, diē'ī, m., *day.*
iūs iūran'dum, iū'ris iūran'dī, n., *oath.*
iūs, iū'ris, n., *right, law.*
lo'cus, -ī, m. (pl., **lo'ca,** n.), *place, location.*
rēs, re'ī, f., *thing, affair.*
rēs pūb'lica, re'ī pūb'licae, f., *state, republic.*
pau'cī, -ae, -a, *few.*
ū'tilis, -e, *useful.*
inū'tilis, -e, *useless.*

289. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

location utility republic paucity

(*a*) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

RULE

290. Dative with Adjectives.—Adjectives meaning *dear, faithful, friendly, suitable, useful,* and their opposites take the dative.

The place is suitable for a camp. **Locus castrīs idōneus est.**

The slaves are faithful to their masters. **Servī dominīs fīdī sunt.**



ROMAN SOLDIER WITH SPEAR AND SHIELD.

EXERCISES

291. *Translate, and compare the adjectives and adverbs:*

(*a*) 1. Līberī mātrī cārissimī erant. 2. Bonī cīvēs reī pūblicae semper fīdī fuērunt. 3. Rōmānī locum idōneum castrīs vīdērunt. 4. Tēla mīlitibus sunt ūtilissima. 5. Iūs iūrandum ducī ā mīlitibus datum est.

(*b*) 1. Aestāte diēs longiōrēs quam noctēs sunt. 2. Paucī

amīcōrum mīlitum ad collem missī erunt. 3. Hostēs cum prīmā aciē fortiter pugnābant. 4. Iūre bellī tēla victōrī dabuntur. 5. Locus castrīs idōneus fuit, sed aciēī inūtilis.

292. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Part of the army was unfriendly to the general. 2. A faithful son can be useful to his old father. 3. We are friendly to our friends and faithful to our chief. 4. The slaves will be held by an oath. 5. A few places suitable for a line of battle have been seen.

(*b*) 1. The attack of the enemy was useless. 2. At the lower part of the river (there) had been a bridge. 3. The day



THE BRIDGE OF AUGUSTUS AT RIMINI.
This was built by Augustus and is still in use.

was a few hours longer than the night. 4. The house had been on the right bank of the river. 5. The line of battle was very long and had been seen on the top of the hill.

ORAL EXERCISE

293. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Quis rem pūblicam amāvit? 2. Quis cārus mātrī est? 3. Esne magistrō amīcus? 4. Ubi est parva palūs? 5. Quid est in superiōre parte mūrī?

The Mouse-Tower. II

Erat in mediō Rhēnō turris sacra. Ad turrim prīnceps fūgit. "Hīc certē salvus sum, dum turris integra manet. Turrim diū obtinēre possum. Sex annīs etiam mūrēs flūmen trānāre nōn poterunt." Mox autem portentum videt. Rīpae flūminis incrēdibilī multitūdine mūrium complentur.



The Mouse-Tower on the Rhine.

This is the famous tower of which is told the story in this and the preceding lesson. It is near the city of Bingen.

Iam mūrēs in aquā sunt et turrim petunt. Prīnceps deōs ōrat, sed dī nōn sunt amīcī; amīcitiam deōrum crūdēlitāte āmīsit. Hostēs idōneam poenam[1] sūmunt, prīncipī miserō longiōrem vītam nōn permittunt. Mūrēs, ut dictum erat, corpus dēvorant.

---

[1] See Vocabulary for the meaning with sūmere.

LESSON XLIV

FOURTH CONJUGATION

Veni, vidi, vici. — *I came, saw, conquered.**

294. Fourth conjugation verbs end in **-īre** in the present infinitive: **au'diō, audī're, audī'vī, audī'tus,** ***hear.*** The present stem is **audī-**, perfect stem **audīv-**, participial stem **audīt-**.

(*a*) Learn the indicative active of **audiō**, § 589, noting the peculiarity of the imperfect and the future.

295. VOCABULARY

au'diō, -ī're, -ī'vī, -ī'tus, *hear, hear of.*
mū'niō, -ī're, -ī'vī, -ī'tus, *fortify.*
ve'niō, -ī're, vē'nī, ven'tus, *come.*
incrēdi'bilis, -e, *incredible.*
oc'tō, *eight.*
mul'tō di'ē, *late in the day.*
pos'terō di'ē, *on the day following.*
plūs pos'se, *to be more powerful.*

296. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

audience incredible convene **octave**

(*a*) **Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.**

EXERCISES ON VERB FORMS

297. *Analyze each form:*

1. Audīs, audīvimus, audīverat, audiēmus. 2. Veniēbat, venit, vēnit, vēnerimus, veniunt. 3. Mūniēbāmus, mūnīvērunt, mūnīvī, mūniam. 4. Mittet, mūniet, dabit, laudāberis, vīsa est. 5. Potuerat, fuerat, vēnerat, dederat, mīserat.

298. *Translate, marking long vowels:*

1. We shall have heard, they will hear, we hear, I heard. 2. He comes, we shall come, they had come, you came.

* Caesar's famous message to the Roman Senate. Quoted by Suetonius.

3. They will fortify, he has fortified, I shall fortify. 4. We shall seize, we shall destroy, we shall send, we shall come. 5. They saw, we lead, he can, it had been stormed.

RULE

299. Place Constructions. Locative Case. — With names of cities and towns, with **domus**, *home*, and with **rūs**, *country*, the preposition is not used in *expressions of place*.

(*a*) These words express *place at which* by a case called the *Locative*. Its form is like the genitive in the singular of nouns of the first and second declensions, otherwise like the ablative.

	ORDINARY NOUNS	TOWNS, *domus*, *rūs*
PLACE FROM WHICH	**Ab, dē, ex** with Ablative	Ablative
He comes	*from the city*, **ab urbe venit.**	*from Rome*, **Rōmā venit.** *from home*, **domō venit.**
PLACE TO WHICH	**Ad** with Accusative	Accusative
He runs	*to the city*, **ad urbem currit.**	*to Rome*, **Rōmam currit.** *home*, **domum currit.**
PLACE IN WHICH	**In** with Ablative	Locative
He is	*in the city*, **in urbe est.**	*at Rome*, **Rōmae est.** *at home*, **domī est.**

EXERCISES

300. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Fēminae domī[1] erant. 2. Multō diē lēgātus Rōmam vēnit. 3. Rēgēs plūs possunt quam cīvēs. 4. Līberī domum quam celerrimē vēnerant. 5. Posterō diē equitēs Rōmā in castra quam vēlōcissimē venient.

(*b*) 1. Bonī cīvēs senibus inimīcī nōn erunt. 2. Amīcus explōrātōris multās rēs audiet. 3. Octō ex oppidīs ā legiōnibus fortibus oppugnāta erant. 4. Nautae ex nāvibus vēnērunt

[1] Locative.

sed in rīpā tēla relīquērunt. 5. Castra ex omnibus partibus[1] lātissimā fossā et altissimō mūrō mūnīvimus.

301. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. On the next day we heard the signal at Rome. 2. We shall fortify the camp on all sides. 3. At sunset the children came home. 4. Cicero was very friendly to the republic. 5. The infantry came to Rome with incredible swiftness.



A POMPEIAN KITCHEN.
From the House of the Vettii. See the picture on page 170.

(*b*) 1. Courage is often more useful to a man than weapons. 2. The place was more suitable in all respects for a line of battle than for a camp. 3. Eight of the legions could not come to Rome in the early part of summer. 4. Late in the day Caesar led his forces back into camp. 5. The soldiers of the first legion carried on war less bravely than (those) of the tenth.

PHRASES FROM CAESAR

302. *Commit to memory, with the translations:*

1. Domī. 2. Magnā cum celeritāte. 3. Multō diē 4. Posterō diē. 5. Omnibus rēbus.

---

[1] On all sides.



A Roman Chariot Race.

LESSON XLV

FOURTH CONJUGATION, PASSIVE

*Dum spiro, spero. — While there is life there is hope.**

303. According to the rules in Lesson XXVI, conjugate **audiō** in the indicative passive. Compare § 589.

304. **Mīlle**, *a thousand*, is an indeclinable adjective. When referring to several thousand, **mīlia** is used. It is a neuter noun declined like the plural of **mare**, and is followed by the genitive of the objects enumerated. *A thousand men*, **mīlle hominēs**; but *eight thousand(s of) men*, **mīlia hominum octō**.

(*a*) There is no single word in Latin for *mile*. A mile was one thousand paces, **mīlle passūs**. Plural, **mīlia passuum**. A Roman *pace* was the distance from where one foot touched the ground to where the same foot touched again, that is, two of our paces or about five feet.

305. VOCABULARY

lātitū'dō, -inis, f., *width*.
longitū'dō, -inis, f., *length*.
mī'lia, mī'lium, n., *thousands*.
mīl'le, adj., *a thousand*.
pas'sus, -ūs, m., *pace*.
ma'neō, -ē're, mān'sī, mān'sus, *remain*.
pa'teō, -ē're, -uī, —, *lie open, extend*.
lon'gē, adv., *far*.
quam lon'gē, *how far?*
quam dī'ū, *how long?*
quīn'que, num. adj., indeclinable, *five*.

306. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

latitude   millennium   remain   quintette

(*a*) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

---

* Part of the motto of South Carolina. Literally: *While I breathe, I hope*

RULE

307. Duration of Time. Extent of Space. — Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative.

They came six miles. **Mīlia passuum sex vēnērunt.**
They fought five hours. **Quīnque hōrās pugnāvērunt.**

EXERCISES

308. *Translate; parse all the nouns:*

(*a*) 1. Quīnque diēs Rōmae mānsit. 2. Octō hōrās quam fortissimē pugnāverant. 3. Flūmen in lātitūdinem mīlle passūs patuit. 4. Multōs annōs bellum gessērunt. 5. Equī mīlia passuum quīnque incrēdibilī celeritāte cucurrērunt.

(*b*) 1. Mūrum decem pedēs altum aedificābit. 2. Multae rēs ā prīncipe et ā paucīs mīlitum audiēbantur. 3. Aestāte ad urbem Rōmam veniētis. 4. Agrī Helvētiōrum in longitūdinem mīlia passuum multa patēbant. 5. Clāmor Rōmānōrum quīnque hōrās audītus erat.

309. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. We shall remain in the city eight days. 2. They ran a few miles and came home late in the day. 3. The bank of the river was ten feet high. 4. The territory of the Gauls extended many miles. 5. The attack was checked by a thousand soldiers on the left wing.

(*b*) 1. The line of battle will be many feet long. 2. At daybreak the general pitched camp at the top of the hill. 3. The tenth legion was faithful to Caesar in all respects. 4. The town had been fortified on all sides as carefully as possible. 5. The chief was faithful to the army, and he was loved by the brave soldiers.

ORAL EXERCISE

310. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Quam diū domī manēbitis? 2. Quam longē oppidum patēbat? 3. Quam diū discipulī labōrant? 4. Ubi domus Caesaris erat? 5. Quis domī est?



CORNELIA AND HER JEWELS.

CORNĒLIAE ŌRNĀMENTA

Cornēlia fēmina Rōmāna erat et optima māter. Fīliōs habēbat Tiberium et Gaium Gracchum. Māter et fīliī Rōmam, maximam urbem, incolēbant.

Dīligentiā Cornēliae mātris Gracchī Graecās litterās atque bonōs mōrēs docēbantur.

Campāna fēmina Cornēliae sua ōrnāmenta, quae (*which*) pulcherrima erant, mōnstrābat et laudābat. Cornēliae dīxit, "Habēsne nūlla ōrnāmenta?"

Cornēlia respondit, "Meī puerī ōrnāmenta sunt mea."

LESSON XLVI

ADJECTIVES OF PECULIAR DECLENSION

*Audiatur et altera pars.—Let the other side also be heard.**

311. The following adjectives of the first and second declensions are regular in the plural, but have **-īus**[1] in the genitive and **-ī** in the dative singular of all genders:

a'lius, a'lia, a'liud, *other.*
al'ter, al'tera, al'terum, *the other* (of two).
ūl'lus, -a, -um, *any.*
nūl'lus, -a, -um, *no, none.*
ū'nus, -a, -um, *one.*
u'ter, u'tra, u'trum, *which* (of two).
neu'ter, neu'tra, neu'trum, *neither* (of two).
sō'lus, -a, -um, *alone, only.*
tō'tus, -a, -um, *whole*

(*a*) Learn the declension of **alius, ūnus,** § 574; of **deus,** § 568.

312. VOCABULARY

captī'vus, -ī, m., *captive.*
de'a, -ae, f., *goddess* (**-ā'bus** in dat. and abl. pl.).
de'us, -ī, m., *god.*
ōr'dō, ōr'dinis, m., *rank, order, row.*
vī'ta, -ae, f., *life.*
vin'cō, -ere, vī'cī, vic'tus, *conquer.*
vī'vō, -ere, vī'xī, vīc'tus,[2] *live, be alive* (not *reside*).
a'lius . . . a'lius, *one . . . another.*
a'liī . . . a'liī, *some . . . others.*
quot, indecl. adj., *how many?*

313. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

neuter invincible deity alternate

(*a*) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

EXERCISES

314. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Rōmānī deīs et deābus fīdissimī erant. 2. Alia animālia in marī, alia in silvā vīvunt. 3. Soror neutrī

---

* Seneca. [1] Alter has īus in the genitive.
[2] Compare principal parts of videō, vincō, vīvō, veniō.

frātrum cāra fuit. 4. Utra puellārum maior nātū est? 5. Deī ūnī ex hominibus longam vītam dedērunt.

(b) 1. Alia puella aliī fābulam nārrābit. 2. Tōtum diem captīvī quam optimē labōrāvērunt. 3. Cicerōnis ōrātiōnēs quam Caesaris meliōrēs sunt. 4. Flūmen mīlia passuum quīnque patēbat. 5. Rōmānī ab hostibus nōn saepe victī sunt.



JUPITER.

Jupiter, or Jove, was the chief of the Roman gods, corresponding to the Greek Zeus.

315. *Translate:*

(a) 1. One captive is a friend, another an enemy. 2. The father of neither boy was at home. 3. We shall tell the story to Marcus only. 4. The faithful Romans were loved by the gods and goddesses. 5. The gods have given longer life to some than to others.

(b) 1. Many friends are better than a few. 2. The whole army had been conquered and the soldiers were living in fear every day. 3. To which of the boys did the man give a beautiful gift? 4. The soldiers live in camp in the summer. 5. The centurions of the first rank remained all day in line of battle.

ORAL EXERCISE

316. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Quot hōrās hominēs labōrābunt? 2. Quam longē vēnistī? 3. Quam diū vīxit? 4. Labōrābāsne tōtum diem? 5. Utra puella melior est?

LESSON XLVII

REVIEW

Vox populi vox dei. — *The voice of the people is the voice of God.*

317. Derivatives. — Write all the English words you can that seem to be derived from the following:

cornū	domus	manus	impetus
sōl	dexter	bene	deus
ūtilis	audiō	veniō	octō
mīlle	alter	sōlus	captīvus
ōrdō	vīta	vincō	vīvō

318. Form Drill. — 1. Of what genders are the nouns of the first, second, third, fourth, and fifth declensions? Decline one noun of each declension. 2. In masculine and feminine nouns what is always the last letter in the accusative singular? the accusative plural? Give the terminations of these cases for each declension. 3. What are always the last two letters of the genitive plural? Give the terminations for each declension. 4. What cases are always alike in neuters? How do these cases always end in the plural? 5. What is peculiar about the declension of **domus**?

(*a*) The following words of the fourth and fifth declensions have the same form in English and Latin: **consensus, conspectus, hiatus, impetus, status, series, species.**

319. Syntax Drill. — 1. Write one Latin sentence illustrating the genitive of the whole and degree of difference. 2. What adjectives take the dative? 3. Give the rules you have learned for expressing place in Latin. 4. How is duration of time expressed in Latin? 5. What is a compound noun? Decline one. 6. How do verbs of the fourth conjugation differ from others in the imperfect indicative? 7. How does the future indicative



THE ROMAN FORUM (RESTORED).

of the third and fourth conjugations differ from that of the first and second? 8. Name the nine adjectives of peculiar declension.

320. Phrase Drill. — Give the following phrases in Latin:

1. How long? 2. The first part of the summer. 3. Long and fiercely. 4. Less easily. 5. As bravely as possible. 6. How far? 7. On the top of the hill. 8. On the left wing. 9. At home. 10. The next day. 11. At sunset. 12. Late in the day. 13. In all respects.

321. EXERCISES FOR SIGHT READING

1. Omnis impetus hostium ā mīlitibus sustinēbātur. 2. Nihil exercitibus Caesaris pār esse potuit. 3. Palūs erat nōn magna inter Caesaris atque hostium exercitūs. 4. Iter ad flūmen facillimum est. 5. Mīlitēs ad urbem incrēdibilī celeritāte current. 6. Oppidum altissimō mūrō mūniēmus. 7. Prīmā aestāte prīncipēs Gallōrum domī in Galliā fuerant. 8. Sōlis occāsū nūntius audiēbātur. 9. Alia oppida mūnientur, alia dēlēbuntur. 10. Equī mīlia passuum quīnque cucurrērunt.

FORUM RŌMĀNUM

Forum Rōmānum erat inter Capitōlium et Palātium. Prīmō parvae tabernae utrimque erant. Post multōs annōs cōnsulēs et imperātōrēs templa in Forō aedificāvērunt.

In templum Concordiae senātōrēs conveniēbant. In rōstrīs Cicerō et aliī ōrātōrēs ad populum ōrātiōnēs habēbant. Ubīque erant altae columnae et simulācra deōrum atque statuae virōrum.

Togātī Rōmānī in Forum saepe conveniēbant. Hinc Viā Sacrā legiōnēs Rōmānae ad bellum ēdūcēbantur. Viā Sacrā legiōnēs victōrēs magnīs cum clāmōribus in Forum veniēbant. Nunc in Forō ruīnae undique videntur. Nihil manet nisi pauca vēstīgia antīquae glōriae Rōmānae.

LESSON XLVIII

INFINITIVES. INDIRECT DISCOURSE

Vita sine litteris mors est. — ***Life without letters is death.***

322. The formation of infinitives for all conjugations is shown by the table below.

ACTIVE INFINITIVES

Present infinitive = *Present stem* + **-re** : **portāre.**

Perfect infinitive = *Perfect stem* + **-isse** : **portāvisse.**

Future infinitive = *Participial stem* + **-ūr** + *endings of* **magnus** + **esse** : **portātūrus esse**. **Esse** is often omitted.

PASSIVE INFINITIVES

Present infinitive = *Present stem* + **-rī** : **portārī** (except in the third conjugation, which makes its Present infinitive = *Present stem* with **e** changed to **ī** : **dūcī**).

Perfect infinitive = *Participial stem* + *endings of* **magnus** + **esse** : **portātus esse**. **Esse** is often omitted.

Future infinitive = *Participial stem* + **-um** + **īrī** : **portātum īrī.**

(*a*) Following the above rules write all the infinitives of **dō, moneō, dūcō, audiō, sum, possum.** Compare §§ 586, 587, 588, 589, 591.

323. Indirect Quotation. — The words or thoughts of a speaker may be stated directly or indirectly. A *direct quotation*, giving the exact words of the speaker, is stated thus: *He said*, "*The soldiers will fight.*"

An *indirect quotation*, giving the thought but not the exact words of the speaker, is expressed thus: *He said that the soldiers would fight.*

In an indirect quotation in Latin the word *that* is not expressed and the statement is rendered by an infinitive with its subject in the accusative case: **Dīxit mīlitēs pugnātūrōs esse.**

324. Tenses in Indirect Quotation. — Indirect quotation or *indirect discourse* occurs most frequently after verbs of *saying*, *thinking*, *knowing*, and the like.

(1) The *same* time as that of the principal verb is denoted by the *present* infinitive.[1]

(2) Time *before* that of the principal verb is denoted by the *perfect* infinitive.[2]

(3) Time *after* that of the principal verb is denoted by the *future* infinitive.

(1) *He says that the soldiers are fighting.* **Dīcit mīlitēs pugnāre.**

(2) *He says that the soldiers have fought.* **Dīcit mīlitēs pugnāvisse.**

(3) *He says that the soldiers will fight.* **Dīcit mīlitēs pugnātūrōs esse.**

(1) *He said that the soldiers were being led.* **Dīxit mīlitēs dūcī.**

(2) *He said that the soldiers had been led.* **Dīxit mīlitēs ductōs esse.**

(3) *He said that the soldiers would be led.* **Dīxit mīlitēs ductum īrī.**

325. VOCABULARY

mors, mor'tis, (-**ium**), f., *death.*
mūnī'tiō, -ō'nis, f., *fortification.*
intel'legō, intelle'gere, intel-lē'xī, intellēc'tus, *under-stand.*
dī'cō, -ere, dī'xī, dic'tus, *say.*
pu'tō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *think, believe.*
sci'ō, scī're, scī'vī, scī'tus, *know.*

326. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

mortal science diction intelligence

(*a*) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

RULE

327. Accusative and Infinitive. — The subject of an infinitive is in the accusative case.[3]

I know that the boy will come. **Sciō puerum ventūrum esse.**

He thought that the children had remained. **Putāvit līberōs mānsisse.**

---

[1] Compare § 636, *c*. [2] Compare § 636, *d*. [3] Compare § 658.

EXERCISES ON FORMS

328. *Translate, giving the reason for the mood, tense, and ending of each infinitive:*

1. Scīvērunt legiōnem ventūram esse. 2. Dīxit hostēs victōs esse. 3. Dīcet librum missum esse. 4. Putō imperātōrem victum esse. 5. Sciō virum victūrum esse, victum īrī, vincī. 6. Intellegunt Germānōs pugnāre. 7. Intellēxērunt Germānōs pugnāre.



MINERVA.
Minerva, the Greek Athene, is said to have sprung fully armed from the brain of Jove. She was the goddess of wisdom and the patroness of all the arts and sciences.

329. *Translate:*

1. We think that the ambassador has been sent, is being sent. 2. I knew that the shout had been heard, would be heard, was being heard. 3. I understood that the children were writing, would write, had written. 4. They said that the goddesses had been loved, would be loved. 5. The Romans thought that the gods heard, would hear.

EXERCISES

330. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Putāmus aliōs fortēs fuisse, aliōs mortem timuisse. 2. Intellēxit Gallōs sōlōs bellum nōn gestūrōs esse. 3. Dīcit exercitum Rōmānum in fīnēs Gallōrum dūcī posse. 4. Scīvī līberōs domum mittī. 5. Lēgātus captīvīs nūntiat neutrum diū vīvere posse.

(*b*) 1. Caesar cum tōtō exercitū brevissimō tempore mīlia passuum quīnque venīre potuit. 2. Mūnītiō maxima erat. 3. Paucī hominēs timōre vincuntur. 4. Rōmānī virtūte Gallōs superāvērunt. 5. Mīlitēs omnibus rēbus ducī fīdī nōn erant.



THE ROMAN FORUM.

This view is taken from near the arch of Titus. It shows from the mass of ruins what a magnificent place this must have been. Compare it with the pictures on pages 59 and 190 and facing page 129.

331. ***Translate:***

(*a*) 1. Caesar knew that the Roman soldiers were not inferior. 2. He says that many things will often be heard at Rome. 3. All announced that the army was being led into one place. 4. We understood that Caesar was coming to the fortification at daybreak. 5. We heard that the women and children had been sent into the town.

(*b*) 1. Late in the day the camp was easily fortified.

2. He will announce that the soldiers have been seen on the top of the hill by the forces of the enemy. 3. The lieutenants thought that Caesar had enlisted five legions in hither Gaul. 4. We know that death is feared by many. 5. We understand that Caesar was the friend of the tenth legion.

ORAL EXERCISE

332. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Quid Caesar dīxit? 2. Scīvistīne Caesarem hostēs vīcisse? 3. Quam diū dux dīxit mīlitēs pugnātūrōs esse? 4. Cūr Rōmam vēnistī? 5. Quot cohortēs legiō habet?



THE TEMPLE OF APOLLO AT POMPEII.

Notice the altar in front and compare this picture with the view of the temple on page 177 and with the altar on page 179.

LESSON XLIX

DUO AND TRĒS

Facta non verba.* — *Deeds not words.

333. Learn the declension of **duo** and **trēs**, § 575.

334. VOCABULARY

Bel'gae, -ā'rum, m., *Belgians.*
spēs, spe'ī, f., *hope.*
cōnfir'mō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *assert, strengthen, establish.*
du'o, du'ae, du'o, adj., *two.*
trēs, trēs, tri'a, adj., *three.*
dīmit'tō, -ere, -mī'sī, -mis'sus, *send in different directions, dismiss.*
exis'timō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *think, reckon.*
un'dique, adv., *from all sides.*

335. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

dual   trinity   confirm   dismiss

(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

RULE

336. Ablative of Separation. — Separation is expressed by the ablative either with or without a preposition.

The men are freed from danger. **Virī perīculō līberantur.**
You will free me from great fear. **Magnō mē metū līberābis.**

EXERCISES

337. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Homō timōre magnō līberārī potest. 2. Alium morte līberābō, alium perīculō. 3. Scīmus equum brevissimō tempore mīlia passuum duo currere potuisse. 4. Nāvēs hostium vēlōcissimē nāvigāre nōn poterant. 5. Dux centuriōnibus nūntiābat Rōmānōs duo oppida paucīs diēbus[1] oppugnātūrōs esse.

[1] § 182.

(*b*) 1. Aliī magnās rēs scrībere possunt, aliī multa dīcunt, sed nihil scrībunt. 2. Putāmus ducem dēfessōs mīlitēs dīmissūrum esse. 3. Prīncipēs cōnfīrmāvērunt altōs montēs undique vidērī posse. 4. Belgae exīstimāvērunt spem maximam esse. 5. Caesar vīdit omnēs Belgās in ūnum locum vēnisse.

338. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. The lieutenant was freed from all fear. 2. The Belgians knew that the soldiers could very easily come three miles in one hour. 3. The hope of the two leaders was very great. 4. Caesar had enlisted two legions, and thought that the Germans could be conquered. 5. The centurion asserted that the auxiliary troops were not good soldiers.

(*b*) 1. Men are always very near to the gods. 2. The ships were detained for a few hours. 3. A private soldier of the Roman army was not very easily conquered. 4. They reckoned that a thousand men [soldiers] had been dismissed from the army. 5. The messenger ran many miles as swiftly as possible and announced the danger to a centurion of the first rank.

ORAL EXERCISE

339. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Uter puer in agrō erat? 2. Vīcēruntne Gallōs aestāte? 3. Victōriaene ūnīus lēgātī multae sunt? 4. Num mīlitēs ā dextrō cornū pugnābunt? 5. Ubi Caesar castra pōnet?

The Weather-wise Donkey

Ludovīcus, rēx Gallōrum, generī hominum quī astrologī vocantur maximē cōnfīdēbat.[1] Astrologī stellārum mōtū imbrēs ventōsque praedīcunt. Aliquandō rēx, dum in silvīs est, celerī equō longē ante omnēs sociōs praetervectus est.

[1] Cōnfīdō takes regularly the dative of persons and the ablative or dative of things.

Interim caelum nūbibus complētur, gravisque imber in terram cadit. Rēx igitur, quī parvam casam inter arborēs vīdit, tempestātis (*from the storm*) perfugium petīvit.

Tum ubi rēx graviter astrologōs incūsābat, agricola, cuius (*whose*) casa erat, dīxit: "Nūlla tempestās mē[1] incautum excipit; semper enim meus asinus vōce raucā imbrem praedīcit." Rēx rīsit et respondit: "Sī tuus asinus tam bonus astrologus est, meōs astrologōs semper in numerō asinōrum habēbō."



RUINS OF A ROMAN HOUSE AT POMPEII.

This shows the central court with its fountain, around which the house was built. At the rear and sides may be seen the doors opening into various rooms.

---

[1] Accusative of the first personal pronoun.

LESSON L

THIRD CONJUGATION VERBS IN -IŌ

Populus vult decipi. — *The people like to be deceived.**

340. A few verbs of the third conjugation end in **-iō**. They have the forms of the fourth conjugation wherever the fourth has **i** followed by a vowel.

(*a*) According to the above rule conjugate **capiō** in the indicative and infinitive, active and passive. Compare § 590.

341. VOCABULARY

ca'piō, -ere, cē'pī, cap'tus, *take, seize, capture.*

inci'piō, -ere, -cē'pī, -cep'tus,[1] *begin, undertake.*

reci'piō, -ere, -cē'pī, -cep'tus,[1] *take back, receive;* (with **sē**) *retreat.*

fa'ciō, -ere, fē'cī, fac'tus, *make, do;* (with **iter**) *march.*

cōnfi'ciō, -ere, -fē'cī, -fec'tus,[1] *do thoroughly, accomplish.*

interfi'ciō, -ere, -fē'cī, -fec'tus,[1] *kill.*

ia'ciō, -ere, iē'cī, iac'tus, *throw.*

rei'ciō, -ere, -iē'cī, -iec'tus,[1] *throw back, repulse.*

dē, prep. with abl., *about, concerning, from.*

342. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

incipient reject reception factory

(*a*) Define, and use each of these nouns in an English sentence.

EXERCISES

343. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Mīles ab hostibus tēla capiēbat. 2. Multī et fortēs virī in bellō interfectī sunt. 3. Cōpiae Caesaris celeriter sē recipient. 4. Mīlitēs ē superiōre locō pīla iēcērunt. 5. Dextrum cornū exercitūs ad mūnītiōnem incrēdibilī celeritāte iter facit.

---

* Attributed to Cardinal Carafa. [1] Note the change in the present and participial stems when the simple verb is compounded.

(*b*) 1. Rēgis frāter et ūnus ē fīliīs capientur. 2. Cōnfīrmābāmus oppidum facile capī posse. 3. Dē deīs et deābus multa audīvimus. 4. Diēbus decem exercitus in urbem sē recēpit. 5. Rōmānī intellēxērunt Caesarem bellum incēpisse et cōnfectūrum esse.

344. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. The enemy marched all day. 2. We think that the forces will retreat late in the day. 3. The enemy will be repulsed in a few hours. 4. The Belgae had great hope concerning the battle but many were killed. 5. The general began the attack but was captured at daybreak.



ROMAN TEMPLE AT NÎMES.

The best preserved Roman temple in the world.

(*b*) 1. The Germans were greater than the Romans in size. 2. Many very beautiful things had been made by hand. 3. The citizens thought that the cavalry could not be freed from the danger. 4. The Romans surpassed the Gauls in courage. 5. The leader had said that the legions would conquer.

ORAL EXERCISE

345. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Quid manibus facere potes? 2. Quot discipulī in prīmō ōrdine sunt? 3. Puellaene lapidēs bene iaciunt? 4. Nōnne multī virī in proeliō interfectī sunt? 5. Līberīne amīcī amīcīs sunt?

LESSON LI

NUMERALS

[illegible] "Every cloud has a silver lining."*

[illegible] *twenty-one* are:[1]

	[illegible]	ORDINALS
[illegible]	[illegible]	prī'mus, *first*
[illegible]	[illegible]	secun'dus, *second*
[illegible]	[illegible]	ter'tius, *third*
[illegible]	[illegible]	quār'tus
[illegible]	[illegible]	quīn'tus
[illegible]	[illegible]	sex'tus
[illegible]	[illegible]	sep'timus
[illegible]	[illegible]	octā'vus
[illegible]	[illegible]	nō'nus
[illegible]	[illegible]	de'cimus
[illegible]	[illegible]	ūnde'cimus
[illegible]	[illegible]	duode'cimus
[illegible]	[illegible]	ter'tius de'cimus
14.	[illegible]	quār'tus de'cimus
15.	[illegible]	quīn'tus de'cimus
16.	sē'decim	sex'tus de'cimus
17.	septen'decim	sep'timus de'cimus
18.	duodēvīgin'tī	duodēvīcē'simus
19.	ūndēvīgin'tī	ūndēvīcē'simus
20.	vīgin'tī	vīcē'simus
21.	vīgin'tī ū'nus (ū'nus et vīgin'tī)	vīcē'simus prī'mus
30.	trīgin'tā	trīcē'simus

* Literally: *After clouds, Phoebus* (the sun-god). Compare Longfellow's

"Be still, sad heart, and cease repining,
Behind the clouds is the sun still shining."

[1] Compare § 619. For a more complete list of numerals, see § 579.

(*a*) The declension of **ūnus**, **duo**, and **trēs** has been given. The cardinals from **quattuor** to **centum**, *one hundred*, inclusive, are indeclinable. The hundreds (except **centum**) are declined like the plural of **magnus**. The ordinals are declined like **magnus**.

347. VOCABULARY

ag′men,[1] **-minis**, n., *army* (on the march), *line of march;* **novis′simum ag′men**, *rear;* **prī′mum ag′men**, *van.*

cer′tus, -a, -um, *certain;* **certiō′rem** (or **certiō′rēs**) **fa′cere**, *inform.*[2]

quār′tus, -a, -um, *fourth.*

quīn′tus, -a, -um, *fifth.*

no′vus, -a, -um, *new;* **no′vus mī′les**, *recruit.*

sep′tem, num. adj., indecl., *seven.*

cen′tum, num. adj., indecl., *one hundred.*

me′dius, -a, -um, *middle;* **me′diā noc′te**, *at midnight;* **in me′diō col′le**, *halfway up the hill.*

348. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

November quarter medium novelty

(*a*) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

EXERCISES

349. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Mediā nocte Caesaris castra oppugnābantur. 2. Quārtā hōrā diēī impetus in novissimum agmen factus est. 3. Scīvit nautās dē altitūdine flūminis certiōrēs factōs esse. 4. Novī mīlitēs mīlia passuum septem iter facient. 5. Caesar dē agmine certior factus erat.

(*b*) 1. Prīmum agmen sē nōn recipiet sed impetum incipiet. 2. Dē victōriā nautārum Caesarem certiōrem fēcerant. 3. Quīntō annō bellī audiēbāmus urbem ā decimā legiōne capī. 4. Novissimum agmen in mediō colle vīsum erat. 5. Tertiā proelī hōrā multī et magnī lapidēs dē mūrō ā fortibus mīlitibus iaciēbantur.

---

[1] **aciēs**, *army* (in battle array); **exercitus**, *army* (a body of trained soldiers). [2] Usually followed by **dē** with the ablative.

350. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. The recruits marched seven miles. 2. We have been informed about the death of the leader. 3. At sunset the rear will be attacked by the enemy. 4. We know that the four legions will come home. 5. Late in the day we heard that the whole army had been informed concerning the death of the general.



THE DYING GAUL.

This statue, often wrongly called the Dying Gladiator, represents a Gallic warrior sitting on his shield and gazing at his broken sword while he bleeds to death from a wound in his right side. It is one of the finest examples of ancient sculpture.

(*b*) 1. They are building a wall one hundred feet long and eight feet high. 2. We heard that the lieutenant had lived six years in camp. 3. We assert that the soldiers on the left wing fought as bravely as possible, but were killed. 4. The children were faithful to their father and informed (him) con-

cerning the danger. 5. At midnight we heard that the march had been accomplished very quickly.

PHRASES FROM CAESAR

351. *Commit to memory, with the translations:*

1. Iter facere. 2. Sē recipere. 3. Mediā nocte. 4. In mediō colle. 5. Certiōrem facere.



A Roman Candelabrum.

A Breach of Discipline

Fredericus, Germānōrum rēx, quod ab hostibus premēbātur, saevissimā disciplīnā mīlitēs in officiō continēbat. Saepe nocte sōlus per castra ambulābat. Aliquandō, dum castra, ut cōnsuētūdō erat, perlūstrat lūcem in tabernāculō fīnitimō vīdit. Rēx igitur, quī īrā concitābātur, quod ignem in castrīs mīlitēs habēre vetuerat, silenter tabernāculum intrāvit.

Mīles litterās ad uxōrem scrībēbat. Dum multīs verbīs perīcula bellī, suam salūtem, amōremque magnum nārrat, subitō rēgem videt. Tum rēx, "Litterās ad fīnem perscrībere licet.[1] In fīne tamen haec (*these*) verba pōnēs: 'Valē,[2] Ō cārissima, crās enim, quod imperātōris praecepta male servāvī, vīvus nōn erō.'"

[1] An impersonal verb; perscrībere is its subject.
[2] *farewell*, imperative of valeō.

LESSON LII

PREPOSITIONS

*Pro aris et focis.—For home and fireside.**

352. The ablative is used with

ā or **ab, dē,**
cum, ex or **ē,**
sine, prō, prae.

353. The accusative is used with about thirty prepositions; the most common are **ad, ante, apud, circum, contrā, inter, per, trāns.**

(*a*) Two prepositions, **in** and **sub**, govern both **accusative and ablative**; with the accusative they denote motion *toward* a place, and with the ablative, rest *in* a place.

354. VOCABULARY

adulēs'cēns, -en'tis, m., *youth, young man.*
iu'gum, -ī, n., *yoke; ridge (of a hill).*
stō, stā're, ste'tī, stā'tus, *stand.*
prō, prep. (with abl.), *in front of, for,* { *instead of. in defense of. in behalf of.* }
sine, prep. (with abl.), *without.*
sub, { (with acc. after verbs of motion), *under.* (with abl. to denote place), *at the foot of, under.* }

355. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

subjugate station conjugate adolescent

(*a*) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

EXERCISES

356. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Multī adulēscentēs prō patriā vīvunt. 2. Animālia pulchra sub arbore saepissimē stetērunt. 3. Cohortēs mīlia passuum tria Rōmā iter fēcērunt. 4. Multō diē lēgātī ad

* Literally: *For altars and hearths.*

Caesarem vēnērunt. 5. Prīmā lūce prīmum agmen sub iugum missum erat.

(*b*) 1. Caesar dē adulēscente certior factus est. 2. Castra hostium sine perīculō capī nōn possunt. 3. Posterō diē Caesaris equitēs cum Helvētiīs pugnāvērunt et victī sunt. 4. Equī equitum sub arboribus steterant. 5. Urbs diū et ācriter oppugnāta est sed capī nōn potuit.



AUGUSTUS CAESAR.

Julius Caesar's nephew, Octavian (63 B.C.–14 A.D.), after many struggles succeeded to his uncle's power. He founded the Roman Empire, taking the title *imperator*. His time was the most brilliant period in Roman literature, the "Augustan Age."

357. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. The enemy will kill a few of the youths. 2. At midnight the leader stood in the van. 3. Fathers always work for their sons and daughters. 4. The man stood at the foot of the mountain and received a very severe wound. 5. Some were sent under the yoke, others were killed.

(*b*) 1. We think that the letters have been sent to Rome. 2. The swift horseman had been informed of the danger by the voice of his leader. 3. In the summer the days are long and the nights very short. 4. Stones were hurled from the fortification by the bravest men. 5. We knew that the teacher would lead the children home.

PHRASES FROM CAESAR

358. *Commit to memory, with the translations:*

1. Sub monte. 2. Sub iugum. 3. Prīmum agmen. 4. Novissimum agmen. 5. Novī mīlitēs.

Orgetorīx

Dux apud Helvētiōs fuit Orgetorīx. Helvētiōs dē fīnibus suīs[1] cum omnibus cōpiīs inter montēs, trāns flūmen, per prōvinciam dūcēbat. Puer Rōmānus sub monte stābat et Helvētiōs vīdit. Sine morā in oppidum properāvit et factum nārrāvit.

In oppidō virī omnēs prō patriā pugnant. Exercitum parāvērunt et multīs cum cōpiīs ex oppidō in hostēs properāvērunt. Exercitus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs pugnāvit et hostēs superāvit. Helvētiī in suīs fīnibus manēbant.



The Swimming-Pool at Hadrian's Villa.

This villa, the library of which was shown on page 51, covered over 150 acres. In it Hadrian built imitations of buildings and places that had interested him in his travels. It was all on so magnificent a scale that it is hard to-day to realize its grandeur unless one sees the extent of the ruins.

[1] See **suus, -a, -um** in the Vocabulary.

LESSON LIII

REVIEW

*Nemo me impune lacessit.—No one molests me unhurt.**

359. Derivatives.—Write all the English words you can which seem to be derived from the following:

stō	iaciō	capiō	ūnus
centum	certus	mors	faciō
duo	quārtus	dīcō	novus

360. Form Drill.—1. Give the rules for the formation of active infinitives. Of passive infinitives. 2. Give the infinitives, active and passive, of **dō, moveō, mittō, capiō, veniō.** 3. Which infinitive of the third conjugation is peculiar in its form? 4. How are **-iō** verbs of the third conjugation conjugated? 5. How can you tell whether an **-iō** verb is of the third or of the fourth conjugation? 6. Count to **trīgintā** in Latin. 7. Decline **ūnus, duo, trēs, deus, dea, alius.**

361. Word Drill.—1. Distinguish between the meanings of **exercitus, agmen,** and **aciēs.** 2. Give the nominative, the genitive, and the gender of the Latin words for the following:

death	god	hope
fortification	youth	length
goddess	width	line of march

362. Syntax Drill.—1. Name two uses for the infinitive and illustrate each by a Latin sentence. 2. Name the prepositions that always govern the ablative case. 3. Name three prepositions that govern the accusative

* The motto of Scotland, referring to the thistle.

case. 4. What two prepositions govern both accusative and ablative? 5. Illustrate by an English sentence the ablative of separation. 6. Illustrate by an English sentence the ablative of specification.

363. **Composition.** — State in Latin ten facts that you have heard to-day. (Have the class translate each fact as stated.)

EXERCISES FOR SIGHT READING

364. 1. Gladiīs in hostēs impetum incipiēmus. 2. Scrīpsistī pulchrās rēs ā līberīs factās esse. 3. Tōtam noctem exercitus iter fēcit. 4. Exīstimāvit bellum duodecim annōs gestum esse. 5. Caesar novōs mīlitēs in novissimō agmine posuit. 6. Mīlle virī Rōmā missī erant. 7. Captīvus prō adulēscente stetit. 8. Putāvimus mīlitēs mediā nocte in oppidum mittī. 9. Longās litterās comitibus scrībunt. 10. Vēnērunt Rōmam difficilī viā.

Nāsīca et Ennius

Nāsīca Ennī poētae amīcus erat. Nāsīca ad Ennium vēnit et ā portā eum (*him*) quaesīvit. Serva dīxit, "Ennius domī nōn est." Ennius domī erat et id (*it*) Nāsīca sciēbat, nihil tamen dīxit, sed domum revertit.

Paucīs post diēbus ad Nāsīcam vēnit Ennius. Huic (*to him*) ipse[1] Nāsīca dīxit, "Nōn sum domī." Tum Ennius dīxit, "Nōnne cognōscō vōcem tuam?"[2] Nāsīca respondit, "Homō es impudens; ego servae tuae crēdidī: tū nōn crēdis mihi."[3]

---

[1] *Himself*, nominative. [2] *Your*. [3] *Me*, dative of ego.

LESSON LIV

SUBJUNCTIVE. CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

Crescat scientia.—May knowledge increase! *

365. First Conjugation.

Present Subjunctive = *present stem* (with **a** changed to **e**) + *personal endings*, **porte m.**

Second and Fourth Conjugations.

Present Subjunctive = *present stem* (with the vowel shortened) + **a** + *personal endings*, **mone a m, audi a m.**

Third Conjugation.

Present Subjunctive = *present stem* (with **e** changed to **a**) + *personal endings*, **dūca m.**

(*a*) Learn the present subjunctive, active and passive, of **portō, moneō, dūcō, audiō,** and **capiō,** §§ 586, 587, 588, 589, 590. Also present subjunctive of **sum, possum,** § 591.

(*b*) The indicative mood is used to indicate facts. The most common uses of the subjunctive are to represent something as willed, desired, possible, doubtful, or even contrary to fact. No translation is given for the subjunctive in the paradigms, as the meaning of a subjunctive varies with its use.

366. Subjunctive of Purpose.—In English, purpose is often expressed by the infinitive: *we fight to conquer.* But in Latin prose, purpose is expressed *not* by the infinitive but *by the subjunctive.* It is introduced by **ut,** *that, in order that,* if the purpose is positive, by **nē,** *that not, lest,* if it is negative.

We fight to overcome. **Pugnāmus ut superēmus.**
We fight that we may not be overcome. **Pugnāmus nē superēmur.**

(*a*) Always remember to put the English phrase of purpose into a clause with (*in order*) *that* before beginning to translate.

* The motto of Chicago University.

367. VOCABULARY

le'gō, -ere, lē'gī, lēc'tus, *read, choose.*
dē'ligō,[1] **-ere, -lē'gī, -lēc'tus,** *choose (from), gather, select.*
prohi'beō, -ē're, -uī, -itus, *keep off, hinder.*
ut, conj., *that.*
nē, conj., *that not, lest.*
per, prep. (with acc.), *through.*
rēg'num, -ī, n., *royal power, kingdom.*
crē'ber, -bra, -brum, *frequent.*

368. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

interregnum prohibit itinerary submarine

(*a*) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.



A ROMAN URN.

It is beautifully carved of white marble and represents Neptune, god of the sea, with his trident, looking at a sea monster. At his side is his gift to mankind, the horse.

EXERCISES

369. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Pugnāmus fortiter ut ā duce laudēmur. 2. Nūntiōs mittit ut itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant. 3. Mīlitēs celerrimē currunt nē hostēs novissimum agmen videant. 4. Vir mittētur ut rēgnum in cīvitāte occupet. 5. Veniēmus celeriter ut dē perīculō adulēscentem certiōrem faciāmus.

(*b*) 1. Cohortēs Rōmānae pugnant nē in viā vincantur. 2. Cīvitātibus quam plūrimīs Caesarem amīcum esse dīxit. 3. Caesar memoriā tenet dōna multa recepta esse. 4. Nūntius mittitur ut cīvēs moneantur. 5. Crēbrī nūntiī ad Caesarem missī erant.

[1] Compare with **legō.**

370. *Translate, remembering § 366 (a):*

(*a*) 1. We come to make peace. 2. We have marched through the territory of the Gauls. 3. The enemy comes to seize the royal power at Rome. 4. We shall send back the soldiers to pitch camp late in the day. 5. The children read many books that they may understand all things about Rome and the Roman people.

(*b*) 1. Caesar said that the Roman people would make peace with the Gauls. 2. A man is selected to warn the captive. 3. We shall seize the top of the mountain very easily. 4. All think that Marcus will kill the young man. 5. The faithful father will advise his son more often.

ORAL EXERCISE

371. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Dīxistīne puerum cum dīligentiā labōrāvisse? 2. Scrībitisne libenter litterās? 3. Quid dīcis? 4. Venīsne ut mātrem videās? 5. Nōnne Caesar cum Gallīs saepe pugnāvit?



NAPLES AND VESUVIUS.

This picture is taken from the so-called Tomb of Virgil. Pompeii is farther to the right and does not show in the picture.

LESSON LV

SEQUENCE OF TENSES

Caveat emptor. — *Let the buyer beware.**

372. Imperfect Subjunctive Active of All Conjugations = *present stem* + **re** + *personal endings;* or *present infinitive active* + *personal endings.*

Perfect Subjunctive Active of All Conjugations = *perfect stem* + **erī** + *personal endings.*

Pluperfect Subjunctive Active of All Conjugations = *perfect stem* + **isse** + *personal endings;* or *perfect infinitive active* + *personal endings.*

(*a*) According to above rules conjugate the imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect subjunctive active of **portō, moneō, dūcō, audiō, capiō,** also **sum** and **possum.** Conjugate all but **sum** and **possum** in the passive, following the same general plan as that used in the passive indicative. Compare §§ 586, 587, 588, 589, 590, 591.

373. VOCABULARY

impe'rium, impe'rī, n., *command, control, military authority.*
senā'tor, -ō'ris, m., *senator.*
persuā'deō, -ē're, persuā'sī, persuā'sus, *persuade.* It governs the dative and is followed by **ut** or **nē** with the subjunctive.
ne'gō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *deny, say not.*
im'perō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *order, levy.* It governs the dative, and is followed by **ut** or **nē** with the subjunctive.

374. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

imperial imperative legible negative senatorial

(*a*) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

* We say: *Buyer's risk.*

RULES

375. Classes of Tenses. — Tenses are divided into two classes, *principal* and *historical*.

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Principal Tenses	Present Future Future perfect	Present Perfect
Historical Tenses	Imperfect Perfect Pluperfect	Imperfect Pluperfect

376. Sequence of Tenses.[1] — Principal tenses in the indicative are generally followed by principal tenses in the subjunctive, and historical tenses by historical tenses.

The present and imperfect subjunctive are used to denote action incomplete at the time of the main verb, and the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive denote action complete at the time of the main verb.

EXERCISES ON SUBJUNCTIVES

377. (*a*) 1. Venīmus ut videāmus. 2. Persuādent virīs ut pugnent, capiant, moneant. 3. Persuādēbat senātōrī nē pugnāret, caperet, monēret. 4. Mīlitem mittet ut currat, videat, laudet. 5. Lēgātōs mīsit ut monērent, persuādērent, vincerent.

(*b*) 1. We come to attack, to conquer. 2. We came to attack, to conquer. 3. We persuaded the soldiers not to give, attack, kill. 4. The man is sent to hear, know, fight. 5. Caesar persuades the lieutenant to think, to say, to know.

---

[1] Notice that the first part of this rule shows whether to use a *principal* or *historical* tense; the second part shows *which one* of the principal or historical tenses to use.

EXERCISES

378. *Translate, explaining the mood and tense of each subjunctive and infinitive:*

(*a*) 1. Trēs senātōrēs dēlēctī erant. 2. Veniam ut dē bellō amīcum certiōrem faciam. 3. Fēminās et līberōs nōn



INTERIOR OF THE PANTHEON.

The Pantheon is the only ancient building in Rome which is not more or less in ruins. It was built by Hadrian and is an inverted bowl nearly 150 feet high and of the same diameter. It is lighted by an opening almost 30 feet across in the center of the dome. In it are the tombs of the first two kings of modern Italy and of the painter Raphael.

interficiēmus. 4. Fortissimē pugnāvērunt ut ā duce laudārentur. 5. Imperātor lēgātō persuāsit ut in citeriōre Galliā novōs mīlitēs cōnscrīberet.

(*b*) 1. Multa dē imperiō Rōmānōrum lēgit. 2. Lēgātō imperāverāmus ut itinere hostēs prohibēret. 3. Negāvērunt

equitēs quam peditēs fortius pugnāvisse. 4. Dīcit Germānōs bellum cum Gallīs plūrimōs annōs gestūrōs esse. 5. Scīvimus puerum decem annīs[1] maiōrem nātū esse quam puellam.

379. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Five legions were levied in hither Gaul. 2. The German leader did not kill the consul. 3. We ordered the senators to send ambassadors and make peace. 4. We shall send the boy home to read the book. 5. We send the lieutenant to persuade the soldiers not to leave the camp.

(*b*) 1. We have been informed that the soldiers were able to withstand all the attacks of the Germans. 2. The messenger informed Caesar of the victory. 3. The leader denied that the rear was being conquered. 4. Caesar fought long and fiercely to conquer the enemies of Rome. 5. The Helvetians said that their fields had been laid waste.

ORAL EXERCISE

380. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Cūr vēnerat? 2. Quam diū lēgistī? 3. Quis discipulīs persuāsit ut legerent? 4. Cūr nūntium mīsistī? 5. Mittēbārisne ut pugnārēs?

TARPĒIA

Sabīnī cum Rōmānīs bellum gerēbant et agrōs Rōmānōrum vāstābant. Rōmam exercitum dūcēbant et urbem intrāvērunt sed Capitōlium capere nōn poterant. Ubi ab Capitōliō nōn longē aberant, puellam Tarpēiam, fīliam ducis Rōmānī, portantem (*carrying*) aquam extrā moenia vīdērunt.

Dux Sabīnōrum putāvit puellam in Capitōlium exercitum dūcere posse, et dīxit sē (*he*) Tarpēiae praemium datūrum esse.

---

[1] See § 272.

Puella dīxit sē (*she*) habitūram esse rēs quās (*which*) in sinistrīs manibus gererent.

Sabīnī aureōs ānulōs et armillās in sinistrīs manibus gerēbant. Brevī tempore Sabīnī in Capitōliō stant et Tarpēiae praemium dare parant. In puellam scūta iaciunt; nam scūta Sabīnōrum erant in sinistrīs manibus. Tarpēia interficitur; Sabīnī Capitōlium occupant.



THE TARPEIAN ROCK.

At the foot of which Tarpeia was said to be buried, and from which traitors were cast to their death.

LESSON LVI

REVIEW

Ab ovo usque ad mala. — "*From soup to nuts.*"*

381. Derivatives. — Write all the English words you can that seem to be derived from the following:

persuādeō	prohibeō	negō
senātor	legō	dēligō

382. Form Drill. — 1. Give the formula for making each subjunctive tense, active and passive, in each of the four regular conjugations. 2. Conjugate **possum** and **capiō** through the subjunctive.



A German Bodyguard.

383. Syntax Drill. — 1. Name the *principal* tenses in the indicative and in the subjunctive. 2. Name the *historical* tenses in the indicative and in the subjunctive. 3. Give the rule for the sequence of tenses. 4. How do we express purpose? 5. What case and mood follow **imperō**? 6. Complete this English sentence to express a

* Horace. Literally: *from the egg as far as to the apples*, in allusion to the Roman custom of beginning a meal with egg and ending with apples.

case. 4. What two prepositions govern both accusative and ablative? 5. Illustrate by an English sentence the ablative of separation. 6. Illustrate by an English sentence the ablative of specification.

363. Composition. — State in Latin ten facts that you have heard to-day. (Have the class translate each fact as stated.)

EXERCISES FOR SIGHT READING

364. 1. Gladiīs in hostēs impetum incipiēmus. 2. Scrīpsistī pulchrās rēs ā līberīs factās esse. 3. Tōtam noctem exercitus iter fēcit. 4. Exīstimāvit bellum duodecim annōs gestum esse. 5. Caesar novōs mīlitēs in novissimō agmine posuit. 6. Mīlle virī Rōmā missī erant. 7. Captīvus prō adulēscente stetit. 8. Putāvimus mīlitēs mediā nocte in oppidum mittī. 9. Longās litterās comitibus scrībunt. 10. Vēnērunt Rōmam difficilī viā.

Nāsīca et Ennius

Nāsīca Ennī poētae amīcus erat. Nāsīca ad Ennium vēnit et ā portā eum (*him*) quaesīvit. Serva dīxit, "Ennius domī nōn est." Ennius domī erat et id (*it*) Nāsīca sciēbat, nihil tamen dīxit, sed domum revertit.

Paucīs post diēbus ad Nāsīcam vēnit Ennius. Huic (*to him*) ipse[1] Nāsīca dīxit, "Nōn sum domī." Tum Ennius dīxit, "Nōnne cognōscō vōcem tuam?"[2] Nāsīca respondit, "Homō es impudens; ego servae tuae crēdidī: tū nōn crēdis mihi."[3]

---

[1] *Himself*, nominative. [2] *Your*. [3] *Me*, dative of **ego**.

LESSON LIV

SUBJUNCTIVE. CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

Crescat scientia.—May knowledge increase! *

365. First Conjugation.

Present Subjunctive = present stem (with **a** changed to **e**) + *personal endings*, **porte m.**

Second and Fourth Conjugations.

Present Subjunctive = present stem (with the vowel shortened) + **a** + *personal endings*, **mone a m, audi a m.**

Third Conjugation.

Present Subjunctive = present stem (with **e** changed to **a**) + *personal endings*, **dūca m.**

(*a*) Learn the present subjunctive, active and passive, of **portō, moneō, dūcō, audiō,** and **capiō**, §§ 586, 587, 588, 589, 590. Also present subjunctive of **sum, possum**, § 591.

(*b*) The indicative mood is used to indicate facts. The most common uses of the subjunctive are to represent something as willed, desired, possible, doubtful, or even contrary to fact. No translation is given for the subjunctive in the paradigms, as the meaning of a subjunctive varies with its use.

366. Subjunctive of Purpose.—In English, purpose is often expressed by the infinitive: *we fight to conquer.* But in Latin prose, purpose is expressed *not* by the infinitive but *by the subjunctive.* It is introduced by **ut**, *that, in order that*, if the purpose is positive, by **nē**, *that not, lest*, if it is negative.

We fight to overcome. **Pugnāmus ut superēmus.**
We fight that we may not be overcome. **Pugnāmus nē superēmur.**

(*a*) Always remember to put the English phrase of purpose into a clause with (*in order*) *that* before beginning to translate.

---

* The motto of Chicago University.

367. **VOCABULARY**

le'gō, -ere, lē'gī, lēc'tus, *read, choose.*
dē'ligō,[1] **-ere, -lē'gī, -lēc'tus,** *choose (from), gather, select.*
prohi'beō, -ē're, -uī, -itus, *keep off, hinder.*
ut, conj., *that.*
nē, conj., *that not, lest.*
per, prep. (with acc.), *through.*
rēg'num, -ī, n., *royal power, kingdom.*
crē'ber, -bra, -brum, *frequent.*

368. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

interregnum   prohibit   itinerary   submarine

(*a*) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.



A Roman Urn.

It is beautifully carved of white marble and represents Neptune, god of the sea, with his trident, looking at a sea monster. At his side is his gift to mankind, the horse.

EXERCISES

369. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Pugnāmus fortiter ut ā duce laudēmur. 2. Nūntiōs mittit ut itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant. 3. Mīlitēs celerrimē currunt nē hostēs novissimum agmen videant. 4. Vir mittētur ut rēgnum in cīvitāte occupet. 5. Veniēmus celeriter ut dē perīculō adulēscentem certiōrem faciāmus.

(*b*) 1. Cohortēs Rōmānae pugnant nē in viā vincantur. 2. Cīvitātibus quam plūrimīs Caesarem amīcum esse dīxit. 3. Caesar memoriā tenet dōna multa recepta esse. 4. Nūntius mittitur ut cīvēs moneantur. 5. Crēbrī nūntiī ad Caesarem missī erant.

---

[1] Compare with **legō.**

370. *Translate, remembering § 366 (a):*

(*a*) 1. We come to make peace. 2. We have marched through the territory of the Gauls. 3. The enemy comes to seize the royal power at Rome. 4. We shall send back the soldiers to pitch camp late in the day. 5. The children read many books that they may understand all things about Rome and the Roman people.

(*b*) 1. Caesar said that the Roman people would make peace with the Gauls. 2. A man is selected to warn the captive. 3. We shall seize the top of the mountain very easily. 4. All think that Marcus will kill the young man. 5. The faithful father will advise his son more often.

ORAL EXERCISE

371. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Dīxistīne puerum cum dīligentiā labōrāvisse? 2. Scrībitisne libenter litterās? 3. Quid dīcis? 4. Venīsne ut mātrem videās? 5. Nōnne Caesar cum Gallīs saepe pugnāvit?



NAPLES AND VESUVIUS.

This picture is taken from the so-called Tomb of Virgil. Pompeii is farther to the right and does not show in the picture.

Rome late in the day. 3. We shall delay at Rome as long as possible. 4. The senator persuaded the general to allow the army to follow the enemy. 5. The commander-in-chief will get possession of all Gaul.

ORAL EXERCISE

392. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Cūr tēlō ūtēbāris? 2. Quid verēberis? 3. Quam diū morātī sunt? 4. Cūr proficīscēbantur? 5. Pollicēbāturne lēgātum ducem secūtūrum esse?

Robert, King of Scots. II

Duās hōrās in silvā errant rēx comesque fidēlis. Tandem trēs virōs armātōs vident. Rēx famē cōnfectus (*overcome*) hospitium petit. Ad casam dūcitur, ā latrōnibus (nam latrōnēs erant trēs virī) benignē cēnā accipitur.[1] Post cēnam rēx somnō sēsē (*himself*) dedit.

Comitem, quī dīligenter vigilāre ā rēge iussus erat, somnus impediēbat. Tum latrōnēs partem casae petiērunt ubi Robertus comesque dormiēbant.

Rēx, quī leviter dormiēbat, adventum latrōnum audīvit, gladiumque cēpit. Hīc atrōciter pugnātum est, rēx enim gladiō ūnum latrōnem trānsfīxit; at comes rēgis ā latrōnibus interfectus est.

Tum rēx īrā et dolōre incēnsus (*inflamed*), quod gladium ē corpore latrōnis trahere nōn poterat, face ārdentī secundī latrōnis caput ēlīsit. Ubi id (*that*) vīdit tertius, morte comitum perterritus fugam temptāvit. Nec tamen ē perīculō ēvāsit, ā rēge enim mortālī vulnere cōnfectus est.

---

[1] *is entertained at (by) dinner.*



The Court of a Roman House.

(*b*) 1. The soldiers were so full of courage that they easily conquered the forces of the Helvetians. 2. They denied that the right wing of the army had fled from the top of the hill. 3. The citizens tried to flee from the fire. 4. They used the swords so well that they killed many of the enemy. 5. The leader promised that the cohorts would not delay, but would take possession of the enemy's heavy baggage.

ORAL EXERCISE

409. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Estne puer tam bonus ut ab omnibus amētur? 2. Num Caesar impedīmentīs potiēbātur? 3. Nōnne Caesar apud (*among*) Rōmānōs plūrimum potuit? 4. Fugiēbatne Rōmā suspīciōne? 5. Quam longē exercitum sequēris?

Domus Rōmāna

Pictūram Rōmānae domūs vidēmus. Ante iānuam erat vēstibulum. Mōs erat ut in līmine "Salvē[1]" scrīberent.

Iānitor ad iānuam saepe stābat. Ibi canis saepe erat aut in solō pictūra canis cum verbīs "Cāvē[2] canem" vidērī poterat. Super iānuam erat scrīptum, "Nihil intret[3] malī."

Interior domus in trēs partēs dīvīsa est. Prīma pars appellāta est ātrium. Ibi in mediō tēctō apertum spatium relictum est. Pluvia per locum in impluvium dēscendēbat. In ātriō dominus suōs amīcōs accipiēbat. Pariēs pictūrīs montium, animālium et virōrum atque fēminārum pulchrē ōrnātus est. In tablīnō, quod (*which*) ātriō proximum erat, dominus tabulās familiārēs et pecūniam servāvit.

Tertia pars domūs et pulcherrima erat peristӯlium. Hīc pulchrī flōrēs et fontēs columnīs marmoreīs inclūsī sunt. Inter tablīnum et peristӯlium vēlum erat. Sī domus fenestrās habēbat, in superiōre parte parietis erant et parvae.

---

[1] Imperative of salveō. [2] Imperative of caveō. [3] Subjunctive to express a mild command. *Let no evil (nothing of evil) enter.*

LESSON LX

REVIEW

*Amicus certus in re incerta cernitur. — A friend in need is a friend indeed.**

410. Derivatives. — Write all the English words you can that seem to be derived from the following:

adventus	impedīmentum	iniūria	patior
suspīciō	plēnus	sequor	fugiō
cūstōs	amor	ūtor	cupidus

411. Form Drill. — 1. Define a deponent verb. 2. Conjugate **sequor** through the indicative and subjunctive moods.

412. Syntax Drill. — 1. Distinguish between a subjective and an objective genitive. 2. Give an example of each. 3. What verbs govern the ablative case? 4. How is result expressed? 5. How is negative purpose introduced? negative result? 6. **Imperātor tam celeriter venit ut hostēs impedīmentīs potīrī nōn possint.** Change **venit** to **vēnit** and complete the sentence.

413. EXERCISES FOR SIGHT READING

1. Mīlitēs multōs diēs circum oppidum morābuntur. 2. Liber tam gravis erat ut ā puerō parvō portārī nōn posset. 3. Tanta cupiditās lībertātis est ut servī adventū exercitūs nōn fugiant sed quam fortissimē pugnent. 4. Rēgis amor pācis tantus erat ut proeliō mīlitēs prohibēre cōnārētur. 5. Imperātor prīmā lūce proficīscētur et mīlia passuum multa iter faciet.

* Ennius. Literally: *A sure friend is seen in an uncertain affair.*

LESSON LXI

RELATIVE PRONOUN

Qui non proficit, deficit. — Who does not advance, falls behind.

414. The relative pronoun[1] is declined as follows:

quī, *who, which, that*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	**quī**	**quae**	**quod**	**quī**	**quae**	**quae**
Gen.	**cu'ius**	**cu'ius**	**cu'ius**	**quō'rum**	**quā'rum**	**quō'rum**
Dat.	**cui**	**cui**	**cui**	**qui'bus**	**qui'bus**	**qui'bus**
Acc.	**quem**	**quam**	**quod**	**quōs**	**quās**	**quae**
Abl.	**quō**	**quā**	**quō**	**qui'bus**	**qui'bus**	**qui'bus**

415. VOCABULARY

fu'ga, -ae, f., *flight.*
profec'tiō, -ō'nis, f., *departure.*
tū'tus, -a, -um, *safe.*
quī, quae, quod, relative pronoun, *who, which, that.*
i'bi, adv., *there.*
in'colō, -ere, -uī, (intrans.)[2] *live, dwell;* (trans.) *inhabit.*
po'pulor, -ā'rī, -ā'tus sum, *lay waste, devastate.*
vi'deor, -ē'rī, vī'sus sum, *seem, appear.*

416. ***What Latin words do the following suggest?***

depopulate suspicion scribe transpose

(*a*) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

RULE

417. Agreement of the Relative. — A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person, but its case is determined by its use in its own clause.

I saw the man who came. **Virum quī vēnit vīdī.**
The city which you see is Rome. **Urbs quam vidēs Rōma est.**

(*a*) Notice that **quī** in the first example is masculine gender, singular number, third person, like its antecedent **virum**, but it is *nominative*

---

[1] See §§ 602 and 604. [2] See §§ 623 and 624.

for war. 5. We tried to follow the enemy that we might kill (their) leader.

(*b*) 1. Caesar thought that the injury to the state was very small. 2. Life is full of dangers. 3. At the arrival of the Belgians the Romans delayed. 4. Hope of victory has been lost. 5. The children had great fear of death.

ORAL EXERCISE

401. Ask five questions in Latin. (One student should ask the question and another one answer it.)



THE LITTLE THEATER AT POMPEII.

This is called the little comic theater and is one of the best-preserved Roman *theaters*, as distinguished from the arenas or amphitheaters. It had a roof and was probably used for musical performances.

The first four tiers were reserved for the chairs of the aristocracy. Above the parapet, part of which may be seen at the left of the picture back of the fourth tier, were the seats of the common people. In this theater they were so wide that there was ample foot-room without inconveniencing those in the row ahead.

LESSON LIX

SUBJUNCTIVE OF RESULT

Verbum sat sapienti.—*A word to the wise is sufficient.**

402. **Result** is expressed by the subjunctive introduced by **ut.** *Negative result* is introduced by **ut . . . nōn.** The main clause often contains **tantus,** *so great,* **sīc, ita, tam,** *so,* or some word of similar meaning. The rule for sequence of tenses, § 376, should be followed.

The boy was so good that he was loved. **Puer tam bonus erat ut amārētur.**

Caesar's courage was such that he could not be conquered. **Virtūs Caesaris tanta erat ut vincī nōn posset.**

(*a*) In purpose and result clauses if *that* means *in order that,* the clause is purpose; if *that* means *so that,* the clause is result.

403. VOCABULARY

Brū'tus, -ī, m., *Brutus.*
cūs'tōs, -ō'dis, m., *guard, watch, keeper.*
impedīmen'tum, -ī, n., *hindrance;* pl., *heavy baggage.*
suspī'ciō, -ō'nis, f., *suspicion.*
fu'giō, -ere, fū'gī, ———, *flee.*
an'te, prep., (with acc.) *before.*
an'te, adv., *before, ago.*
pau'lō, adv., (of degree of difference) *by a little, a little.*
pau'lum, adv., *a little, somewhat.*
tan'tus, -a, -um, *so great, such.*
i'ta, adv., *so* (manner).
tam, adv., *so* (degree).
plū'rimum pos'se, *to be most powerful, to have great influence.*

404. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

custodian fugitive impediment suspicious

(*a*) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

* This is sometimes abbreviated: **verb. sat** or **verb. sap.**

RULES

405. Adverbial Accusative. — The accusative is often used adverbially to express degree or extent.

He is very powerful. **Plūrimum potest.**
The teacher praised the girl much. **Magister puellam multum laudāvit.**

406. Adverbial Ablative. — The ablative is often used adverbially, usually to express degree of difference.[1]

A little before. **Paulō ante.**
He is much braver. **Multō fortior est.**

EXERCISES

407. *Translate; give the reason for the mood and tense of each verb:*

(*a*) 1. Paulō ante domī eram. 2. Rēgēs plūrimum poterant. 3. Ante sōlis[2] occāsum paulum legēmus. 4. Nihil tam malum est ut peius esse nōn possit. 5. Tēlīs ita ūsī sunt ut ūnum ex hostibus interficerent.

(*b*) 1. Bene pugnāre cōnātur ut ā duce bonō laudētur. 2. Suspīciōne servum līberāvimus ut vītā fruerētur. 3. Brūtō nūntiāre cōnātus est impedīmenta hostium capta esse. 4. Tantus timor mortis omnēs cūstōdēs occupāvit ut tēlīs nōn ūterentur. 5. Lēgātī perīculum tam timuērunt ut exercitum relinquerent et fugerent.

408. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. The bravest are the most powerful. 2. Did you know that the enemy had fled a little while ago? 3. The bravery of the Romans was so great that they could not be conquered. 4. The boy read so that no one could understand (him). 5. The guard saw such danger that he did not allow the women to leave the town.

---

[1] Compare § 272. [2] Subjective genitive.



The Court of a Roman House.

(*b*) 1. The soldiers were so full of courage that they easily conquered the forces of the Helvetians. 2. They denied that the right wing of the army had fled from the top of the hill. 3. The citizens tried to flee from the fire. 4. They used the swords so well that they killed many of the enemy. 5. The leader promised that the cohorts would not delay, but would take possession of the enemy's heavy baggage.

ORAL EXERCISE

409. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Estne puer tam bonus ut ab omnibus amētur? 2. Num Caesar impedīmentīs potiēbātur? 3. Nōnne Caesar apud (*among*) Rōmānōs plūrimum potuit? 4. Fugiēbatne Rōmā suspīciōne? 5. Quam longē exercitum sequēris?

Domus Rōmāna

Pictūram Rōmānae domūs vidēmus. Ante iānuam erat vēstibulum. Mōs erat ut in līmine "Salvē[1]" scrīberent.

Iānitor ad iānuam saepe stābat. Ibi canis saepe erat aut in solō pictūra canis cum verbīs "Cāvē[2] canem" vidērī poterat. Super iānuam erat scrīptum, "Nihil intret[3] malī."

Interior domus in trēs partēs dīvīsa est. Prīma pars appellāta est ātrium. Ibi in mediō tēctō apertum spatium relictum est. Pluvia per locum in impluvium dēscendēbat. In ātriō dominus suōs amīcōs accipiēbat. Pariēs pictūrīs montium, animālium et virōrum atque fēminārum pulchrē ōrnātus est. In tablīnō, quod (*which*) ātriō proximum erat, dominus tabulās familiārēs et pecūniam servāvit.

Tertia pars domūs et pulcherrima erat peristylium. Hīc pulchrī flōrēs et fontēs columnīs marmoreīs inclūsī sunt. Inter tablīnum et peristylium vēlum erat. Sī domus fenestrās habēbat, in superiōre parte parietis erant et parvae.

---

[1] Imperative of salveō. [2] Imperative of caveō. [3] Subjunctive to express a mild command. *Let no evil (nothing of evil) enter.*

LESSON LX

REVIEW

*Amicus certus in re incerta cernitur. — A friend in need is a friend indeed.**

410. Derivatives. — Write all the English words you can that seem to be derived from the following:

adventus	impedīmentum	iniūria	patior
suspīciō	plēnus	sequor	fugiō
cūstōs	amor	ūtor	cupidus

411. Form Drill. — 1. Define a deponent verb. 2. Conjugate **sequor** through the indicative and subjunctive moods.

412. Syntax Drill. — 1. Distinguish between a subjective and an objective genitive. 2. Give an example of each. 3. What verbs govern the ablative case? 4. How is result expressed? 5. How is negative purpose introduced? negative result? 6. **Imperātor tam celeriter venit ut hostēs impedīmentīs potīrī nōn possint.** Change **venit** to **vēnit** and complete the sentence.

413. EXERCISES FOR SIGHT READING

1. Mīlitēs multōs diēs circum oppidum morābuntur. 2. Liber tam gravis erat ut ā puerō parvō portārī nōn posset. 3. Tanta cupiditās lībertātis est ut servī adventū exercitūs nōn fugiant sed quam fortissimē pugnent. 4. Rēgis amor pācis tantus erat ut proeliō mīlitēs prohibēre cōnārētur. 5. Imperātor prīmā lūce proficīscētur et mīlia passuum multa iter faciet.

* Ennius. Literally: *A sure friend is seen in an uncertain affair.*

LESSON LXI

RELATIVE PRONOUN

Qui non proficit, deficit. — *Who does not advance, falls behind.*

414. The relative pronoun [1] is declined as follows:

quī, *who, which, that*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	**quī**	**quae**	**quod**	**quī**	**quae**	**quae**
Gen.	**cu'ius**	**cu'ius**	**cu'ius**	**quō'rum**	**quā'rum**	**quō'rum**
Dat.	**cui**	**cui**	**cui**	**qui'bus**	**qui'bus**	**qui'bus**
Acc.	**quem**	**quam**	**quod**	**quōs**	**quās**	**quae**
Abl.	**quō**	**quā**	**quō**	**qui'bus**	**qui'bus**	**qui'bus**

415. VOCABULARY

fu'ga, -ae, f., *flight.*
profec'tiō, -ō'nis, f., *departure.*
tū'tus, -a, -um, *safe.*
quī, quae, quod, relative pronoun, *who, which, that.*
i'bi, adv., *there.*
in'colō, -ere, -uī, (intrans.)[2] *live, dwell;* (trans.) *inhabit.*
po'pulor, -ā'rī, -ā'tus sum, *lay waste, devastate.*
vi'deor, -ē'rī, vī'sus sum, *seem, appear.*

416. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

depopulate   suspicion   scribe   transpose

(*a*) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

RULE

417. Agreement of the Relative. — A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person, but its case is determined by its use in its own clause.

I saw the man who came. **Virum quī vēnit vīdī.**
The city which you see is Rome. **Urbs quam vidēs Rōma est.**

(*a*) Notice that **quī** in the first example is masculine gender, singular number, third person, like its antecedent **virum**, but it is *nominative*

[1] See §§ 602 and 604.   [2] See §§ 623 and 624.

case because it is the subject of the verb vēnit. In the second example the pronoun quam is feminine gender, singular number, third person, to agree with its antecedent urbs, but *accusative* because it is the object of the verb vidēs.

EXERCISES

418. ***Translate, giving the reason for the gender, number, and case of each relative pronoun:***

(*a*) 1. Loca ad quae properāvimus tūta erant. 2. Vīdērunt cūstōdem cuius amīcus ex urbe missus erat. 3. Cūstōs cui



House of the Vettii, Pompeii.

This is perhaps the most interesting house in Pompeii. Its many wall-paintings are unusually well preserved. Some may be seen in the picture, covered with glass to protect them. The kitchen gives some idea of the way the Romans prepared their food. Compare this with the picture on page 137.

perīculum nūntiātum erat verērī vīsus est. 4. **Pater virī dē quō dīxit multōs annōs Rōmae incoluit. 5. Profectiō hostium fugae simillima vidētur.**

(*b*) 1. Ad amīcum litterās quās scrīpsī mīsī. 2. Ad flūmen quod est in extrēmīs hostium fīnibus properāvit atque ibi castra posuit. 3. Mīlitēs missī sunt quī[1] fīnēs Gallōrum populārentur. 4. Mīlitēs ā quibus castra mūnīta sunt ad urbem venient. 5. Caesar per nūntiōs certior factus est trēs partēs cōpiārum trāns flūmen esse, quārtam partem in castrīs relīctam esse.

419. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. I heard that Caesar had come, had seen, had conquered. 2. We saw the men by whom the heavy baggage had been captured. 3. The boy whom I see is much better than (his) sister. 4. I followed the slave to whom the master had given very many gifts. 5. The city was not safe on account of the flight of the army.

(*b*) 1. We had delayed the departure of the enemy many days. 2. The Romans so laid waste the territory of their enemies that nothing was left. 3. They tried to make peace with Caesar in order that their fields might not be destroyed and their children killed. 4. They say that brave men are often very powerful and have gained possession of many large cities. 5. I heard the things about which Caesar had been informed by his lieutenant.

ORAL EXERCISE

420. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Fuitne Caesaris profectiō similis fugae? 2. Esne puer quem Rōmae vīdī? 3. Ubi legiōnēs Rōmānae erant? 4. Quibus fābulam nārrāvistī? 5. Vīdistīne impedīmenta quibus imperātor potītus est?

[1] **Quī** is often equivalent to **ut** and a personal pronoun.

LESSON LXII

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

Quis custodiet ipsos custodes? — Who will watch the watchmen themselves? *

421. The interrogative pronouns[1] are the substantive, **quis**, *who?* and the adjective, **quī**, *what?*

Quis, *who?*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL		
	M. AND F.	NEUT.	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	**quis**	**quid**	**quī**	**quae**	**quae**
Gen.	**cu'ius**	**cu'ius**	**quō'rum**	**quā'rum**	**quō'rum**
Dat.	**cui**	**cui**	**qui'bus**	**qui'bus**	**qui'bus**
Acc.	**quem**	**quid**	**quōs**	**quās**	**quae**
Abl.	**quō**	**quō**	**qui'bus**	**qui'bus**	**qui'bus**

(*a*) The interrogative adjective **quī** is declined like the relative pronoun **quī**, § 414.

422. VOCABULARY

quis, quid, interrogative pronoun, *who? what?*
quī, quae, quod, interrogative adjective, *what?*
Rho'danus, -ī, m., *the Rhone.*
num, interrogative particle, *whether*, when used in indirect questions.
dīc, (imperative), *tell.*
quamo'brem, adv., *why?*
et . . . et, *both . . . and.*
quae'rō, -ere, quaesī'vī, quaesī'tus, *ask, seek.* It takes the acc. of the thing and the abl. of the person with **ē, ex, ā, ab**, or **dē**.

423. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

question dictate benediction intervene

(*a*) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

---

* Juvenal.

[1] Compare § 605.

RULE

4. **Indirect Questions.** — An indirect question fol- a verb of knowing, asking, and the like, and is a rdinate clause introduced by an interrogative word.[1] expressed by the subjunctive.

DIRECT QUESTION	INDIRECT QUESTION
Where were they?	*He heard where they were.*
Ubi erant?	**Audīvit ubi essent.**
Where are you?	*He knows where you are.*
Ubi es?	**Scit ubi sīs.**



A ROMAN AQUEDUCT IN GAUL.

furnished water to Nemausus (Nîmes), the amphitheater of which is shown on pages 5 and 12.

[1] Compare §§ 605 and 648.

EXERCISES

425. *Translate:*[1]

(*a*) 1. Sciō quis veniat, quis vēnerit. 2. Scīvit quis venīret, quis vēnisset. 3. Quaesīvit cui liber datus esset. 4. Quaeram ā Caesare cūr paulō fortius nōn pugnāverīs. 5. Audīvī quot hominēs Galliam incolerent.

(*b*) 1. Quid fēcerat? 2. Quaesīvit ā Gallīs quamobrem Rōmam vēnissent. 3. Quī mīlitēs tam bene pugnābunt ut hostium fīnēs populentur? 4. Quaerēbat num Gallī trāns Rhodanum incolerent. 5. Multō diē Caesarī per explōrātōrēs nūntiātum est et montem ā mīlitibus Rōmānīs tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse.

426. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. We do not know who[2] inhabited the cities of Gaul. 2. My friends asked why I had not remained there. 3. We asked Caesar how many men had been killed. 4. Do you know by whom the Gauls were conquered? 5. Did you know that the enemy had fled a little while before?

(*b*) 1. We shall ask about the children who are delaying in the city but who ought to set out toward home. 2. So great was the fear of the soldiers that they fled and left the heavy baggage. 3. Did you tell your father why you were a little afraid (feared a little)? 4. The lieutenants ordered (their) infantry to use (their) swords as quickly as possible. 5. Before the departure of the guards the young men seemed to be safe.

ORAL EXERCISE

427. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Quis scīvit cūr victus essēs? 2. Quibus tēlīs mīlitēs ūtentur? 3. Quem Rōmae vīdistī? 4. Scīsne quō in locō sīs?

---

[1] Review the subjunctive forms of each conjugation.

[2] The student must decide whether *who* and *whom* are *relative* or *interrogative pronouns*, for on this fact depends the mood of the following verb.

The Beginnings of Rome

Procā, rēx Albānōrum, Numitōrem et Amūlium fīliōs habuit. Numitōrī, quī nātū maior erat, rēgnum relīquit; sed Amūlius frātrem pepulit et rēgnāvit. Posteā Rhēam Silviam, Numitōris fīliam, Vestae sacerdōtem[1] fēcit, quae tamen Rōmulum et Remum geminōs ēdidit.



Mars.
The Roman god of war, Mars, was the father of Romulus and Remus.

Ubi Amūlius rem cognōvit, Rhēam Silviam in vincula coniēcit, et puerōs in Tiberim abiēcit, quī tum forte super rīpās erat effūsus.[2] Sed brevī tempore aqua puerōs in siccō relīquit. Tum lupa, ut fāma est, ad vāgītum cucurrit, puerōs linguā lambit, mātremque sē gessit.[3] Ubi Faustulus, pāstor rēgis rem vīdit, puerōs ad casam portāvit et Accae Lārentiae coniugī dedit.

1 Priestesses of Vesta, called "Vestal virgins," were forbidden to marry.
2 I.e., *had overflowed its banks.*
3 **sē gessit**, *conducted herself as, acted as.*

LESSON LXIII

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

Veritas vos liberabit.* — *The truth shall make you free.*

428. The personal pronouns[1] are **ego** for the first person and **tū** for the second. The personal pronoun of the third person is supplied by the demonstrative **is**. See § 582,(*e*).

	FIRST PERSON Singular	FIRST PERSON Plural	SECOND PERSON Singular	SECOND PERSON Plural
Nom.	**e'go**, *I.*	**nōs**, *we.*	**tū**, *you.*	**vōs**, *you.*
Gen.	**me'ī**	**nos'trum** / **nos'trī**	**tu'ī**	**ves'trum** / **ves'trī**
Dat.	**mi'hi**	**nō'bīs**	**ti'bi**	**vō'bīs**
Acc.	**mē**	**nōs**	**tē**	**vōs**
Abl.	**mē**	**nō'bīs**	**tē**	**vō'bīs**

429. The reflexive pronouns[2] refer to the subject of the sentence or of the clause in which they stand. The reflexives of the first and second persons are supplied from the declension of **ego** and **tū**; **meī**, *of myself*, **tuī**, *of yourself*, and so on.

Reflexive of the Third Person

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Gen.	**su'ī**	**su'ī**
Dat.	**si'bi**	**si'bi**
Acc.	**sē** or **sē'sē**	**sē** or **sē'sē**
Abl.	**sē** or **sē'sē**	**sē** or **sē'sē**

(*a*) The reflexive of the third person serves for all genders and for both numbers. Thus, **suī** may mean *of himself*, *of herself*, *of itself*, *of themselves.*

* St. Jerome's Bible. Motto of the Johns Hopkins University.

[1] Compare § 603. [2] Compare § 608.

430. **VOCABULARY**

'go, meī, *I.*
ū, tuī, *you.*
neī, *of myself.*
uī, *of yourself.*
uī, *of himself,* etc.
lēdi'tiō, -ō'nis, f., *surrender.*
dē'dō, -ere, dē'didī, dē'ditus, (trans.) *give up, surrender, abandon.*
respon'deō, -ē're, respon'dī, respōn'sus, *answer, reply.*
ne'que, *neither, and not.*

431. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

egotism suicide respond vision

(*a*) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.



THE TEMPLE OF APOLLO AT POMPEII.

EXERCISE ON FORMS

432. *Translate, distinguishing between the pronouns:*

(*a*) 1. Tū mē vidēs. 2. Ego tē videō. 3. Vōs nōbīscum[1] veniētis. 4. Puella sē vīcit. 5. Vōs nōbīs librōs dedistis.

[1] The preposition **cum** is appended to the ablative of personal and reflexive pronouns; usually, to relative and interrogative pronouns.

(*b*) 1. We saw you. 2. You praised us. 3. We came with you. 4. You told the story to me. 5. The boys praised themselves.

EXERCISES

433. *Translate, telling to which class each of the pronouns belongs:*

(*a*) 1. Puellae inter sē[1] laudant. 2. Vōbīs maiōra dōna pollicēbimur. 3. Tūne mihi fābulam nārrāvistī? 4. Māter tē semper laudat sed sē semper culpat. 5. Quaesīvērunt ā mē quis essem et quō ex locō vēnissem.

(*b*) 1. Lēgātīs respondit sē pācem factūrum esse. 2. Ante prīmam lūcem hostēs sē dēdidērunt. 3. Respondēs tē ducī persuāsūrum esse ut paulum morētur. 4. Ego[2] et tū quaerēmus quamobrem dēditiōnem fēcerint. 5. Caesarem certiōrem faciunt agrōs ab Helvētiīs vāstātōs esse neque sē ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre posse.

434. *Translate, expressing all the pronouns:*

(*a*) 1. The general responds that he will not surrender. 2. In what city did we see you a little while ago? 3. I know who you are, and you know who I am. 4. You have been good children, and I shall give you a beautiful gift. 5. You told us about Caesar's love of war.

(*b*) 1. The soldiers praise each other and do not (make a) surrender. 2. The city extends three miles in length. 3. We boys are a little younger than you girls. 4. The lieutenant promised that he would get possession of the camp of the enemy. 5. The senator about whose surrender we had heard responded a little concerning himself.

---

[1] *Each other.*

[2] Notice the order of personal pronouns in Latin: first, second, third. The personal pronoun as subject is expressed only when there is emphasis or contrast.

ORAL EXERCISE

435. ***Answer these questions in Latin:***

1. Cūr tū melior es quam ego? 2. Tūne tē saepe laudās? 3. Quis vōbīs dōna dedit? 4. Quī discipulī ā magistrō laudātī sunt? 5. Num tē dēdēs?

Romulus and Remus

Rōmulus et Remus ā Faustulō et Accā Lārentiā ēducābantur. Lūdicrīs certāminibus inter pāstōrēs vīrēs auxērunt, et latrōnēs ā rapīnā pecorum arcēre coepērunt. Latrōnēs igitur cōnsilium cēpērunt ut iuvenēs aut ē terrā expellerent[1] aut interficerent.

Remus captus est, sed Rōmulus ē perīculō praesentī[2] sē ēripuit. Tum Faustulus necessāriā rē coāctus[3] Rōmulum docuit quis avus esset. Rōmulus statim cum pāstōribus armātīs Albam properāvit.



A Roman Altar.

In the lower part of the sculpture are shown Romulus and Remus with the wolf, while at the right the shepherd Faustulus reclines.

Compare this altar with the one on page 102.

---

[1] *formed a plan that they might drive*, i.e., *planned to drive.*
[2] Ablative of the adjective **praesēns**.
[3] **necessāriā rē coāctus**, *compelled by necessity*.

LESSON LXIV

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

*In lumine tuo videbimus lumen. — In thy light we shall see light.**

436. The so-called possessive pronouns are merely the adjective forms of the personal and reflexive pronouns.

me'us, -a, -um,[1] *my, mine.*
nos'ter, -tra, -trum, *our, ours.*
tu'us, -a, -um, *your, yours* (belonging to one person).
ves'ter, -tra, -trum, *your, yours* (belonging to more than one).
su'us, -a, -um, *his, her, hers, its, their, theirs.*

(*a*) The possessive pronouns are all declined like adjectives of the first and second declensions, and, like adjectives, they agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.

437. VOCABULARY

me'us, -a, -um, *my, mine.*
nos'ter, -tra, -trum, *our, ours.*
tu'us, -a, -um, *your, yours.*
ves'ter, -tra, -trum, *your, yours.*
su'us, -a, -um, *his, her, their.*
praefi'ciō, -ere, -fē'cī, -fec'tus, *place over,* or *in command of.*
praepō'nō, -ere, -po'suī, -itus, *place in command of.*
prae'stō, -ā're, -stitī, -stitus, *excel, surpass.*
prae'sum, -es'se, -fuī, *have command of, be at the head of.*
super'sum, -es'se, -fuī, *be left over, survive.*

438. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

preposition applaud benefactor riparian

(*a*) Define, and use each word in an English sentence.

RULES

439. Gender of Possessives. — The gender of a possessive pronoun depends not upon the gender of the person

* The motto of Columbia University.
[1] Voc. sing. masc. mī.

to whom it refers, but upon the gender of the word it modifies.

Marcus loves his mother. **Mārcus mātrem suam amat.**
Julia loves her mother. **Iūlia mātrem suam amat.**
Julia loves her father. **Iūlia patrem suum amat.**

440. Dative with Compounds. — The dative is used with many verbs compounded with the prepositions **ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super,** and sometimes **circum.**

Brutus was in command of the ships. **Brūtus nāvibus praeerat.**

(*a*) But if the verb which forms part of the compound is transitive, it may take a direct object in the accusative. This may be either in addition to the dative taken by the compound as a whole, or without it.

He placed Brutus in command of the ships. **Brūtum nāvibus praeposuit.**
Brutus sent the ships ahead. **Brūtus nāvēs praemīsit.**

EXERCISES

441. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Caesar exercituī praefuit. 2. Rōmānī omnibus virtūte praestitērunt. 3. Nāvibus longīs Brūtum praefēcit. 4. Laudābiminī, puerī,[1] et ā mātre vestrā et ā magistrō vestrō. 5. Deī comitēs nostrī semper sunt et rēbus hominum praesunt.

(*b*) 1. Imperātor castrīs quae ad rīpam flūminis posita erant Mārcum praeposuit. 2. Dīxērunt peditēs suōs paulum morātōs esse. 3. Nostrī[2] oppidum fortius oppugnāverant quam vestrī. 4. Centum ex equitibus superfuērunt neque sē dēdidērunt. 5. Dīcēbant sē bene fēcisse neque vōs suōs agrōs vāstāre dēbēre.

---

[1] The vocative, the case of address, has the same form as the nominative except in the singular of nouns of the second declension ending in **-us**, where the vocative ends in **-e**.

[2] The possessive is often used substantively; as, **nostrī**, *our men*.

442. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. I am in command of myself. 2. The girl excels her brother in courage. 3. Who made the war-ships? 4. The general responded that he had placed a youth in command of the forces. 5. The mother asked her brave son why he did not use his sword.



A Roman Slinger.

(*b*) 1. We asked why they had not sent aid to us. 2. Our faithful lieutenant had been placed in charge of the heavy baggage. 3. We have informed Caesar that our army will make an attack on the enemy at daybreak. 4. Why did our senator not tell us about the surrender a little while ago? 5. My sister and your brother are friends of the man who has command of the infantry.

ORAL EXERCISE

443. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Quis legiōnī praeerat? 2. Tūne exercituī Brūtum praepōnēs? 3. Quī discipulus aliīs praestitit? 4. Suntne tuī amīcī meliōrēs quam meī? 5. Nōnne nostrī vōbīs virtūte praestant?

LESSON LXV

REVIEW

Aquila non capit muscas.—The eagle does not catch flies.

444. Derivatives.—Write all the English words you can which seem to be derived from the following:

fuga	respondeō	ego	populor
quaerō	praeficiō	praepōnō	dīc

445. Form Drill.—1. How does the reflexive pronoun differ from the personal? 2. How does the interrogative pronoun differ from the relative in declension? 3. Give the Latin for *Who are you? What man is in the city?* 4. Decline **quī, ego, tuus, suī, quis.** 5. When do we use **tuus** and when **vester?**

446. Syntax Drill.—(*a*) 1. With what compound verbs is the dative used? 2. In what does a relative pronoun agree with its antecedent? 3. What determines the gender of a possessive pronoun? 4. How can you recognize an indirect question?

(*b*) Give the Latin for:

1. We saw the man who had been conquered.
2. We heard who had been conquered.
3. We heard that the man had been conquered.
4. The man fights that he may not be conquered.
5. The man fought so bravely that he was not conquered.

The Death of Amulius

Intereā latrōnēs ad Amūlium rēgem pervēnērunt et Remum vehementer incūsāvērunt. Cupiēbant dēmōnstrāre Remum

agrōs Numitōris īnfēstāre solēre.[1] Itaque Remus ā rēge Numitōrī ad supplicium trāditus est.

Ubi vērō Numitor Remī vultum cōnsīderāvit et aetātem cognōvit, paene nepōtem agnōvit. Nam Remus mātrī simillimus erat. Dum Numitor dubitat, subitō Rōmulus adest, frātrem līberat, Amūlium interficit, avum Numitōrem in rēgnum restituit.



THE ARCH OF CONSTANTINE.

This triumphal arch stood close to the Colosseum. The pile at the right is the ruin of the fountain in which the gladiators are said to have bathed after their combats in the arena.

---

[1] *that Remus was accustomed to . . .*

LESSON LXVI

FERŌ AND ITS COMPOUNDS

Qui transtulit sustinet. — *He who has brought us across (the sea) sustains us.**

447. Learn the **conjugation of ferō** in the indicative, subjunctive, and infinitive, active and passive, § 593.

448. VOCABULARY

fe'rō, fer're, tu'lī, lā'tus, *bear, carry.*

cōn'ferō,[1] **cōnfer're, cōn'tulī, collā'tus,** *bring together, collect;* (with **sē**) *betake one's self.*

dif'ferō, differ're, dis'tulī, dīlā'tus, *scatter; differ.*

ef'ferō, effer're, ex'tulī, ēlā'tus, *bring out, carry away.*

īn'ferō, īnfer're, in'tulī, illā'tus, *bring in, upon* or *against.*

bel'lum īnfer're, *to make war (on)*

sig'na īnfer're, *to advance.*

expug'nō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *take by storm.*

Rhē'nus, -ī, m., *the Rhine.*

-que, conj., *and* (always appended to another word which in construction belongs after it).

449. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

transfer conference infer differ

(*a*) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

EXERCISES ON FORMS

450. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Fers, fertur, lātus erit, feram. 2. Distulit, differet, differimus, distulerō. 3. Intulistī, īnferent, intulerat. 4. Collātī erant, feruntur, fert, ferris. 5. Tulērunt, īnfert, tulistī, cōnferam.

* The motto of Connecticut.

[1] Notice the way the accent of the principal parts of compounds of **ferō** swings back and forth like a pendulum.

(*b*) 1. We differ, he will bring in. 2. They had carried out, we collect, you (*sing.*) carry. 3. They will have collected, he is carried. 4. They had differed, you (*plur.*) have carried. 5. We shall scatter, they advanced.



A VIEW OF THE RHINE.

The Rhine separated the Germans from the Gauls. When Caesar invaded Germany he built a famous bridge across the river. A drawing of this bridge as reconstructed from his description is seen on page 233.

EXERCISES

451. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Scīmus Caesarem Germānīs bellum intulisse. 2. Inter sē linguā lēgibusque differunt. 3. Trāns Rhēnum sē cōnferent nē ā cōpiīs Rōmānōrum vincī possint. 4. Decima legiō signa īnfert et urbem expugnat. 5. Sē suaque omnia Caesarī dēdidērunt.

(*b*) 1. Quis castrīs praeest? 2. Rōmānī cum Germānīs bellum gessērunt. 3. Iniūriās rēgis malī ferre nōn possumus

4. Galliae bellum īnferēmus. 5. Nostrī virtūte Gallīs praestitērunt et fortissimī vīsī sunt.

452. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. They collected all their weapons into the towns. 2. Brutus made war on his enemies. 3. The infantry and the cavalry differ from each other. 4. We marched many miles that we might make war on the chiefs. 5. The leader ordered the van to advance and kill the enemy or scatter (them).

(*b*) 1. The auxiliary troops were placed on the left wing. 2. The king said that the captive had been carried away. 3. We asked who he was and why he had come. 4. The Gauls who dwelt across the Rhine surrendered to their conqueror. 5. They could not bring aid to their men.

ORAL EXERCISE

453. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Habēsne magnum timōrem mortis? 2. Nōnne mīlitēs signa īnferent? 3. Centuriōne interfectus erat? 4. Cūr animālia omnēs in partēs ferēbantur? 5. Quibus Rōmānī bellum intulērunt?

THE NAMING OF ROME

Deinde Rōmulus et Remus urbem in locīs ubi expositī ēducātīque erant condidērunt. Sed contentiō orta est uter nōmen novae urbī daret.[1] Auspicia adhibēre cōnstituērunt. Remus prior sex vulturēs, Rōmulus posteā duodecim vīdit.

Sīc Rōmulus victor urbem Rōmam vocāvit. Deinde mūrōs exstruere cōnātus est. Remus mūrōs inrīdēns (*mocking*) saltū trāiēcit. Tum Rōmulus īrātus frātrem interfēcit et sōlus imperiō potītus est.

---

[1] *a dispute (as to) which should give.*

LESSON LXVII

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

Semper eadem.—*Always the same* *

454. The demonstrative pronouns point out an object; they are used either substantively or adjectively. They are:

hic, *this* (near me).
iste, *that* (near you).
ille, *that* (remote from both speaker and one addressed).
is, *that* (often used as the personal pronoun of the third person).
īdem, *the same.*

(*a*) The first three are often called demonstratives of the first, second, and third persons.

455. The intensive pronoun is **ipse**, *self.*

(*a*) Learn the declension of **hic, iste, ille, is, īdem, ipse**, § 582.

456. VOCABULARY

hic, haec, hoc, *this.*
ī′dem, e′adem, i′dem, *same.*
il′le, il′la, il′lud, *that.*
ip′se, ip′sa, ip′sum, *self, himself.*
is, e′a, id, *that, he.*
is′te, is′ta, is′tud, *that.*
Len′tulus, -ī, m., *Lentulus.*
nā′tiō, -ō′nis, f., *nation, tribe.*
tumul′tus, -ūs, m., *disturbance, tumult.*
sīc, adv., *so, in this way.*
a′gō, a′gere, ē′gī, āc′tus, *do, act, drive.*
iu′beō, iubē′re, ius′sī, ius′sus, *order.* It takes an infinitive with subject accusative.

457. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

action identify jussive national

(*a*) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

* The motto of Queen Elizabeth. Quoted also in the masculine and neuter genders.

EXERCISES

458. *Translate, telling which demonstrative pronouns are used substantively and which adjectively:*

(*a*) 1. Huius virī, hae fēminae, huic centuriōnī, illōrum mīlitum, illī puerō, illīs hominibus. 2. Hic est malus, ille est peior. 3. Iste tuus amīcus est sed eōrum inimīcus. 4. Ipsī in eōrum fīnibus bellum gerunt. 5. Caesar amīcum suum vocāvit et eius[1] virtūtem laudāvit.

(*b*) 1. Quis sim, sciēs ex eō amīcō quem ad tē mīsī. 2. Ille dīxit sē habēre litterās ā Lentulō. 3. Eaedem nātiōnēs Rōmānīs[2] amīcae nōn erant. 4. Haec omnia sīc agentur ut rēs pūblica sine tumultū servētur. 5. Eōdem tempore Caesar suās legiōnēs laudārī iussit.



MARCUS AURELIUS.

This statue is on the Capitoline Hill. When the statues of pagan emperors and gods were being destroyed, this was spared as it was thought to be Constantine, the first Christian emperor.

459. *Translate, expressing all the pronouns:*

(*a*) 1. I myself came to your city. 2. These are our friends, those are your enemies. 3. On the same day he will set out with two legions. 4. Those men ordered[3] the

---

[1] When *his*, *her*, *their*, etc., do not refer to the subject, use the genitive of **is**.

Notice that **suus** refers to the subject of the sentence in which it stands. When, however, it is used in a subordinate clause, it may refer to the subject of the principal sentence.

[2] § 290.

[3] Translate in two ways : (1) with **iubeō** and (2) with **imperō**

cavalry to drive the enemy from the city. 5. The nations of the earth are often in a great tumult.

(*b*) 1. He will tell you that we have come. 2. We shall order[1] auxiliary troops to attack the rear of the enemy. 3. Caesar very often made war upon his[2] enemies, and killed their leaders. 4. These things will be done by Lentulus himself as quickly as possible. 5. The brave troops bore their standards to the bank of the Rhine and took the cities of the enemy by storm.

PHRASES FROM CAESAR

460. *Commit to memory, with the translations:*

1. Patrum nostrōrum memoriā. 2. Ā castrīs suīs. 3. Paulō ante mediam noctem. 4. Ex omnibus partibus. 5. Multīs dē causīs.



THE ROMAN FORUM RESTORED.
This is a view looking from the center toward the Palatine Hill.

[1] See footnote 3 on preceding page.
[2] See footnote 1 on preceding page.

LESSON LXVIII

DOUBLE QUESTIONS

*Sic semper tyrannis. — Thus always to tyrants.**

461. **Double questions** are introduced by the following particles: **utrum . . . an; -ne . . . an; (— . . . an).**

Is he good or bad? { **Utrum bonus est an malus?** / **Bonusne est an malus?** / **Bonus est an malus?** }

(*a*) When the second part of the question is negative, **annōn** is used.
Is he good or not? **Estne bonus annōn?**

462. VOCABULARY

an, conjunction, *or;* **annōn,** *or not.*

u'trum, conj.; not translated in direct questions; in indirect questions, *whether.*

equitā'tus, -ūs, m., *cavalry.*

Pompē'ius, Pompē'ī, m., *Pompey;* compare *Pompeii,* the city.

cōnsī'dō, -ere, -sē'dī, ——, *encamp, settle.*

antepō'nō, -ere, -po'suī, -po'situs, *place before, prefer.*

cognō'scō, cognō'scere, cognō'vī, cog'nitus, *become acquainted with, learn;* in perfect tenses, *know.*

coniun'gō, coniun'gere, coniūn'xī, coniūnc'tus, *join together, unite.*

pe'tō, -ere, -ī'vī, (-iī), -ī'tus, *seek, ask.* It takes accusative of the thing and ablative of the person with **ā** or **ab.**

463. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

anteposition conjunction recognize petition

(*a*) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

* The motto of Virginia.

RULE

464. Quality or Description. — The quality or description of a noun is expressed by the genitive or ablative with an adjective.

He was a man of great courage. **Erat vir magnae virtūtis**, or **Erat vir magnā virtūte.**



POMPEY.

In the Civil War which followed Caesar's crossing of the Rubicon, Pompey headed the senatorial party. He was defeated by Caesar in the decisive battle of Pharsalus in 48 B.C.

(*a*) *Definite measurement* must be expressed by the genitive.

The wall was of great height. **Mūrus magnā altitūdine erat.**

It was a wall of six feet in height. **Mūrus sex pedum altitūdine erat.**

EXERCISES

465. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Pompēius magnā virtūte vir erat. 2. Circum moenia fossa quīndecim pedum altitūdine est. 3. Utrum domī erās, annōn? 4. Petīvit utrum domī essēs, annōn. 5. Utrum Pompēius Cicerōnī antepōnētur, annōn?

(*b*) 1. Caesar ex Gallīs hominēs magnārum vīrium petēbat ut in suō exercitū eīs ūterētur. 2. Anteponitur omnibus Pompēius. 3. Mīlitēs omnia tēla quae ab equitātū hostium relīcta erant contulērunt. 4. Nostrae cōpiae Gallōs vīcerant et in eōrum fīnibus cōnsīdēbant. 5. Ducem

cum cohortibus duodecim et magnō numerō equitātūs in hostium fīnēs proficīscī iubet, nē ex hīs nātiōnibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur et tantae nātiōnēs coniungantur.

466. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. The Germans were men of great size. 2. We did not know whether he had been in the house or in the field. 3. Pompey orders the lieutenant and his companions to encamp at the foot of a very high mountain. 4. I saw the girl herself. 5. The two places were joined by a wall of three feet in height.

(*b*) 1. We have lived many years without slaves. 2. Those who had been wounded were carried out, and the legions advanced that they might not be conquered by a leader of such valor. 3. The senator tells us who has been placed in command of the one hundred soldiers, and why they do not surrender. 4. Were the weapons carried away or left in the camp? 5. What shall I say about Cicero and Pompey?

The Seizure of the Women

Rōmulus, ut cīvium numerum augēret, asȳlum patefēcit, ad quod multī ex cīvitātibus suīs ēiectī vēnērunt. Sed novae urbis cīvibus[1] coniugēs deerant. Lūdōs itaque Rōmulus parāvit, in quibus iuvenēs virtūtem suam certāminibus ostenderent (*might display*). Multī ex fīnitimīs populīs cum mulieribus et līberīs convēnērunt ut lūdōs spectārent. Tum Rōmānī inter ipsōs lūdōs virginēs rapuērunt.

---

[1] *to the citizens*, with **deerant**.

Ars est celare artem. — *Art conceals art.**

467. Pronouns which do not refer to definite persons or things are called **indefinite pronouns**. As an indefinite pronoun the simple form **quis** (substantive), **quī** (adjective) is not common, but it has several compounds.

1. The substantive forms are:

M. AND F.		NEUT.
aliquis, *some one*, *something*.		**aliquid**
quisque, *each one*, *every one*.		**quidque**
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
quīdam	**quaedam**	**quiddam**, *a certain one*.

2. The adjective forms are:

aliquī	**aliqua**	**aliquod**, *any*.
quisque	**quaeque**	**quodque**, *each*.
quīdam	**quaedam**	**quoddam**, *a certain*.

(*a*) In indefinite pronouns only the pronominal part is declined. **M** is changed to **n** before **d**; **quendam**, not **quemdam**.

3. **A'liquis**, *some one*.

	SINGULAR		PLURAL		
	M. AND F.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	a'liquis	a'liquid	a'liquī	a'liquae	**a'liqua**
Gen.	alicu'ius	alicu'ius	aliquō'rum	aliquā'rum	**aliquō'rum**
Dat.	ali'cui	ali'cui	ali'quibus	ali'quibus	**ali'quibus**
Acc.	a'liquem	a'liquid	a'liquōs	a'liquās	**a'liqua**
Abl.	a'liquō	a'liquō	ali'quibus	ali'quibus	**ali'quibus**

* **Literally**: *Art is the concealing of art.*

468. VOCABULARY

ar'ma, -ō'rum, n., *arms, implements of war.*
ini'tium, ini'tī, n., *beginning.*
re'ferō, refer're, ret'tulī, relā'tus, *bring back, report.*
rever'tō, -ere, -tī, -sus, / **rever'tor, -ī, rever'sus sum,** *turn back, return.* The perfect stem tenses are from the active, the others from the deponent.
quan'tus, -a, -um, *how great? how much?*
inte'reā, adv., *in the meantime.*
post, prep. (with acc.), *after* (of time), *behind* (of place).
a'liquis, a'liquid (a'liquī, a'liqua, a'liquod, adj.), *some one, something.*
quī'dam, quae'dam, quid'dam (quod'dam, adj.), *a certain one.*
quis'que, quid'que (quis'que, quae'que, quod'que, adj.) *every one, each.*

469. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

initial refer quantity revert

(*a*) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

EXERCISES

470. *Translate, telling to what class each pronoun belongs:*

(*a*) 1. Aliquem ad tē mittent. 2. Quisque multō diē profectus est. 3. Ab hīs quaesīvit quae cīvitātēs quantaeque in armīs essent. 4. Paulum frūmentī quemque domō efferre iubent. 5. Multae nātiōnēs auxilium ā suīs amīcīs petiērunt.

(*b*) 1. Quaedam legiō Rōmam revertētur, et alicui victōriam nūntiābit. 2. Māter aliīs suōs līberōs antepōnet. 3. Extrēma pars huius librī quam initium difficilior est. 4. Eōdem tempore equitātus noster et aliī quī cum eīs fuerant sē in castra recipiēbant. 5. Lēgātī haec[1] sē ad suōs relātūrōs[2] dīxērunt et post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversūrōs; intereā nē castra movēret petiērunt.

---

[1] See § 21. [2] Esse is often omitted in infinitives.

471. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. The king gave arms to some one. 2. Pompey made a good beginning. 3. Our country is much loved by every one. 4. We do not know how great a number can return. 5. After the battle Caesar ordered the soldiers to retreat into camp.



THE PALATINE HILL.

This view is taken from outside the city and shows the substructures on which the palaces of the emperors were built. An idea of their size can be had from the picture on page 206.

(*b*) 1. A certain one will return to report all these things to Caesar. 2. They had encamped across a river of great depth. 3. I prefer her to all my other friends. 4. This man was a sailor; that one, a farmer. 5. The cavalry will drive their horses into the territory of the Belgians, and in the meantime the leader will learn something about the army of the enemy.

LESSON LXX

REVIEW

Mens aequa in arduis.—A mind serene in difficulties.*

472. Derivatives. — Write all the English words you can which seem to be derived from the following:

differō	īnferō	ferō	nātiō
tumultus	agō	coniungō	arma
initium	referō	revertō	quantus
ante	praesum	conferō	petō

473. Form Drill. — 1. Name the classes of pronouns and tell why each is so called. 2. Decline **hic, ille, is, īdem.** 3. Decline the Latin for *another soldier.* 4. What is the intensive pronoun? 5. Write one Latin sentence containing a personal, possessive, relative, demonstrative, and an interrogative pronoun.

474. Syntax Drill. — 1. How is **utrum** used and what does it mean? 2. What case and mood follow **iubeō**? **imperō**? 3. When *must* the genitive be used to express description? 4. What cases follow **petō**?

EXERCISES FOR SIGHT READING

475. 1. Audīvimus quae oppida tūta essent. 2. Multa ā Caesare quaesīvērunt dē profectiōne. 3. Līberī sē paulum laudant. 4. Rōmānī exercituī Caesarem praeficiunt. 5. Dux tuus, Mārce, secundā vigiliā interfectus est. 6. Ubi nostrōs nōn esse īnferiōrēs intellēxit mīlitibus imperāvit ut signa īnferrent. 7. Polliceor hoc vōbīs. 8. Eadem ab eō dicta erant. 9. Scīvērunt equitātum in Germāniam missum esse. 10. Cuique dōnum dabō.

---

* Motto on the statue of Warren Hastings in Calcutta.

The Reign of Romulus

Exitus lūdōrum magnam difficultātem afferēbat. Nam Sabīnī, patrēs et propinquī virginum quae in urbe remanēre coāctae erant, bellum adversus Rōmānōs suscēpērunt. Tum Rōmulus cum hostibus in eō locō ubi nunc Forum Rōmānum est proelium commīsit.



Augustus as Imperator.

In mediā caede eae quae raptae erant prōcessērunt, et patrēs et coniugēs magnopere ōrābant ut fīnem caedis facerent. Utrīque[1] hīs precibus commōtī sunt. Pugnāre dēstitērunt et pācem fēcērunt. Urbs commūnis Rōmānōrum et Sabīnōrum facta est.

Posteā Rōmulus cīvitātem rēxit. Centum senātōrēs lēgit, eōsque ob aetātem dignitātemque patrēs appellāvit. Plēbem in trīgintā cūriās distribuit. Annō rēgnī trīcēsimō septimō inter tempestātem subitō ex oculīs hominum ēreptus est. Aliī eum ā senātōribus interfectum, aliī ad deōs sublātum[2] esse existimāvērunt.

---

[1] *I.e.*, both sides.

[2] See tollō in vocabulary.

LESSON LXXI

PARTICIPLES

Ave, Imperator! Morituri te salutant.*—*Hail Emperor! Those who are about to die, salute thee.*

476. There are **four participles,** the *present* and *future* in the active voice and the *perfect* and *future* (or gerundive) in the passive voice.

Present Active Participle = *Present stem* + **-ns** *or* **-ēns**	**portāns** **monēns** **dūcēns** **audiēns**
Future Active Participle = *Participial stem* + **-ūr** + *endings of* **magnus**	**portātūrus** **monitūrus** **ductūrus** **audītūrus**
Perfect Passive Participle = *Participial stem* + *endings of* **magnus**	**portātus** **monitus** **ductus** **audītus**
Future Passive Participle *or* **Gerundive** = *Present stem* + **nd** *or* **end** + *endings of* **magnus**	**portandus** **monendus** **dūcendus** **audiendus**

Note.—For **iō** verbs see § 340.

477. Declension of Participles.—All participles are declined like **magnus** except the present, which is declined like **potēns,** § 572.

(*a*) A participle is a verbal adjective. Like a verb, it may take an object and be modified by an adverb; like an adjective, it agrees with its

* The call of the Roman gladiators upon entering the arena for the gladiatorial contests.

noun or pronoun in gender, number, and case.[1] It is often best translated by a phrase or clause.

We saw the farmer (as he was) driving his horses swiftly. **Agricolam equōs vēlōciter agentem vīdimus.**

They saw the city (which had been) captured by the enemy. **Urbem ab hostibus captam vīdērunt.**

478. Time of Participles. — Like the infinitive, the time denoted by the participle is relative, depending on the time of the principal verb. The present participle denotes the *same* time as the principal verb; the perfect participle, time *before;* and the future participle, time *after* the principal verb.

(*a*) Learn all the participles, active and passive, of **portō, moneō, dūcō, audiō, capiō**, §§ 586–590, and the active participles of **sum** and **possum**, § 591.

479. VOCABULARY

fi'dēs, -eī, f., *faith, pledge, confidence.*

lī'tus, -oris, n., *shore* (of the sea).

senā'tus, -ūs, m., *senate.*

addū'cō, -ere, -dū'xī, -duc'tus, *lead to, influence.*

re'gō, -ere, rē'xī, rēc'tus, *rule, manage.*

sapien'ter, adv., *wisely.*

(*a*) Form all the infinitives and participles of **referō, regō.**

480. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

fidelity sapient littoral reference

(*a*) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

EXERCISES

481. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Ad Caesarem auxilium petentēs vēnērunt. 2. Virōs victōs laudābimus. 3. Stāns in lītore armīs ūtar. 4. Rēx

[1] Compare § 645.

nātiōnem bene regere cōnātus laudātus est. 5. Centuriōnēs ferentēs suum ducem interfectum veniunt.

(b) 1. Audīvimus tē mortem nōn verērī. 2. Caesar suōs[1] impetum fortiter sustinentēs vīdit. 3. Hāc ōrātiōne adductī, inter sē fidem et iūs iūrandum dant. 4. Aliquem in senātū sapienter dīcentem audīvī. 5. Intereā ā plūribus cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt quibus pācem petentibus respondet prīncipemque ad sē mittī iubet.

482. *Translate:*

(a) 1. Kings are not always loved when ruling wisely and well. 2. Having been influenced by the senate, the Roman people praised their generals. 3. Caesar gave a pledge to the Gauls when they were seeking peace. 4. Pompey, after being placed in command of the army, conquered many nations. 5. The general, seeing the soldiers of the tenth legion fighting long and fiercely, knew that the enemy would surrender.

(b) 1. In the beginning of the war Caesar saw the forces of the Belgians setting out against him. 2. We shall remain at the seashore all summer. 3. This man lived in a city of great size; that one, on the seashore. 4. The centurions differ from each other in many respects. 5. The tired horseman returns to the camp after the battle and seeks aid from his companions.

PHRASES FROM CAESAR

483. *Commit to memory, with the translations:*

1. Hāc ōrātiōne adductī. 2. Senātus populusque Rōmānus. 3. Ōrātiōnem habēre (*to make a speech*). 4. Plūs posse. 5. Plūrimum posse.

---

[1] See page 181, footnote 2.

Numa and Tullus

Post Rōmulī mortem ūnīus annī interrēgnum fuit. Deinde Numa Pompilius in oppidō Sabīnōrum nātus (*born*) rēx creātus est. Hic vir bellum nūllum gessit, sed cum omnibus fīnitimīs ratiōnem pācis habuit. Sub eius imperiō populus in summā



The Alban Lake.

Across the lake on the ridge in the distance lay Alba Longa, the oldest Latin city, said to have been founded by Ascanius, the son of Aeneas.

fēlīcitāte permanēbat. Morbō dēcessit quadrāgēsimō tertiō imperī annō.

Numae successit Tullus Hostīlius, cuius avus in bellō adversus Sabīnōs virtūte multōs antecesserat. Is bellum cum Albānīs gessit, urbemque Albam dēlēvit. Trīgintā duōs annōs rēgnāvit.

LESSON LXXII

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

Consule Planco. — When Plancus was consul.[*]

484. The ablative absolute consists of two words in the ablative case grammatically independent of the rest of the sentence. It may consist of

(1) a substantive and a participle, **signō datō.**

(2) a substantive and an adjective, **perīculō magnō.**

(3) two substantives, **Caesare imperātōre.**

(*a*) The Ablative Absolute is usually best translated as a clause and generally denotes time, cause, condition, or concession. The substantive in the Ablative Absolute never denotes the same person or thing as the subject or object of the main verb.

The participle and the adjective must agree with the substantive in gender, number, and case.

1. **Signō datō, oppidum oppugnāvērunt.** *The signal having been given* (literally), *when the signal had been given, they attacked the town.*

2. **Perīculō magnō, Caesar signum dedit.** *The danger* (*being*) *great* (literally), *since the danger was great, Caesar gave the signal.*

3. **Caesare imperātōre, ad victōriam exercitus dūcētur.** *Caesar* (*being*) *general* (literally), *if Caesar is general, the army will be led to victory.*

4. **Multīs interfectīs, oppidum expugnāvimus.** *Many having been killed* (literally), *although many had been killed, we took the town by storm.*

Note. — The verb **sum** has no present participle, consequently the connecting word *being* cannot be expressed in the Latin of 2 and 3, but must be supplied in the translation.

485. Perfect Participles. — There is no perfect active participle in Latin. We cannot put literally into Latin:

* Horace. An expression used by the Romans for "in the good old days."

The leader, having given the signal, fought bravely. There is no Latin word meaning *having given*, but the same idea may be expressed by changing the participle to the passive and making it agree with *signal* in the ablative instead of *leader.*

The signal having been given, the leader fought bravely. **Signō datō, dux fortiter pugnāvit.**

(*a*) Such an ablative absolute may be rendered as an independent coördinate clause: *The leader gave the signal and fought bravely.*

(*b*) A deponent verb has a perfect participle with an active meaning, so no change is necessary in the case of a deponent verb. *Having encouraged the Remi, Caesar ordered the entire senate to come to him.* **Caesar, Rēmōs cohortātus, omnem senātum ad sē convenīre iussit.**

486. VOCABULARY

aedifi'cium, aedifi'cī, n., *building.*
Gal'ba, -ae, m., *Galba.*
immortā'lis, -e, *immortal.*
invic'tus, -a, -um, *invincible, unconquered.*
acci'piō, -ere, -cē'pī, -cep'tus, *receive, accept.*
conten'dō, -ere, -dī, -ten'tus, *hasten, contend.*
incen'dō, -ere, -cen'dī, -cēn'sus, *set on fire, burn* (with acc.).
praemit'tō, -ere, -mī'sī, -mis'sus, *send ahead.*
trā'dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *hand over, give up, surrender.*

487. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

edifice invincible incendiary tradition

(*a*) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

EXERCISES

488. *Translate; render ablatives absolute literally and as clauses, and decide which makes the better English:*

(*a*) 1. Spē āmissā, fūgērunt. 2. Pāce factā, cūr diūtius pugnātis? 3. Omnibus vīcīs aedificiīsque incēnsīs, ad castra Caesaris cum omnibus cōpiīs contendērunt. 4. Intereā mīlitēs

legiōnum duārum, proeliō nūntiātō, in summō colle ab hostibus vidēbantur. 5. Hīs rēbus gestīs, ab iīs nātiōnibus missī sunt lēgātī ad Caesarem quī[1] sē trāditūrōs esse pollicērentur.

(*b*) 1. Hostēs ōrdinem agminis Caesaris nōn cognōvērunt. 2. Omnem equitātum quī[1] novissimum agmen morārētur praemīsit. 3. Rōmānī putāvērunt deōs immortālēs plūrimum[2] posse. 4. Cicerō dīxit deōs immortālēs huic invictō populō auxilium esse lātūrōs. 5. Caesar, armīs omnibus ex oppidō trāditīs, in dēditiōnem hostēs accēpit.

489. ***Translate, expressing the subordinate clauses by the use of the ablative absolute when possible:***

(*a*) 1. While Caesar is leader, our forces are invincible. 2. Since many soldiers had been killed, Pompey received recruits into his army. 3. When the cavalry had been sent ahead, the infantry followed without fear. 4. Having burned all the buildings on the shore, they destroyed the ships of the enemy. 5. When these things have been done, they fortify the towns and carry the grain[3] out of the fields into the towns.

(*b*) 1. It is easier to promise than to do. 2. The senate was very powerful among the Romans. 3. When the letters had been received, Caesar enlisted two legions in hither Gaul. 4. We surrendered the camp and hastened home as quickly as possible. 5. The senate makes as good laws as possible that the people may prefer the senate to a king.

The Fourth and Fifth Kings

Post hunc[4] Ancus Mārcius, Numae nepōs, suscēpit imperium. Hic vir aequitāte et religiōne avō similis et in bellō et in pāce multās rēs prōsperē perfēcit. Vīcēsimō quārtō annō imperī morbō dēcessit.

---

[1] quī = ut eī.

[2] Adverbial Accusative of Degree.

[3] See page 26, footnote 2.

[4] Tullus. See page 202.

Deinde rēgnum Lūcius Tarquinius Prīscus accēpit. Eum Ancus Mārcius tūtōrem fīliōrum relīquerat; sed is ab illīs rēgnum intercēpit. Senātōribus quōs Rōmulus creāverat cen-



THE PALACE OF TITUS.

This is the name given to these enormous foundations on the Palatine Hill. Compare this view with the picture on page 196.

tum aliōs addidit. Plūra bella fēlīciter gessit, plūra opera pācis cōnfēcit. Trīcēsimō octāvō imperī annō per Ancī fīliōs quōs ab rēgnō exclūserat interfectus est.

LESSON LXXIII

SUBJUNCTIVE WITH *CUM*

*Abeunt studia in mores.—Pursuits pass over into habits.**

490. Clauses introduced by *cum* may denote *circumstance*, *time*, *cause*, or *concession*.

491. *Cum* Circumstantial.—**Cum**, meaning *when*, takes the subjunctive to denote the circumstances under which an action took place. This use is commonly found only in the imperfect and pluperfect tenses.

When this had been announced to Caesar, he set out from the city. **Caesar, cum hoc eī nūntiātum esset, ab urbe profectus est.**

(*a*) When the **cum** clause merely fixes the time of the action or state described by the principal sentence, the verb is put in the indicative. This is sometimes called **cum** *temporal*.

When Caesar came into Gaul, the Aedui were the leaders. **Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, prīncipēs erant Aeduī.**

492. *Cum* Causal.—**Cum**, meaning *since* (*because*), regularly takes the subjunctive.

Since we are fighting bravely, we shall not be conquered. **Cum fortiter pugnēmus, nōn vincēmur.**

Since they were retreating, we attacked the town. **Cum sē reciperent, oppidum oppugnāvimus.**

493. *Cum* Concessive.—**Cum**, meaning *although*, takes the subjunctive.

Although we had set fire to the town, they did not surrender. **Cum oppidum incendissēmus, nōn sē dēdidērunt.**

Although Caesar thought that the Roman legions were invincible, he did not hasten into Gaul. **Caesar, cum legiōnēs Rōmānās esse invictās exīstimāret, in Galliam nōn contendit.**

(*a*) The tense usage in all these subjunctive clauses is the same as that described in § 376.

---

* Ovid.



THE MARINE GATE AT POMPEII.
This is the ancient gate leading toward the Bay of Naples.

494. **VOCABULARY**

cau'sa, -ae, f., *cause, reason.*
cau'sā (governs the genitive, which it always follows), *for the sake of.*
mō'tus, -ūs, m., *movement, revolt.*
potes'tās, potestā'tis, f., *power, opportunity.*
rū'mor, -ō'ris, m., *rumor, report.*
re'liquus, -a, -um, *remaining, the rest of.*
af'ferō, -fer're, at'tulī, allā'tus, *bring.*
cum, conj., *when, since, although.*
trādū'cō, -dū'cere, -dū'xī, -duc'tus, *lead across.*
commit'tō, -ere, -mī'sī, -mis'sus, *join;* **proe'lium commit'tere,** *join battle, begin an engagement.*
repe'riō, -ī're, rep'perī, reper'tus, *find, discover.*
ta'men, adv., *nevertheless, still, however.*
cum prī'mum, *as soon as.*

495. ***What Latin words do the following suggest?***

commotion commit rumor traduce

(*a*) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

EXERCISES

496. *Translate, giving the reason for the mood and tense of each verb:*

(*a*) 1. Cum esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā, crēbrī ad eum rūmōrēs afferēbantur. 2. Cum tēla sua āmīsisset, pugnāre nōn potuit. 3. Cum spēs victōriae magna sit, tamen centuriōnēs signa nōn īnferunt. 4. Caesar, ubi proelium commīsit, nostrōs nōn esse īnferiōrēs intellēxit. 5. Līberōrum nostrōrum causā in potestāte hostium diūtius manēre nōn possumus.

(*b*) 1. Cum ab hīs quaereret quae cīvitātēs in armīs essent, causam bellī repperit. 2. Dare[1] melius est quam accipere. 3. Hōc factō, duābus legiōnibus relictīs, reliquās sex legiōnēs ex castrīs ēdūxit. 4. Partem suārum cōpiārum flūmen magnā lātitūdine trādūcere[2] cōnātī sunt ut castra expugnārent. 5. Multa dē stellīs atque eārum mōtū, dē terrae magnitūdine, dē deōrum immortālium vīribus et potestāte scīmus.

497. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Although they have very many wounds, they fight for the sake of power. 2. When the Gauls had made many revolts, Caesar conquered them and sent them under the yoke. 3. Although we have found out many things about the stars, there is much which we do not know. 4. When the legions had been left in the camp, the general led the remaining soldiers across the territory of the enemy. 5. Although rumors of the danger had been brought to us, yet we did not give up hope.

(*b*) 1. When the people had been informed concerning the death of Cicero, many declared that he had been an excellent consul and had saved his country. 2. She excels her brother

---

[1] An infinitive or clause used substantively is neuter singular, and a modifying adjective accordingly is put in the neuter.

[2] Trādūcō governs two accusatives.

in diligence. 3. The forces of the Gauls will encamp between the river and the hill. 4. Although they were men of great power and courage, nevertheless they were not invincible. 5. In a very short time we found out who had been bringing evil reports about us.



A CHARIOTEER.

He is shown carrying the palm of victory. For a chariot race, see the picture facing page 122.

SERVIUS TULLIUS

Post hunc[1] Servius Tullius suscēpit imperium, ex nōbilī fēminā nātus, captīvā tamen et servā. Dum in domō Tarquinī Prīscī ēducātur, flamma in eius capite vīsa est. Hōc prōdigiō Tanaquil, Prīscī uxor, summam dignitātem eī portendī[2] intellēxit. Posteā rēx Serviō Tulliō fīliam suam in mātrimōnium dedit.

Servius Tullius bene imperium administrāvit. Prīmus omnium cēnsum habuit. Numerus cīvium Rōmānōrum fuit capitum octōgintā tria mīlia. Hic rēx interfectus est scelere fīliae Tulliae et Tarquinī Superbī, fīlī eius rēgis cui Servius successerat. Nam ab ipsō Tarquiniō dē gradibus cūriae dēiectus (*having been thrown down*), dum fugit, in itinere interfectus est.

[1] Tarquinius. See page 206. [2] Present passive infinitive.

Fīliae singulāre scelus nārrātur. Uxor Tarquinī erat. In Forum properāvit, ut prīma coniugem rēgem (*as king*) salūtāret. Domum rediēns (*returning*) aurīgam super patris corpus, quod in viā iacēbat,[1] carpentum agere iussit. Servius Tullius rēgnāvit annōs quattuor et quadrāgintā.



THE PARTHENON AT ATHENS.

This is the most famous Greek temple in the world, a marvel of grace and beauty, both in design and in execution. Compare it with the better preserved building on page 241.

Before Rome conquered Greece there was practically no Latin literature. After the conquest, Greece may be said to have educated and civilized Rcme. Prominent Romans visited Athens and other cities of Greece for recreation and study, and many Greeks sought their fortunes in Rome. This interchange had much to do with the finer things in Roman art, literature, and philosophy, most of which were inspired by Greece.

---

[1] Not from iaciō.

LESSON LXXIV

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

*Sī monumentum requīris, circumspice.—If you seek a monument, look about you.**

498. A Conditional Sentence consists of two parts: (*a*) the *conditional clause* and (*b*) the *conclusion*. For example, in the sentence, *If you say this, you are wrong*, the clause introduced by *if* is the conditional clause, while *you are wrong* is the conclusion.

There are different kinds of conditional sentences. Latin conditions closely resemble English ones. They are usually introduced by **sī**, *if*.

499. Conditional Sentences of Fact. — Sometimes the conditional clause assumes something to be true, and the conclusion contains a statement of fact. In this case the indicative is used both in the conditional clause and in the conclusion.

If Caesar fights, he conquers. **Caesar,[1] sī pugnat, vincit.**

If the boy was good, he was praised. **Puer, sī bonus erat, laudābātur.**

500. Conditional Sentences of Doubt. — In this class the conclusion states that something *would* take place if a certain condition *should* be fulfilled. This is the statement not of a *fact*, as in the first class, but of an *idea* de-

* Motto on the tomb of Sir Christopher Wren in St. Paul's Cathedral, London, of which Wren was the architect. From this was adapted the motto of Michigan: **Sī quaeris paeninsulam amoenam, circumspice.** *If you seek a delightful peninsula, look about you.*

[1] In Latin a word serving as common subject or object of the main clause and a subordinate clause usually stands before both.

pending upon something about which there is a doubt. Both verbs are put in the subjunctive.

If Caesar should fight, he would conquer. **Caesar, sī pugnet, vincat.**

If the boy should be good, he would be praised. **Puer, sī bonus sit, laudētur.**

501. Conditional Sentences Contrary to Fact. — Both conclusions and conditions that are *contrary to fact* are expressed by the subjunctive. The use of the tenses should be carefully noted. If the thing is contrary to fact *at the present time*, the imperfect is used; if it is contrary to fact *in the past*, the pluperfect is used.

If Caesar were fighting, he would conquer. **Caesar, sī pugnāret, vinceret.**

This implies that Caesar is *not* fighting and so does *not* conquer. It is a condition in present time contrary to fact.

If Caesar had fought, he would have conquered. **Caesar, sī pugnāvisset, vīcisset.**

This implies the same as the last sentence except that the time is past instead of present.

502. VOCABULARY

Ae'duus, -ī, m., *an Aeduan.*
Catilī'na, -ae, m., *Catiline.*
dēfēn'sor, -ō'ris, m., *defender.*
ho'nor, -ō'ris, m., *honor, esteem.*
tur'ris, -is (-ium), f., *tower.*
ver'bum, -ī, n., *word;* plural, *speech.*
dēfen'dō, -ere, -fen'dī, -fēn'sus *defend, guard.*
nū'dō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *strip, leave unprotected.*
sī, conj., *if.*
ni'si, conj., *if not, unless.*
e'tiam, adv., *also, even.*

503. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

honor defend nude turret

(*a*) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

504. TABLE OF CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

CLASS	TIME	MOOD	TENSE	ILLUSTRATION
Fact	Present	Indicative	Present	1. *If Caesar fights, he conquers.* **Caesar, sī pugnat, vincit.**
	Past		Imperfect or Perfect	2. *If Caesar was fighting, he was conquering.* **Caesar, sī pugnābat, vincēbat.** *If Caesar fought, he conquered.* **Caesar, sī pugnāvit, vīcit.**
	Future		Future	3. *If Caesar fights, he will conquer.* **Caesar, sī pugnābit, vincet.**
Doubt	Future	Subjunctive	Present	*If Caesar should fight, he would conquer.* **Caesar, sī pugnet, vincat.**
Contrary to Fact	Present	Subjunctive	Imperfect	1. *If Caesar were fighting, he would conquer.* **Caesar, sī pugnāret, vinceret.**
	Past		Pluperfect	2. *If Caesar had fought, he would have conquered.* **Caesar, sī pugnāvisset, vīcisset.**

EXERCISES

505. *Translate, first giving the mood, tense, and consequent time and class of each conditional sentence:*

(*a*) 1. Sī bonī essēmus, laudārēmur. 2. Sī perīculum cēlēs, nōn timeāmus. 3. Rēx, sī bene rēxisset, nōn interfectus esset. 4. Sī pater tuus Rōmānus est, tū Rōmānus es. 5. Sī perīculum cognōscās, nōbīs nārrēs.

(*b*) 1. Urbēs,[1] sī bene dēfenderentur, capī nōn possent. 2. Urbs, sī nūdātur, dēfendī nōn potest. 3. Sī tēlīs ūtī potuissent, nōn victī essent. 4. Puerī, sī bonōs comitēs habērent, nōn pugnārent. 5. Sī oppidum mūniātur, id capere nōn possīmus.

506. *Translate, first noticing what time and thought are expressed and what mood and tense are required:*

(*a*) 1. If I were you, I should be better. 2. If you can run, I can follow you. 3. If you had delayed longer, you



CICERO DENOUNCING CATILINE.

Here is shown the Roman Senate during the scathing denunciation preserved to us in Cicero's first oration against Catiline. This is usually read in the third year of high school Latin.

would have been blamed. 4. If we should make an end of the battle, many would survive. 5. If the attack had been made as quickly as possible, the forces would have fled.

(*b*) 1. If the king should return home, his friends would receive him gladly. 2. If the Aeduans were brave, the town would be taken by storm. 3. If Catiline had brought war

[1] See footnote 1 to page 212.

on us, we should have sent him from the state. 4. If you have been good, you have been praised. 5. If the rest had fled, we should have discovered their flight.

SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES

507. *Translate, first giving mood, etc., as in* § *505:*

(*a*) 1. Sī urbs ā nōbīs dēfendātur, hostēs eam nōn capere possint. 2. Sī illīs verbīs ūsus esset, culpātus esset. 3. Oppidum, sī dēfēnsōribus nūdābātur, impetum diū sustinēre nōn poterat. 4. Mīles, sī gravissimum vulnus accipiat, ex proeliō ā suīs comitibus ferātur. 5. Caesar honōris Aeduōrum causā sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum esse dīxit.

(*b*) 1. Sī turris ad mūrum movērētur, in dēfēnsōrēs lapidēs iacerēmus. 2. Bona causa est cūr tē tam saepe dēfendam. 3. Dux cum repperit ubi hostēs essent, celeriter proelium commīsit. 4. Sī Catilīna in urbe ad hunc diem mānsisset, tantīs perīculīs rem pūblicam nōn līberāvissēmus. 5. Senātus haec intellegit, consul videt; hic tamen vīvit. Vīvit? Etiam in senātum venit.

508. *Translate, first noticing the time, etc., as in* § *506:*

(*a*) 1. If a revolt had been made, the captives would have been killed. 2. If your city should be stripped of defenders, what would you do? 3. If the king rules well, the citizens do that which he commands. 4. If the enemy's scouts should set fire to our camp, we should try to defend it. 5. If the guards had defended the place more diligently, the fortifications could not have been taken by storm.

(*b*) 1. Unless the city had been deprived of defenders, the army of the Aeduans would not have been conquered. 2. The remaining Gauls will be invincible. 3. When we have surrendered, we shall not attack the enemy. 4. When we had found out that the tower could be moved, we hastened to move it as quickly as possible. 5. If Cicero were living, he would be held in esteem by the men of our state.

LESSON LXXV

REVIEW

*Divide et impera.—Divide and govern.**

509. Derivatives.—Write all the English words you can which seem to be derived from the following:

fidēs	nūdō	regō	contineō
aedificium	immortālis	accipiō	contendō
incendō	trādō	mōtus	rūmor
reliquus	trādūcō	committō	causa
dēfendō	honor	turris	verbum



VIEW INSIDE THE PORTA SAN SEBASTIANO.
This shows the side opposite to that pictured on page 32.

510. Form Drill.—1. How is each participle formed and declined? 2. Of what three combinations may an

* Motto of Louis XI of France.

Ablative Absolute consist? 3. Give four possible translations of **rūmōre audītō**. 4. Translate, first by a clause and then by an Ablative Absolute: (a) *When Caesar had brought the grain, they discovered a new danger.* (b) *Since his soldiers were not brave, the leader surrendered.*

511. Syntax Drill. — 1. Why is an Ablative Absolute necessary? 2. What three kinds of clauses may be introduced by **cum**? 3. Give the law of Sequence of Tenses. 4. In Conditional Sentences what mood and tense are used to express (*a*) a fact in present, past, future time? (*b*) a statement contrary to fact in present, past time? (*c*) a doubt in future time?

EXERCISES FOR SIGHT READING

512. 1. Trēs arborēs in ōrdine stantēs manent. 2. Rēgnum in cīvitāte nostrā ā frātre tuō tenēbātur. 3. Posterō diē nostra aciēs in equitātum hostium signa intulit. 4. Armīs trāditīs, sē dēfendere nōn possunt. 5. Decem legiōnibus cōnscrīptīs, in Galliam contendēs. 6. Cum fīnem proelī nox fēcisset, nūntius ad lēgātum missus est. 7. Reperiēmus magnitūdinem silvae. 8. Cum fortiter impetum nostrōrum mīlitum sustinērent, ā suō duce vidēbantur. 9. Līberōrum nostrōrum causā servī diūtius nōn erimus. 10. Multae cīvitātēs Gallōrum, quae ā Rōmānīs sub iugum missae erant, bellum intulērunt.

LESSON LXXVI

EŌ. DATIVE WITH INTRANSITIVE VERBS

Furor fit laesa saepius patientia. — *Beware the fury of a patient man.**

513. Learn the **conjugation of eō** in full, § 594.

514. VOCABULARY

a'deō, -ī're, -iī (-ī'vī), -itus, *go to, approach, visit* (followed by the accusative).

crē'dō, -ere, crē'didī, crē'ditus, *trust, believe.*

e'ō, ī're, i'ī (ī'vī), itū'rus, *go.*

ex'eō, -ī're, -iī (-ī'vī), -itū'rus, *go out, withdraw.*

lo'quor, lo'quī, locū'tus sum, *speak, say.*

pā'reō, -ē're, pā'ruī, —, *obey.*

pla'ceō, -ē're, -uī, -itus, *please.*

resis'tō, -ere, res'titī, —, *resist, oppose.*

ser'viō, -ī're, -ī'vī, -ī'tus, *to be slave to, serve.*

515. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

credit loquacious resist placid

(*a*) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

RULE

516. Dative with Intransitive Verbs. — Many verbs meaning to *benefit* or *injure*, *please* or *displease*, *command*[1] or *obey*, *serve* or *resist*, *believe* or *distrust*, *persuade*, *pardon*, *envy*, *threaten*, *be angry*, and the like, take the dative.

I believe you. **Tibi crēdō.**

He persuaded the soldiers. **Mīlitibus persuāsit.**

---

* Publilius Syrus. Literally: *Patience too often abused becomes madness.* The English is from Dryden's *Absalom and Achitophel.*

[1] **Iubeō** takes the accusative as subject of a following infinitive.

EXERCISES

517. *Translate, giving the construction of each noun or pronoun:*

(*a*) 1. Ībimus Rōmā. 2. Nōbīs imperāvit ut rēgī servīrēmus. 3. Dīxērunt facile esse, cum virtūte omnibus praestārent, tōtīus Galliae imperiō potīrī.[1] 4. Mīlitibus imperat ut in proelium eant. 5. Omnibus vīcīs aedificiīsque, quae adīre potuerant, incēnsīs, castra posuērunt et in fīnibus hostium hiemāvērunt.

(*b*) 1. Rūmōribus audītīs, imperiō rēgis restitimus. 2. Legiō, cum in proelium fortiter īsset, hostibus nōn diūtissimē restitit. 3. Maiōrī tamen partī placuit castra dēfendere. 4. Sī mihi imperāvisset nē quid[2] loquerer, eī pāruissem. 5. Cīvibus persuāsit ut dē fīnibus suīs cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent.

518. *Translate, paying particular attention to the verbs in subordinate clauses:*

(*a*) 1. If they had trusted me, they would not have gone. 2. The defenders received many wounds while defending their native land. 3. If the towers were higher, we could resist the enemy better. 4. Although they believe us, they will not obey us. 5. If you should go at daybreak, it would please me.

(*b*) 1. Servants obey their masters as well as possible. 2. We know that you have approached the bank of the river. 3. The general, having been warned of the danger, led his forces into camp. 4. When he has seized the royal power, he will send some men from the city, and others he will kill. 5. The left wing of the army approached the enemy's line of battle as bravely as possible.

---

[1] Infinitive used as a substantive, subject of **esse**.

[2] *Anything*, when used with **nē**.

Tarquin the Proud

Tarquinius Superbus cognōmen mōribus meruit. Bellō tamen fortis plūrēs fīnitimōrum populōrum vīcit. Templum Iovis[1] in Capitōliō aedificāvit. Posteā, dum urbem Ardeam oppugnat, propter scelus fīlī imperium āmīsit. Nam fīlius Lucrētiae,[2] nōbilissimae fēminae, coniugī Tarquinī Collātīnī, vim fēcit. Tum haec sē ipsa occīdit.



The Baths of Caracalla.

Bathing was a favorite recreation among the Romans, and their many Baths were most elaborate. The two most important remaining are those of Diocletian in the city, and those of Caracalla outside the walls.

Hanc ob causam Lūcius Brūtus, Collātīnus, aliīque nōnnūllī in exitium rēgis coniūrāvērunt et portās urbis clausērunt. Exercitus quoque rēgem relīquit. Fūgit itaque rēx cum uxōre et līberīs. Ita Rōmae rēgnātum est[3] per septem rēgēs annōs ducentōs quadrāgintā trēs.

---

[1] See **Iuppiter** in vocabulary. [2] Dative, with **vim fēcit**.
[3] I.e., *royal power continued.*

LESSON LXXVII

VOLO, NŌLŌ, MĀLŌ. DATIVE OF PURPOSE

Fere libenter homines id quod volunt credunt. — ***Men gladly believe what they wish to.****

519. Syntax of volō, nōlō, mālō. — The infinitive with subject accusative is used with **volō, nōlō, mālō** when its subject is not the same as that of the governing verb. When the subject of both verbs is the same, the complementary infinitive is used.[1]

I wish you to go. **Volō tē īre.**
I wish to go. **Volō īre.**

(*a*) Learn the conjugation of **volō, nōlō, mālō**, § 592.

520. VOCABULARY

difficul'tās, -tā'tis, f., *difficulty.*
hi'ems, hi'emis, f., *winter, stormy weather.*
re'giō, -ō'nis, f., *region, boundary, district.*
subsi'dium, subsi'dī, n., *aid, support.*
mā'lō, māl'le, mā'luī, *prefer.*
nō'lō, nōl'le, nō'luī, *be unwilling.*
occī'dō, -ere, -cī'dī, -cī'sus, *kill, slay.*
pel'lō, -ere, pe'pulī, pul'sus, *drive out, put to flight, defeat.*
vo'lō, vel'le, vo'luī, *be willing, wish.*

521. ***What Latin words do the following suggest?***

voluntary expel region benevolent subsidiary

(*a*) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

RULE

522. Dative of Purpose. — A dative expressing purpose is often used in connection with another dative called dative of reference.

---

* Caesar.

[1] Compare § 637 and (*a*)

The legion served as aid to Caesar. **Legiō auxiliō Caesarī fuit.**
He sent men as aid to the army. **Virōs subsidiō exercituī mīsit.**

(*a*) Here **auxiliō** and **subsidiō** are datives of purpose; **Caesarī** and **exercituī** are datives of reference.

EXERCISES

523. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Vult hostēs pellere. 2. Deō volente, Rōmae tē vidēbimus. 3. Hīs difficultātibus duae rēs erant subsidiō. 4. Volō tē tuō patrī placēre. 5. Māluerāmus cōpiās vestrās auxiliō nōbīs et nostrō exercituī venīre.

(*b*) 1. Decima legiō Caesarī subsidiō erat. 2. Caesar nōluit legiōnēs auxiliō Aeduīs mittere. 3. Hīs facile pulsīs, incrēdibilī celeritāte ad flūmen cucurrērunt. 4. Caesar memoriā tenēbat cōnsulem occīsum exercitumque eius ab Helvētiīs pulsum et sub iugum missum. 5. Captīvīs cūstōdēs praepōnit, ut, quae agant, quibuscum loquantur, scīre possit.



AGRIPPINA, MOTHER OF NERO.

She was born at Cologne, which was named for her, the *Colony* of Agrippina.

524. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. We were willing to fight longer for our country. 2. Caesar had been unwilling to send the tenth legion as aid for Galba. 3. If I had preferred to remain at home, I should not have gone with you. 4. He thought it would not be difficult to slay the enemy. 5. We shall always resist the Germans.

(*b*) 1. Caesar could not engage in battle on account of the stormy weather. 2. If I believed your words, I should not delay my departure. 3. When we wished you to approach the regions of the Germans, we could see no difficulty. 4. We wish to defend these regions with towers of great height. 5. Caesar remained in camp ten days that the rest of the cavalry might come to his aid (as aid to him)



A VESTAL VIRGIN.

VIRGINĒS VESTĀLĒS

Vesta dea erat Rōmānōrum quae ignī focōque praeerat. Rōmae fuit Vestae templum quō in templō sex virginēs Vestālēs sacrum ignem continenter cūstōdiēbant.

Sex annōs nātae virginēs hōc ministeriō fungī incēpērunt, ā Pontifice Maximō dēlēctae. Trīgintā annōs officiīs in templō fūnctae sunt, tum aut templum relinquere aut manēre ibi eīs licuit. Virginēs Vestālēs maximō in honōre ā populō Rōmānō habēbantur.

Vestālēs sacrum ignem cūstōdīvērunt et cum esset perīculum, eum ad locum tūtum portāvērunt. Nōnnumquam Rōmā ignem extulērunt, nē in hostium manūs venīret.

Rōmānī putāvērunt Vestam in Italiā prīmō esse ab Aenēā cultam, et eum prīmum virginēs Vestālēs dēlēgisse.

LESSON LXXVIII

SEMI-DEPONENTS. DATIVE OF POSSESSOR

Gaudeamus igitur iuvenes dum sumus.—Let us rejoice, then, while we are young.

525. Semi-deponents are verbs which have the *present system* in the active voice and the *perfect system* in the passive voice, but both with the active meaning.

au'deō, -ē're, au'sus sum, *dare.*
gau'deō, -ē're, gāvī'sus sum, *rejoice.*
so'leō, -ē're, so'litus sum, *be wont.*
fī'dō, fī'dere, fī'sus sum, *trust.*

526. VOCABULARY

au'deō, -ē're, au'sus sum, *dare.*
clas'sis, -is (-ium), f., *a fleet.*
cō'gō, -ere, coē'gī, coāc'tus, *collect; compel.*
conve'niō, -ī're, -vē'nī, -ven'tus, *assemble.*
conven'tus, -ūs, m., *assembly, meeting.*
ēdo'ceō, -ē're, ēdo'cuī, ēdoc'tus, *show, inform, instruct.*
fī'ō, fi'erī, fac'tus sum, *become, be made, happen.* Learn the conjugation, § 595.
trāns'eō, -ī're, -ī'vī (-iī), -itus, *go across.*
īn'struō, -ere, -strū'xī, -strūc'tus, *draw up, construct.*
prōgre'dior, -ī, -gres'sus sum, *advance.*
Ve'netī, -ō'rum, m., *Veneti.*

527. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

audacious transitive instruct progress

(a) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

RULE

528. Dative of Possessor. — The dative is used with **sum** to denote the possessor, the thing possessed being the subject.

The boy has a book. **Puerō liber est.**

Cicero's name was Marcus Tullius. **Cicerōnī nōmen erat Mārcus Tullius.**

EXERCISES

529. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Virō erat pulcherrima domus. 2. Nōnne hieme in mare īre ausus es? 3. Impetus in eōs fit et eīs timor est. 4. Fortis vir praeerat eīs cīvitātibus ex quibus exercitum coēgerat. 5. Brūtum adulēscentem classī nāvibusque, quās convenīre iusserat, praeficit et in Venetōs eum proficīscī iubet.

(*b*) 1. Quaerit ex eō sōlō quae in conventū dīxerit. 2. Mīlitibus multa tēla erant. 3. Huic magnīs dōnīs persuādet ut ad hostēs trānseat, et quid fierī velit ēdocet. 4. Proximō diē Caesar ē castrīs cōpiās suās ēdūxit et, paulum ā castrīs prōgressus, aciem īnstrūxit. 5. Putāmus eum mercātōribus nōn crēdidisse.

530. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. The diligence of my pupils pleases me much. 2. The Veneti had very many ships. 3. They informed the Veneti that they wished to assemble near the shore. 4. They went across the river and led the army among the enemy. 5. The leader dares to advance to the regions of the enemy and is asking about their fleet.

(*b*) 1. Caesar drew up a line of battle on the top of the hill. 2. Other forces were sent as aid to Caesar. 3. They had set out in the winter and two thousand of their men had been slain. 4. Citizens always trust the defenders of their country. 5. The soldier had great courage and he became leader of the enemy.

The First Punic War

Annīs[1] quadringentīs nōnāgintā post urbem conditam[2] Rōmānōrum exercitūs prīmum in Siciliam trāiēcērunt, rēgemque Syrācūsārum, Poenōsque, quī multās cīvitātēs in eā īnsulā occupāverant, superāvērunt.

Quīntō annō huius bellī, quod contrā Poenōs gerēbātur, prīmum Rōmānī in marī dīmicāvērunt. Carthāginiēnsēs[3]



SYRACUSE.

A view of the modern city and harbor, taken from the ancient theater.

vīcērunt, trīgintā nāvēs occupāvērunt, quattuordecim mersērunt, septem mīlia hostium cēpērunt, tria mīlia occīdērunt. Nūlla victōria Rōmānīs grātior fuit.

---

1 Ablative of degree of difference with *post*, which has the force of a comparative.

2 *After the city founded*, i.e., *after the founding of the city.*

3 Accusative.

LESSON LXXIX

GERUND AND GERUNDIVE

*Crescit eundo.—It grows as it goes.**

531. The Gerund is a *verbal noun.* It is formed by the present stem + **nd** (or **end**) + neuter endings of the second declension. It is found in the genitive, dative, accusative, ablative, singular only; **portandī, portandō, portandum, portandō.**

532. The Gerundive is a *verbal adjective.*[1] It is formed by the present stem + **nd** (or **end**) + endings of **magnus: portandus, -a, -um.**

533. Gerund and Gerundive Uses.—The gerund may take a direct object. When it would have an object, the gerundive is generally used instead, the object taking the case of the gerund and the gerundive agreeing with the object as an adjective.

Desirous of seeking peace. **Cupidus pācem petendī** (gerund). **Cupidus pācis petendae** (gerundive construction).

We have hope of conquering the enemy. **Habēmus spem vincendī hostēs** (gerund). **Habēmus spem vincendōrum hostium** (gerundive construction).

---

* The motto of New Mexico. Literally: *By going.*

[1] An easy way to distinguish gerund and gerundive is to think that "the gerund*ive* is an adject*ive*."

534. VOCABULARY

adver'sus, -a, -um, *turned toward, facing, face to face.*
commeā'tus, -ūs, m., *supplies, provisions.*
hībe r'na, -ō'rum, n., *winter quarters.*
por'tus, -ūs, m., *harbor, port.*
praesi'dium, praesi'dī, n., *guard, garrison, protection.*
sa'lūs, -ū'tis, f., *safety.*
effi'ciō, -ere, -fē'cī, -fec'tus, *accomplish, bring about.*
clau'dō, -ere, clau'sī, clau'sus, *shut, close.*
occur'rō, -ere, -cur'rī, -cur'sus, *meet.*
prox'imē, adv., *next, most recently.*

535. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

hibernate adverse occur efficient

(*a*) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

RULE

536. The Expression of Purpose. — The most common ways of expressing purpose are:

1. Subjunctive with **ut** or **nē**. **Vēnērunt ut urbem vidērent.** *They came to see the city.*

2. Subjunctive with relative pronoun. **Vēnērunt quī urbem vidērent.**

3. Gerundive construction with **ad.** **Vēnērunt ad urbem videndam.**

4. Gerundive construction with **causā.** **Vēnērunt urbis videndae causā.**

(*a*) In Latin prose purpose *must not* be expressed by the infinitive.

EXERCISES

537. *Express the purpose in four ways:*

1. They went to close the gates. 2. We have teachers to instruct children. 3. Soldiers go into battle to slay the enemy. 4. Caesar came to conquer Gaul. 5. Will you hasten to see the king?

538. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Mīlitēs pugnandī fīnem fēcērunt. 2. Ad pācem petendam cotīdiē vēnērunt. 3. Nautae in portum salūtis petendae causā contendunt. 4. Nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsērunt. 5. Efficiēbat ut commeātūs ab Aeduīs et reliquīs cīvitātibus sine perīculō ad sē portārī possent.

(*b*) 1. Paucae rēs praesidiō hībernīs erunt. 2. Caesar bellī gerendī causā multās legiōnēs parābat. 3. Ad eōs dēfendendōs undique conveniunt. 4. Duae legiōnēs, quae proximē cōnscrīptae erant, tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedīmentīs erant. 5. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī, cum sē in castra reciperent, adversīs hostibus occurrēbant.

539. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Each advanced for the sake of crossing the river. 2. We were informed that the war ships had assembled, and we went into winter quarters to seek safety. 3. The Romans had very many captives. (*Express in two ways.*) 4. I was unwilling to meet you. 5. The captives resisted the victors very often.

(*b*) 1. We thought that Cicero, after calling the senate together, had dismissed it. 2. I asked him what he was doing. 3. The gates were closed and, a garrison being left at the camp, we sent men in different directions to seek supplies. 4. The leaders will show how many war ships have been collected. 5. They met the cavalry half way up the hill, but did not dare to advance to the attack.

PHRASES FROM CAESAR

540. *Commit to memory, with the translations:*

1. Salūtis causā. 2. Hōc proeliō nūntiātō. 3. Hīs rēbus gestīs. 4. Magnō numerō interfectō. 5. Hīs nūntiīs acceptīs.

The Capture of Regulus

Paucīs annīs interiectīs[1] bellum in Āfricam trānslātum est. Hamilcar, Carthāginiēnsium dux, pugnā nāvālī superātur. Cum Rōmānī in Āfricam vēnissent, Poenōs plūribus proeliīs vīcērunt, magnam vim hominum cēpērunt, multās cīvitātēs in fidem recēpērunt.[2]



The Harbors of Carthage.

So complete was the Roman destruction of Carthage that not only was the city razed to the ground but even the harbor was ruined.

Tum victī Carthāginiēnsēs pācem ā Rōmānīs petiērunt. Quam cum Rēgulus, Rōmānōrum dux, nōn daret nisi dūrissimīs condiciōnibus,[3] Carthāginiēnsēs auxilium ā Lacedaemoniīs petīvērunt. Hī exercitum mīsērunt, quī exercitum Rōmānum magnō proeliō vīcit. Rēgulus ipse captus et in vincula coniectus est.

---

[1] I.e., *after an interval of a few years.*
[2] *took under their protection.*
[3] *on the hardest terms.*

LESSON LXXVII

VOLŌ, NŌLŌ, MĀLŌ. DATIVE OF PURPOSE

*Fere libenter homines id quod volunt credunt.—Men gladly believe what they wish to.**

519. Syntax of volō, nōlō, mālō. — The infinitive with subject accusative is used with **volō, nōlō, mālō** when its subject is not the same as that of the governing verb. When the subject of both verbs is the same, the complementary infinitive is used.[1]

I wish you to go. **Volō tē īre.**
I wish to go. **Volō īre.**

(*a*) Learn the conjugation of **volō, nōlō, mālō**, § 592.

520. VOCABULARY

difficul′tās, -tā′tis, f., *difficulty.*
hi′ems, hi′emis, f., *winter, stormy weather.*
re′giō, -ō′nis, f., *region, boundary, district.*
subsi′dium, subsi′dī, n., *aid, support.*
mā′lō, māl′le, mā′luī, *prefer.*
nō′lō, nōl′le, nō′luī, *be unwilling.*
occī′dō, -ere, -cī′dī, -cī′sus, *kill, slay.*
pel′lō, -ere, pe′pulī, pul′sus, *drive out, put to flight, defeat.*
vo′lō, vel′le, vo′luī, *be willing, wish.*

521. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

voluntary expel region benevolent subsidiary

(*a*) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

RULE

522. Dative of Purpose. — A dative expressing purpose is often used in connection with another dative called a dative of reference.

* Caesar.

[1] Compare § 637 and (*a*)

The legion served as aid to Caesar. **Legiō auxiliō Caesarī fuit.**
He sent men as aid to the army. **Virōs subsidiō exercituī mīsit.**

(*a*) Here **auxiliō** and **subsidiō** are datives of purpose; **Caesarī** and **exercituī** are datives of reference.

EXERCISES

523. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Vult hostēs pellere. 2. Deō volente, Rōmae tē vidēbimus. 3. Hīs difficultātibus duae rēs erant subsidiō. 4. Volō tē tuō patrī placēre. 5. Māluerāmus cōpiās vestrās auxiliō nōbīs et nostrō exercituī venīre.

(*b*) 1. Decima legiō Caesarī subsidiō erat. 2. Caesar nōluit legiōnēs auxiliō Aeduīs mittere. 3. Hīs facile pulsīs, incrēdibilī celeritāte ad flūmen cucurrērunt. 4. Caesar memoriā tenēbat cōnsulem occīsum exercitumque eius ab Helvētiīs pulsum et sub iugum missum. 5. Captīvīs cūstōdēs praepōnit, ut, quae agant, quibuscum loquantur, scīre possit.



AGRIPPINA, MOTHER OF NERO.

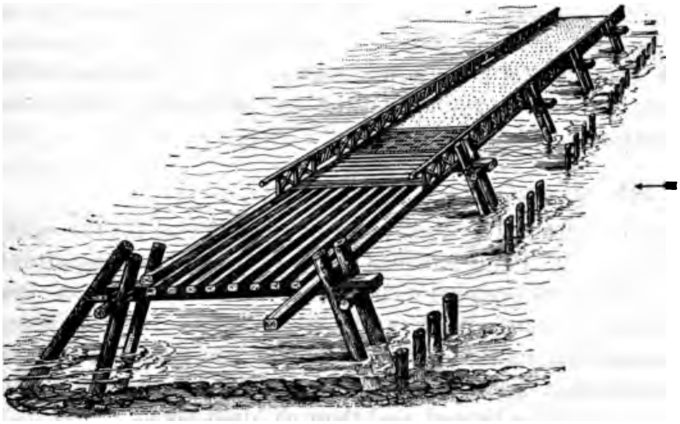
She was born at Cologne, which was named for her, the *Colony* of Agrippina.

524. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. We were willing to fight longer for our country. 2. Caesar had been unwilling to send the tenth legion as aid for Galba. 3. If I had preferred to remain at home, I should not have gone with you. 4. He thought it would not be difficult to slay the enemy. 5. We shall always resist the Germans.

544. VOCABULARY

facul'tās, -tā'tis, f., *opportunity, ability.*
tempes'tās, -tā'tis, f., *storm, bad weather.*
ar'bitror, -ā'rī, -ā'tus sum, *think.*
cohor'tor, -ā'rī, -ā'tus sum, *encourage.*
sta'tuō, -ere, -uī, -ū'tus, *determine, decide.*
magno'pere, (ma'gis, max'imē), adv., *greatly.*
prop'ter, prep. with acc., *on account of.*
sta'tim, adv., *immediately.*



CAESAR'S FAMOUS BRIDGE ACROSS THE RHINE.

545. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

tempest exhort arbitrate faculty

(*a*) Define, and use each of these words in an English sentence.

RULE

546. Dative of Agent. — With the Passive Periphrastic the dative is used to denote the agent or doer of the action.

You must give the signal. **Signum tibi dandum est.**[1]
Caesar must fight. **Caesarī pugnandum est.**

[1] Notice that all sentences in the active voice must be recast before they can be expressed literally by the Passive Periphrastic.

EXERCISES

547. *Translate.*

(*a*) 1. Statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trānseundum. 2. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda. 3. Magnopere tibi placitūrī fuerāmus. 4. Aciēs īnstruenda et mīlitēs cohortandī erant. 5. Hīs rēbus adductī statuimus hīberna Gallōrum nōbīs capienda esse.

(*b*) 1. Adversō exercituī occurrunt. 2. Prō rē pūblicā fortiter pugnātūrī sumus. 3. Propter tempestātēs difficultās nāvigandī maxima est. 4. Arbitrātī sumus commeātum ad hīberna statim mittendum esse. 5. Dēfessō mīlitī eius locī, ubi fuerat, relinquendī et suī recipiendī facultās nōn dabātur.

548. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. The gates must often be closed by us for the sake of safety. 2. I had intended to give you a better opportunity of seeing the beautiful buildings at Rome. 3. A brave citizen has often been an aid to the king. 4. The general set out late in the day to encourage the garrison. 5. Our forces must be sent across the wide river, the town of the enemy must be burned, and their children taken.

(*b*) 1. The Romans had no good ports. (*Two ways.*) 2. We did not dare to meet the Veneti on account of the stormy weather, and took the opportunity of retreating into port. 3. Having been greatly influenced by the reports which he had heard, Caesar determined that he must leave the winter quarters immediately. 4. Having advanced many miles, we met the Veneti face to face. 5. They had been informed that they must drive the enemy from their boundaries immediately.

LESSON LXXXI

REVIEW OF CASES[1]

Bis dat qui cito dat.—He gives twice who gives quickly.

549. Nominative. — Subject of a finite verb, § 17. Predicate nominative, § 41.

550. Genitive. — Possession, § 36. Of the whole, § 283. Description or quality, § 464. Definite measurement, § 464, *a*. Subjective, § 394. Objective, § 395. With adjectives, § 396.

551. Dative. — Indirect object, § 79. With adjectives meaning *like*, *equal*, etc., § 258. With adjectives meaning *dear*, *faithful*, etc., § 290. With verbs compounded with **ad**, **ante**, **con**, § 440. With intransitive verbs meaning *benefit* or *injure*, § 516. Agent with passive periphrastic, § 546. Possessor with **sum**, § 528. Of purpose, § 522.

EXERCISES

552. *Translate, giving the construction of each noun and pronoun:*[2]

(*a*) 1. Tēla mīlitibus Caesaris ferenda sunt. 2. Maior sorōrum ab omnibus pulchrior habēbātur. 3. Caesarī id nūntiātum est. 4. Imperātor mīlitibus imperāvit ut fortiter resisterent. 5. Spēs victōriae legiōnēs addūxit.

(*b*) 1. Erat fossa ducentōrum pedum in longitūdinem. 2. Belgīs bellum intulērunt. 3. Hic amīcus meus est; ille,

---

[1] The forms may be reviewed as the teacher sees fit.

[2] In these review lessons consult the general vocabulary for new words.

tuus. 4. Equitātuī, quem auxiliō Caesarī Aeduī mīserant, fortis vir praeerat. 5. Hīs rēbus cognitīs, explōrātōrēs centuriōnēsque praemittit, quī locum idōneum castrīs dēligant.

553. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. The Germans did not have large horses. (*Two ways.*) 2. The Belgians say that they are the bravest of all. 3. The



THE INTERIOR OF THE COLOSSEUM.

Compare this with the pictures on pages 12, 20, and 81.

fleet was sent as a protection to the city. 4. We met the girls in the road. 5. We must take the opportunity not only of burning the buildings but also of destroying the grain.

(*b*) 1. They did not dare to resist the enemy. 2. For the sake of safety they made a wall of ten feet in height. 3. At the arrival of the Germans our men fought more bravely. 4. The men were like their leader in courage. 5. He will order the lieutenant to send soldiers as aid to our men.

LESSON LXXXII

REVIEW OF CASES

Ense petit placidam sub libertate quietem. — *With the sword she seeks calm repose in freedom.**

554. Accusative. — Adverbial, § 405. Direct object, § 21. Duration of time and extent of space, § 307. Place *into*, *to*, *toward*, *near* which, § 112. Subject of an infinitive, § 327. With prepositions, § 353.

555. Ablative. — Absolute, § 484. Accompaniment with **cum**, § 136. Agent with a preposition, § 175. Cause without a preposition, § 229. Degree of difference, § 272. Manner, § 151. Means or instrument, § 87. Place *in*, *from*, *out of* which, § 112. Quality, § 464. Specification, § 238. Separation, § 336. Time when, § 182. With prepositions, § 352. With verbs **ūtor**, **fruor**, etc., § 389. Adverbial, § 406.

556. Locative. — Place in or at which with names of cities and towns, **domus**, and **rūs**, § 299.

557. Vocative. — The vocative is used as the case of address, § 5.

EXERCISES

558. *Translate, giving the construction of each noun and pronoun:*

(*a*) 1. Sciēbant Rōmānōs plūrimum inter nātiōnēs et virtūte et hominum numerō posse. 2. Hīs verbīs audītīs, eum ab sē dīmittit. 3. Haec rēs latus ūnum castrōrum rīpīs flūminis

* The motto of Massachusetts.

mūniēbat. 4. Galbam cum sex cohortibus praesidiō legiōnibus relīquit. 5. Ab hīs castrīs vir, Galba nōmine, magnā cum celeritāte mīlia passuum octō iit.

(*b*) 1. Dux summā virtūte ad bellum ā Caesare mittētur. 2. Mediā nocte Caesar īsdem ducibus ūsus, quī nūntiī vēnerant, eōs auxiliō urbī mīsit. 3. Decem diēbus ante Galba mūrum dēfēnsōribus nūdāverat. 4. Venetī multō potentiōrēs quam hostēs erant. 5. Manēre Rōmae est facillimum.



A Roman Matron.

559. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. Friends, we shall use our weapons as well as possible. 2. The citizens at Rome wished to please their king. 3. The large animals ran out of the woods at daybreak and remained near the town all day. 4. We use our javelins to deprive the city of its defenders. 5. If the leader orders, you will set out.

(*b*) 1. Marcus, you can surpass the enemy in courage. 2. Caesar was informed that the top of the mountain was held by the enemy. 3. Caesar with his brave men stormed the town with great courage. 4. We followed the cavalry five miles and fought much more bravely than they. 5. After the gates had been closed, a message was sent to the general who was attacking the town.

LESSON LXXXIII

REVIEW OF SUBJUNCTIVES

Finis coronat opus. — *The end crowns the work.*

560. Subjunctives. — Causal clauses, § 492. Circumstantial clauses, § 491. Concessive clauses, § 493. Conditional clauses, §§ 498–504. Indirect questions, § 424. Purpose, § 366. Result, § 402.

EXERCISES

561. *Translate, explaining each subjunctive:*

(*a*) 1. Mīles ita ēgit ut imperātor eum culpāret. 2. Quid ēgerīs sciō. 3. Caesar, cum aciem īnstrūxisset, legiōnibus signum dedit. 4. Cum domī meae paene interfectus essem, senātum convocāvī. 5. Sī facultās mīlitibus data esset, ācerrimē pugnāre ausī essent.

(*b*) 1. Hostēs, cum ā tertiā hōrā ad sōlis occāsum pugnāvissent, tamen victī sunt. 2. Cum iussī erimus in portum īre, quam vēlōcissimē nāvigābimus. 3. Tantīs perīculīs occurrit ut salūtis causā fugiat. 4. Dux dīcit mīlitēs in hostēs quam plūrima pīla iactūrōs esse. 5. Sī mīlitēs cohortēris, fortius pugnent.

562. *Translate:*

(*a*) 1. He saw in how great peril the camp was. 2. They surrendered to Caesar, since he was very powerful. 3. When Cicero saw the danger, he tried to save the state. 4. He sent a man to enlist two legions. 5. Caesar commanded us to bring the captives back.

(*b*) 1. Since their fleet had been taken, they could not defend themselves. 2. We had sent the Gauls under the yoke.

3. Although we do not understand the movements of the stars, nevertheless it pleases us to see them. 4. If the enemy had been braver, they would not have sought peace. 5. The army was so powerful that it could not be taken.

The Heroism of Regulus

Fortūna tamen in aliīs locīs Carthāginiēnsibus[1] nocuit. Cum plūribus proeliīs victī essent, Rēgulum rogāvērunt ut



The Site of the Citadel at Carthage.

Rōmam proficīscerētur[2] et pācem ā Rōmānīs impetrāret. Haec tamen erat condiciō, ut, sī pāx nōn esset facta, Rēgulus Carthāginem reverterētur.

Ille cum Rōmam vēnisset, dīxit sē Rōmānum esse dēsiisse[3] ex illā diē quā in potestātem Poenōrum vēnisset.[4] Tum Rōmānīs praecēpit nē pācem cum hostibus facerent.

---

[1] Dative. See § 516.

[2] **ut proficīscerētur**, *to set out.* [3] *had ceased to be a Roman.*

[4] Subjunctive because it is the verb of a subordinate clause in an indirect statement.

Dīxit Carthāginiēnsēs cāsibus frāctōs pācem spērāre tālem ut[1] paucīs annīs bellum redintegrāre possent.[2] Sibi mortem crūdēlem parātam esse sē nōn ignōrāre, sed vītam prō patriā dēpōnere[3] magnam laudem esse. Oportēre sē[4] in Āfricam revertī.[5] Sententia Rēgulī obtinuit (*prevailed*); in Āfricam reversus crūdēlissimīs suppliciīs interfectus est.



THE TEMPLE OF NEPTUNE AT PAESTUM.

This relic of Greek influence in Italy is the best preserved Greek temple in existence. Compare page 211.

[1] **pācem tālem ut**, *such a peace that.* [2] *they would be able.*

[3] Subject of **esse**.

[4] Subject of **revertī**, which is itself the subject of **oportēre**.

[5] This passage in the form of direct discourse would run as follows: **Carthāginiēnsēs cāsibus frāctī pācem spērant tālem ut paucīs annīs bellum redintegrāre possint. Mihi mortem crūdēlem parātam esse nōn ignōrō, sed vītam prō patriā dēpōnere magna laus est. Oportet mē in Āfricam revertī.**

SUPPLEMENTARY READING

THE STORY OF ULYSSES

Homeward Bound

Urbs Trōia ā Graecīs decem annōs obsessa est. Dē hōc bellō Homērus, maximus poētārum Graecōrum, Īliadem, opus



The Ruins of Troy.

The story of the excavations at Troy reads like a novel. Here were found the ruins of city after city, each built upon the wreckage of a former one. The sixth from the bottom is thought to be Homer's Troy.

nōtissimum, scrīpsit. Trōiā tandem per īnsidiās [1] captā, Graecī longō bellō dēfessī domum revertī mātūrāvērunt. Omnibus rēbus igitur ad profectiōnem parātīs, nāvēs dēdūxērunt et magnō cum gaudiō solvērunt.

[1] The *stratagem* of the wooden horse.

Erat inter prīmōs Graecōrum Ulixēs quīdam, vir summae virtūtis ac prūdentiae. Hic rēgnum īnsulae Ithacae obtinuerat, et puellam pulcherrimam nōmine Pēnelopēn in mātrimōnium dūxerat.[1] Nunc igitur, cum iam decem annōs quasi in exsiliō cōnsūmpsisset, magnopere patriam et uxōrem vidēre cupiēbat.

The Lotus Eaters

Postquam tamen pauca mīlia passuum ā lītore Trōiae prōgressī sunt, tanta tempestās subitō orta est ut nūlla nāvium cursum tenēre posset, sed aliae aliās in partēs disicerentur.[2] Nāvis autem quā[3] ipse Ulixēs vehēbātur, vī tempestātis ad merīdiem dēlāta, decimō diē ad lītus Libyae pervēnit. Ancorīs iactīs Ulixēs cōnstituit nōnnūllōs ē sociīs in terram expōnere, quī quālis esset nātūra eius regiōnis cognōscerent,[4] et aquam ad nāvem reportārent.

Hī igitur ē nāvī ēgressī imperāta facere parābant. Dum tamen fontem quaerunt, ā quibusdam ex incolīs hospitiō acceptī sunt. Cibus autem eōrum hominum erat mīrus quīdam frūctus, quem lōtum appellābant. Quem cum Graecī gustāvissent, patriae et sociōrum statim oblītī,[5] cōnfīrmāvērunt sē semper in eā terrā permānsūrōs esse, ut dulcī illō cibō[6] in aeternum vescerentur.

The Departure

At Ulixēs, cum ab hōrā[7] septimā ad vesperum exspectāvisset, nōnnūllōs ē reliquīs sociīs mīsit, ut quae causa esset

---

[1] *Had married.* Literally what?

[2] *they were driven, some in one direction, others in another.* Notice how much shorter the Latin is.

[3] Ablative of means.

[4] **quī cognōscerent**, *who should learn, to learn.*

[5] The verb **oblīvīscor** often takes the objective genitive.

[6] See § 389.

[7] The day from sunrise to sunset was divided by the Romans into twelve equal parts, called "hours" (**hōrae**).

morae cognōscerent. Hī igitur ad vīcum, quī nōn longē āfuit, sē contulērunt; quō cum vēnissent,[1] sociōs suōs quasi vīnō ēbriōs repperērunt. Tum iīs persuādēre cōnābantur ut sēcum[2] ad nāvem reverterentur.

Illī tamen resistere ac manū sē dēfendere coepērunt, saepe clāmitantēs sē numquam eum locum relictūrōs esse. Quae cum ita essent,[3] nūntiī ad Ulixem revertērunt. Hīs rēbus cognitīs Ulixēs ipse cum omnibus quī in nāve relictī erant ad locum vēnit; et sociōs suōs frūstrā hortātus invītōs ad nāvem reportāvit. Tum ancorīs sublātīs quam celerrimē ē portū solvit.

The One-eyed Giant

Posterō diē ad terram ignōtam vēnērunt; tum quod nātūram eius regiōnis ignōrābat, ipse Ulixēs cum duodecim ē sociīs in terram ēgressus locum explōrāre cōnstituit. Paulum ā lītore prōgressī ad spēluncam ingentem pervēnērunt, cuius introitus arte et manibus mūnītus erat.

Mox, etsī intellegēbant sē nōn sine perīculō id factūrōs, spēluncam intrāvērunt; quod cum fēcissent, magnam cōpiam lactis invēnērunt, quod in vāsīs ingentibus erat. Dum tamen mīrantur quis eam sēdem incoleret,[4] sonitum terribilem audīvērunt.

Oculīs ad portam versīs mōnstrum horribile vīdērunt, hūmānā quidem figūrā, sed ingentī magnitūdine corporis. Cum autem vīdissent gigantem ūnum tantum (*only*) oculum habēre in mediā fronte positum, intellēxērunt hunc esse ūnum ē Cyclōpibus, dē quibus fāmam iam accēperant.

---

[1] *and when they had come there* (*thither*)

[2] *I.e.* **cum sē.** See § 432, footnote 1.

[3] *and since these things were so.*

[4] This imperfect apparently violates the rule for sequence of tenses. But **mīrantur,** though a present, has the force of an imperfect tense.

The Giant's Supper

Cyclōpēs autem pāstōrēs erant quīdam, quī īnsulam Siciliam et praecipuē montem Aetnam incolēbant; ibi enim Volcānus, praeses fabrōrum et ignis repertor, cuius servī Cyclōpēs erant, officīnam suam habēbat.

Graecī igitur ubi mōnstrum vīdērunt, perterritī in interiōrem partem spēluncae refūgērunt et sē ibi cēlāre cōnābantur.



Mount Aetna in Sicily.

The cave of Polyphemus was supposed to be here and the rocks he threw at Ulysses are still shown scattered in the sea just off shore. This picture is taken from the Greek theater at Taormina.

Polyphēmus autem, hoc enim nōmen gigantis erat, pecora sua in spēluncam ēgit; tum cum[1] saxō ingentī portam obstrūxisset, ignem in mediā spēluncā fēcit. Hōc factō, oculō omnia perlūstrābat, et cum sēnsisset hominēs in interiōre parte spēluncae cēlārī, magnā vōce exclāmāvit: "Quī estis hominēs? Mercātōrēs an latrōnēs?"

[1] Although the word following **cum** is an ablative, **obstrūxisset** shows that **cum** must be the conjunction.

Tum Ulixēs respondit sē neque mercātōrēs neque latrōnēs esse, sed vī tempestātum ā rēctō cursū dēpulsōs eō pervēnisse. Tum Polyphēmus quaesīvit ubi esset nāvis eōrum. Ulixēs respondit nāvem suam in rūpēs coniectam et frāctam esse. Polyphēmus autem nūllō datō respōnsō duo ē sociīs manū corripuit, et membrīs eōrum dīvulsīs[1] carnem dēvorāre coepit.

No Way of Escape

Dum haec geruntur, Graecōrum animōs tantus terror occupāvit ut nē vōcem quidem ēdere[2] possent, sed omnī spē salūtis dēpositā mortem praesentem exspectārent. At Polyphēmus, postquam famēs hāc tam horribilī cēnā dēpulsa est, somnō sē dedit.



Ulysses.
From an ancient relief.

Quod cum vīdisset Ulixēs, nē tantam occāsiōnem omitteret, in animō habuit pectus mōnstrī gladiō trānsfīgere. Tamen cōnstituit prius[3] explōrāre quō modō ē spēluncā ēvādere possent. At cum saxum cōnsīderāret quō introitus obstrūctus erat, dubitābat. Tanta enim erat eius saxī magnitūdō ut nē ā decem quidem hominibus āmovērī posset.

Quae cum ita essent, Ulixēs hōc dēstitit cōnātū. Sociī cum intellēxissent quō in locō (*situation*) rēs essent, dē fortūnīs suīs dēspērāre coepērunt. Ille tamen nē animōs dēmitterent[4] vehementer hortātus est; dēmōnstrāvit sē iam anteā ē multīs

[1] *I.e.*, tearing them limb from limb.
[2] vōcem ēdere, *utter a word.*
[3] *First*, *i.e.*, before taking any action.
[4] *not to lose courage.*

et magnīs perīculīs ēvāsisse, neque in tantō discrīmine deōrum auxilium āfutūrum esse.

A Plan for Vengeance

Prīmā lūce, Polyphēmus iam ē somnō excitātus idem quod hesternō diē fēcit;[1] correptīs enim duōbus ē reliquīs virīs carnem eōrum sine morā dēvorāvit. Tum, cum saxum āmōvisset, ipse cum pecore suō ē spēluncā prōgressus est; quod cum vidērent Graecī magnam in spem vēnērunt sē ēvāsūrōs esse.[2] Mox tamen ab hāc spē repulsī sunt; nam Polyphēmus, postquam omnēs ovēs ēgressae sunt, saxum in locum restituit.

Tum reliquī lacrimīs sē dēdidērunt; Ulixēs vērō, quī, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, vir magnī fuit cōnsilī, etsī bene intellegēbat rem in discrīmine esse, nōndum dēspērābat. Tandem hoc cēpit cōnsilium. Ē lignīs quae in spēluncā erant pālum magnum dēlēgit; hunc summā cum dīligentiā praeacūtum fēcit; tum postquam sociīs suum cōnsilium ostendit, reditum Polyphēmī exspectābat.

A Glass too Much

Sub vesperum Polyphēmus ad spēluncam vēnit, et eōdem modō quō[3] anteā cēnāvit. Tum Ulixēs ūtrem vīnī cēpit, quem forte sēcum attulerat, et postquam magnam crātēram vīnō complēvit, gigantī eam dedit. Polyphēmus, quī numquam anteā vīnum gustāverat, tōtam crātēram statim hausit; quod cum fēcisset, tantam voluptātem percēpit ut iterum et tertium (*a third time*) crātēram replērī iusserit.[4]

Tum quaesīvit quō nōmine Ulixēs appellārētur. Ille respondit sē Nēminem appellārī; quod cum audīvisset, Poly-

---

[1] *I.e.*, **idem fēcit quod hesternō diē fēcerat.**

[2] **sē ēvāsūrōs esse**, *that they were going to escape*, depends on and explains **spem**.

[3] *in the same way in which*, i.e., *in the same way as*.

[4] In clauses of result the perfect subjunctive is frequently used after historical tenses.

phēmus ita locūtus est: "Hanc tibi grātiam prō tantō beneficiō referam:[1] tē ultimum omnium dēvorābō." Hīs dictīs, cibō vīnōque gravis brevī tempore somnō oppressus est. Tum Ulixēs sociīs convocātīs, "Habēmus," inquit, "quam petiimus facultātem;[2] nōn igitur tantam occāsiōnem nōs omittere oportet.[3]"

Nobody

Hāc ōrātiōne habitā, postquam extrēmum (*the end of*) pālum igne calefēcit, oculum Polyphēmī, dum dormit, ārdentī lignō trānsfōdit; quō factō, omnēs in dīversās spēluncae partēs sē abdidērunt. At ille subitō illō dolōre ē somnō excitātus clāmōrem terribilem sustulit, et dum per spēluncam errat, Ulixī manum inicere cōnābātur; cum tamen iam caecus esset, nūllō modō hoc efficere potuit.



LAOCOÖN.

He was a priest of Apollo at Troy and was strangled by serpents together with two of his sons because he had offended the god.

Intereā reliquī Cyclōpēs, clāmōre audītō, undique ad spēluncam convēnērunt, et ā Polyphēmō quaesīvērunt quam ob causam tantum clāmōrem sustulisset. Ille respondit sē graviter vulnerātum esse, et magnō dolōre afficī; cum tamen cēterī quaesīvissent quis eum vulnerāvisset, respondit ille, "Nēmō id fēcit." Deinde ūnus ē

[1] **hanc tibi grātiam referam,** *I will return you* (i.e., *do you in return*) *this favor*.

[2] **quam facultātem,** *the opportunity which*.

[3] *We ought not to lose such a chance*. **Omittere** is the subject of the **impersonal verb oportet.**

Cyclōpibus, "At sī," inquit, "nēmō tē vulnerāvit, cōnsiliō (*by the will*) deōrum, quibus[1] nostrās vīrēs oppōnere nōn dēbēmus, hōc suppliciō afficeris." Hīs dictīs discessērunt Cyclōpēs.

The Escape

At Polyphēmus furōre impulsus Ulixem iterum quaerere coepit; tandem cum portam invēnisset, saxum quod portae obiectum erat āmōvit. Tum ipse in introitū sēdit et ovium ēgredientium terga manibus trāctābat, nē virī inter ovēs ēgredī possent.

Quod cum vīdisset Ulixēs hoc cōnsilium cēpit; postquam trēs ovēs inter sē (*to one another*) vīminibus coniūnxit, ūnum ē sociīs ventribus eārum subiēcit; deinde ovēs hominem sēcum ferentēs ad portam ēgit. Polyphēmus postquam manūs tergīs ovium imposuit, eās ēgredī passus est. Ulixēs ubi hoc vīdit, omnēs suōs sociōs eōdem modō ēmīsit. Ipse ultimus ēvāsit.

The Wrath of Polyphemus

Hīs rēbus ita cōnfectīs, Ulixēs cum sociīs quam celerrimē ad lītus contendit; quō cum vēnissent, ab iīs quī in nāve relictī erant magnā cum laetitiā acceptī sunt. Hī enim eōs in perīculum grave vēnisse (id quod erat[2]) arbitrātī, aut nōnnūllōs submittere aut omnēs auxilium ferre parābant.

Tum Ulixēs quam celerrimē proficīscī cōnstituit. Iussit igitur omnēs nāvem cōnscendere, et, ancorīs sublātīs, paulum ā lītore in altum prōvectus est. Tum magnā vōce exclāmāvit: "Tū, Polyphēme, quī iūra hospitī spernis, iūstās poenās crūdēlitātis tuae dedistī, nec tibi invideō." Hāc vōce audītā Polyphēmus īrā vehementer commōtus ad mare sē contulit, et saxum ingēns in eam partem unde vōcem venīre sēnsit frūstrā adiēcit. Graecī autem incolumēs cursum tenuērunt.

---

[1] Dative, indirect object of opponere.

[2] *that which was* (the case), *i.e.*, as was really the case.

The Winds

Pauca mīlia passuum ab eō locō prōgressus Ulixēs ad īnsulam quandam nōmine Aeoliam pervēnit. Haec patria erat ventōrum. Ibi rēx Aeolus ipse Graecōs hospitiō accēpit, atque iīs persuāsit ut paucōs diēs in eā regiōne manērent. Septimō diē, cum sociī ē labōribus sē recēpissent, Ulixēs, nē annī tempore ā cursū exclūderētur, sine morā proficīscī statuit. Tum Aeolus sociōs Ulixis amplē dōnīs dōnāvit,[1] atque ipsī magnum dedit saccum, in quō omnēs ventōs praeter Zephyrum[2] inclūserat. Ulixēs hoc dōnum libenter accēpit; tum ē portū solvit.

Novem diēs Zephyrō secundō cursum tenuerant, iamque in cōnspectum patriae suae veniēbant. Ulixēs, quī dēfessus erat, paulum quiētis[3] capiēbat. At sociī, quī quid in illō saccō inclūsum esset ignōrābant, cum vidērent ducem somnō oppressum esse, magnam occāsiōnem sibi darī arbitrātī sunt; crēdēbant enim aurum ibi cēlārī. Itaque saccum sine morā solvērunt.

Tum, ventīs līberātīs, tanta tempestās subitō orta est ut illī cursum tenēre nōn possent, sed in eandem partem unde erant profectī referrentur. Ulixēs ē somnō excitātus quō in locō rēs esset statim intellēxit; saccum solūtum, Ithacam post tergum relīctam vīdit. Tum vērō maximē īrā commōtus sociōs incūsābat quod cupiditāte pecūniae adductī spem salūtis prōiēcerant.

The Home of Circe

Brevī intermissō spatiō Graecī īnsulae cuidam appropinquāvērunt, quam Circē, fīlia Sōlis, incolēbat. Ubi ad terram pervēnit, Ulixēs sociōs in duās partēs dīvīsit, quārum alterī[4] Eurylochus, vir summae virtūtis, alterī ipse praeesset.[5] Hōc

---

[1] *presented with gifts.*
[2] The west wind was left out, because it was favorable for Ulysses.
[3] Genitive of the whole, depending on paulum.
[4] See § 440.
[5] *was to be in command.*

factō Eurylochus cum duōbus et vīgintī sociīs ē nāve ēgressus in interiōrem partem īnsulae profectus est. Magnus tamen timor animōs omnium occupāverat. Vix quidem poterant iī quī in nāve relīctī erant lacrimās tenēre; crēdēbant enim sē sociōs suōs numquam posteā vīsūrōs esse.

Illī autem brevī tempore ad vīllam quandam pervēnērunt. Hīc Circē ipsa omnēs ut domum intrārent invītāvit. Eurylochus, quī īnsidiās timēbat, forīs exspectāre cōnstituit; at reliquī rē novā adductī intrāvērunt. Cēnam invēnērunt omnibus rēbus īnstrūctam, quam libenter vīdērunt. At Circē vīnum medicāmentō quōdam miscuerat; quod cum illī bibissent, gravī somnō subitō oppressī sunt.

Transformation and Countercharm

Tum Circē, quae artis magicae summam scientiam habēbat, baculō aureō quod gerēbat capita eōrum tetigit; quō factō omnēs in porcōs subitō conversī sunt. Intereā Eurylochus, quī ignōrābat quid in aedibus agerētur, ad occāsum sōlis exspectāvit; tum sōlus ad nāvem revertī cōnstituit. Eō cum vēnisset, timōre ita perturbātus fuit ut vix ea quae vīderat nārrāre posset.

At Ulixēs satis intellēxit sociōs suōs in perīculō esse, et Eurylochō imperāvit ut sine morā ad eam domum dūceret. Ille tamen multīs cum lacrimīs Ulixem ōrābat nē in tantum perīculum sē prōiceret.[1] Ulixēs autem respondit sē nēminem invītum sēcum adductūrum; eī licēre in nāve manēre;[2] sē ipsum sine ūllō auxiliō rem susceptūrum.[3] Hoc cum magnā vōce dīxisset, ē nāvī dēsiluit, et nūllō sequente sōlus in viam sē dedit.[4]

---

[1] **nē sē prōiceret**, *not to throw himself.*

[2] Subject of the impersonal **licēre**.

[3] This passage in the form of direct discourse would run as follows; **Nēminem invītum mēcum addūcam; tibi licet in nāve manēre; ego ipse sine ūllō auxiliō rem suscipiam.**

[4] *put himself on the way, started.*

Paulum itineris[1] prōgressus ad vīllam pervēnit, quam statim intrāre statuit; intellēxit enim hanc esse eandem dē quā Eurylochus dīxisset.[2] At cum ad līmen vēnisset, subitō adulēscentem figūrā pulcherrimā vīdit, aureum baculum manū gerentem. Hic, "Quid tē," inquit, "impellit, aut quō ruis? Nōnne scīs hanc esse Circēs[3] domum? Hīc inclūsī sunt amīcī tuī, ex hūmānā figūrā in porcōs conversī. Num cupis ipse eundem cāsum ferre?"

Ulixēs ubi vōcem audīvit deum Mercurium agnōvit; nūllīs[4] tamen precibus ā cōnsiliō dēterrērī potuit. Quod cum Mercurius sēnsisset, herbam quandam eī dedit, quam[5] contrā artem magicam maximam vim habēre dīcēbat. "Hanc cape (*take*)," inquit, "et ubi Circē tē baculō tetigerit,[6] tū gladiō impetum in eam fac (*make*)." Hīs dictīs Mercurius ex oculīs Ulixis sē ēripuit.

The Enchantress Foiled. Restoration

Brevī intermissō spatiō Ulixēs domum intrāvit, et ab ipsā Circē benignē exceptus est. Omnia eōdem modō atque[7] anteā facta sunt. Cēnam omnibus rēbus īnstrūctam vīdit, et accumbere[8] iussus est. Mox, ubi famēs cibō dēpulsa est, Circē pōculum aureum vīnō replētum Ulixī dedit. Ille timēbat nē (*that*) venēnum in vīnō esset, pōculum tamen hausit; quō factō Circē, postquam caput eius baculō tetigit, ea verba locūta est quibus sociōs eius anteā in porcōs converterat.

At tanta erat vīs eius herbae quam Mercurius dederat, ut neque venēnum neque verba quicquam efficere possent. Ulixēs autem, ut eī Mercurius praecēperat, gladiō impetum in eam

---

[1] Genitive of the whole, depending on **paulum**.

[2] This verb is subjunctive, because it is the verb of a subordinate clause of the indirect statement.

[3] A Greek form of the genitive.

[4] *not . . . any*. Put the negative with the translation of **potuit**.

[5] The subject of **habēre**.

[6] *touches*, literally *shall have touched*.

[7] *as*. **Atque** regularly has this meaning after words of likeness.

[8] To recline at table was a Roman custom, often attributed by Latin writers to others than Romans.

fēcit. Tum Circē, cum sēnsisset artem suam nihil valēre,[1] multīs cum lacrimīs eum nē sē interficeret[2] ōrāvit.

Ulixēs autem, ubi sēnsit eam timōre perterritam esse, postulāvit ut sociōs sine morā in hūmānam figūram redūceret. At Circē hīs rēbus graviter commōta ad pedēs eius sē prōiēcit, et multīs cum lacrimīs iūre iūrandō cōnfīrmāvit sē omnibus rēbus[3] eī[4] satisfactūram esse; tum porcōs in domum immittī iussit. Illī cum ducem suum agnōvissent, magnō dolōre affectī sunt, quod nūllō modō potuērunt eum dē rēbus suīs certiōrem facere.

Circē tamen unguentō quōdam corpora eōrum ūnxit; quō factō omnēs in figūram hūmānam redditī sunt. Magnō cum gaudiō Ulixēs amīcōs agnōvit, et nūntium ad lītus mīsit, quī reliquīs[5] Graecīs sociōs receptōs esse dīceret. Illī autem hīs rēbus cognitīs statim ad domum Circēs sē contulērunt; quō cum vēnissent, omnēs ūniversī laetitiae sē dēdidērunt.

Afloat Again

Posterō diē Ulixēs in animō habēbat ex īnsulā quam celerrimē discēdere; Circē autem, quae iam amōrī sē submittēbat,[6] omnibus precibus eum ōrāre coepit ut paucōs diēs apud sē morārētur. Hōc tandem impetrātō tanta beneficia in eum contulit ut tōtum annum ibi cōnsūmeret. Tum autem magnus amor patriae et uxōris eum cēpit. Sociīs igitur ad sē convocātīs quid in animō habēret ostendit.

Ubi tamen ad lītus dēscendit, nāvem suam tempestātibus ita frāctam invēnit ut paene inūtilis esset; sociī autem cum tantā dīligentiā labōrābant ut ante tertium diem nāvem refēcerint. Circē ubi vīdit profectiōnem parārī, Ulixem vehementer ōrābat ut eō cōnsiliō dēsisteret. Ille tamen, nē annī tempore ā cursū exclūderētur, rē frūmentāriā comparātā eōdem diē nāvem solvit.

---

1 **nihil valēre**, *had no power*, or *effect*.
2 **nē sē interficeret**, *not to kill her*.
3 Ablative, *in all respects*.
4 Dative, depending on **satisfactūram esse**.
5 Indirect object of **dīceret**.
6 *was submitting herself to, was yielding to*.


GAUL
at the time of
CAESAR.
SCALE OF ROMAN MILES
0 20 40 60 80 100 150
BRITANNIA
Cassivellauni opp.
Londinium
TRINOBANTES
CENIMAGNI
CASSI
Tamesis F.
ANCALITES
SEGONTIACI
BELGAE
BIBROCI
Cantium
Itius Portus
CALETES
Samarobriva
VENELLI
LEXOBII
VELIOCASSES
Sequana
EBUROVICES
ESUBII
OSISMI
CURIOSOLITES
AMBIBARII
DIABLINTES
CARNUTES
Vellaunodunum
Cenabum
VENETI
REDONES
CENOMANI
ANDES
NAMNETES
Liger
TURONI
Noviodunum
Condivincum
PICTONES
Lemonum
BITURIGES
LEMOVICES
SANTONI
PETROCORII
Vesunna
Garumna
NITIOBRIGES
ELEUTETI
Uxellodunum
COCOSATES
VOCATES
Sotiates
SIBUZATES
TARUSATES
ELUSATES
AUSCI
TOLOSA
BIGERRIONES
CANTABRI
HISPANIA CITERIOR
AQUITANIA
ARMORICAE
CELTICA
OCEANUS
Longitude 4 West from 2 Greenwich 0°
6° 4° 2° 0°
50° 48° 46° 44°



Rhenus F.
USIPETES
8°
10°
12°
MENAPII
TENCTERI
CHERUSCI
Albis F.
AMBIVARITI
EBURONES
SUGAMBRI
LEVACI
Aduatucorum opp.
Aduatuca
SEGNI
CONDRUSI
CAEROESI
PAEMANI
Silva
Bacenis Silva
UBII
SUEBI
GERMANIA
MARCOMANNI
50°
TREVERI
Mosella
Nava F.
VANGIONES
SEDUSII
MEDIOMATRICI
NEMETES
LEUCI
Vosegus M.
TRIBOCES
Hercynia Silva
Danuvius F.
VINDELICI
LATOBRIGI
Rhenus
HARUDES
TULINGI
48°
Oenus
BOII
Alesia
Admagetobriga
Vesontio
Dubis
Arar
Cabillonum
Matisco
SEQUANI
TIGURINI
VERBIGENI
HELVETIA
Rhenus F.
NORICUM
NANTUATES
Genava
SEDUNI
LEPONTII
Octodurus
Vienna
ALLOBROGES
CEUTRONES
GALLIA
Mediolanum
Verona
VENETI
Aquileia
46°
GRAIOCELI
Ocelum
Cremona
Placentia
CISALPINA
Padus
VOCONTII
CATURIGES
Apenninus
LIGURES
Genua
Arelate
ALBICI
Aquae Sextiae
SALLYES
Pisae
Florentia
44°
ETRURIA
ITALIA
ROMA
NTERNUM
6°
East
8°
from
10°
Greenwich

C. IULII CAESARIS

DE BELLO GALLICO

SELECTIONS FROM BOOK I

Divisions of Gaul

Gallia est omnis dīvīsa[1] in partēs trēs, quārum[2] ūnam[3] incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam,[4] quī ipsōrum linguā[5] Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā,[6] īnstitūtīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquītānīs Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit.

Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, proximīque sunt Germānīs,[7] quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt.

Quā dē causā Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte[8] praecēdunt, quod ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs[9] cum Germānīs contendunt, cum aut suīs fīnibus[10] eōs prohibent, aut ipsī in eōrum[11] fīnibus bellum gerunt.

The Helvetians Decide to Migrate

Undique locī nātūrā Helvētiī continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit, alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs, tertiā lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dīvidit. Hīs rēbus fīēbat,[12] ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile fīnitimīs[13] bellum īnferre possent. Prō[14] multitūdine autem

---

[1] The perfect passive participle of **dīvidō** used as a predicate adjective.

[2] § 283.

[3] Supply **partem**.

[4] **tertiam, quī** = **tertiam partem eī incolunt, quī**.

[5] § 87.

[6] § 238.

[7] § 258.

[8] § 238.

[9] § 87.

[10] § 336.

[11] § 458[1].

[12] The subject is **ut . . . possent**.

[13] § 440.

[14] *Considering*.

hominum et prō glōriā bellī angustōs sē fīnēs habēre arbitrābantur.

They Prepare to Depart

Cōnstituērunt ea, quae ad proficīscendum pertinērent,[1] comparāre,[2] iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam maximum numerum coëmere,[2] sēmentēs quam maximās facere,[2] cum proximīs cīvitātibus pācem et amīcitiam cōnfīrmāre.[2] Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās[3] biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōnfīrmant.

Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, reliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt, frūmentum omne, praeterquam quod sēcum portātūrī erant,[4] combūrunt.

Two Ways to Go

Erant omnīnō itinera duo, quibus itineribus domō exīre possent;[5] ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur;[5] mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent; alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius, propterea quod inter fīnēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōnnūllīs locīs vadō trānsītur. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētiōrum fīnibus Genava. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātīs, diem dīcunt, quā diē ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant.[6]

Caesar Learns Their Plans

Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī,[7] mātūrat ab urbe proficīscī et, quam maximīs potest itineribus, in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad

---

[1] Subjunctive because it is a dependent clause in implied indirect discourse.
[2] These infinitives complete the meaning of **cōnstituērunt**.
[3] § 536, 3. [4] § 542. [5] Subjunctive of characteristic.
[6] Subjunctive of purpose. [7] **eōs . . . cōnārī** explains **id**.

Genavam pervenit. Ubi dē eius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, quī dīcerent,[1] sibi[2] esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter habērent nūllum. Ut spatium intercēdere posset, dum[3] mīlitēs, quōs imperāverat, convenīrent, lēgātīs respondit, diem sē ad dēlīberandum sūmptūrum.

Intereā eā legiōne,[4] quam sēcum habēbat, mīlitibusque,[4] quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum īnfluit, ad montem Iūram, quī fīnēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dīvidit, mūrum fossamque perdūcit.

He Thwarts Their Plans

Ubi ea diēs, quam cōnstituerat cum lēgātīs, vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare et, sī vim facere cōnentur, prohibitūrum[5] ostendit. Helvētiī eā spē[6] dēiectī, nāvibus iūnctīs ratibusque complūribus factīs, aliī vadīs Rhodanī quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat, sī[7] perrumpere possent,[8] cōnātī, mīlitum concursū[9] et tēlīs[9] repulsī hōc cōnātū[6] dēstitērunt.

SELECTIONS FROM BOOK II

The Belgians Conspire against the Romans

Cum esset[10] Caesar in citeriōre Galliā crēbrī ad eum rūmōrēs afferēbantur, litterīsque item Labiēnī certior fīēbat, omnēs Bélgās[11] contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsidēsque inter sē dare.

Hīs nūntiīs[12] litterīsque commōtus Caesar duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā novās cōnscrīpsit et initā aestāte,[13] in ulteriōrem Galliam quī[14] dēdūceret,[1] Q. Pedium lēgātum mīsit. Ipse, cum prīmum pābulī cōpia esse inciperet,[10] ad exercitum vēnit.

[1] § 366.
[2] § 528.
[3] *Until.*
[4] § 87.
[5] **prohibitūrum** = **sē prohibitūrum esse.**
[6] § 336.
[7] *Whether.*
[8] § 424.
[9] § 87.
[10] § 491.
[11] § 327.
[12] § 229.
[13] § 484 (*a*), 1.
[14] § 417.

Dat negōtium Senonibus reliquīsque Gallīs, quī fīnitimī Belgīs erant, utī ea, quae apud eōs gerantur, cognōscant[1] sēque dē hīs rēbus certiōrem faciant.[1] Hī cōnstanter omnēs nūntiāvērunt, manūs[2] cōgī,[3] exercitum in ūnum locum condūcī.[3] Rē frūmentāriā comparātā[4] castra movet diēbusque[5] circiter quīndecim ad fīnēs Belgārum pervēnit.

The Remi Declare Their Loyalty to Caesar

Eō cum vēnisset, Rēmī ad eum lēgātōs Iccium et Andecumborium, prīmōs cīvitātis, mīsērunt, quī dīcerent,[1] sē suaque omnia in fidem atque potestātem populī Rōmānī permittere, neque sē cum reliquīs Belgīs cōnsēnsisse neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāsse, parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidīs recipere et frūmentō cēterīsque rēbus iuvāre; reliquōs omnēs Belgās in armīs esse, Germānōsque, quī cis Rhēnum incolant,[6] sēsē cum hīs coniūnxisse.

Caesar Finds out the Strength of the Enemy

Cum ab hīs quaereret, quae cīvitātēs quantaeque in armīs essent[7] et quid in bellō possent,[7] sīc reperiēbat: plērōsque Belgās[2] esse ortōs ab Germānīs Rhēnumque antīquitus trāductōs propter locī fertilitātem ibi cōnsēdisse. Plūrimum[8] inter eōs Bellovacōs et virtūte[9] et auctōritāte[9] et hominum numerō[9] valēre;[3] hōs posse cōnficere armāta mīlia centum; pollicitōs ex eō numerō ēlēcta sexāgintā, tōtīusque bellī imperium sibi postulāre.

Suessiōnēs suōs esse fīnitimōs; lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possidēre. Apud eōs fuisse rēgem nostrā etiam memoriā Dīviciācum, tōtīus Galliae potentissimum; nunc esse rēgem Galbam; oppida habēre numerō XII, pollicērī mīlia armāta quīnquāgintā; totidem Nerviōs; quīndecim mīlia Atrebātēs, Ambiānōs decem mīlia, Morinōs XXV mīlia, Menapiōs VII

---

[1] § 366. [2] § 327. [3] § 323. [4] § 484. [5] § 182.
[6] Subjunctive because it is a subordinate verb in indirect discourse.
[7] § 424. [8] § 405. [9] § 238.

mīlia, Caletōs x mīlia, Veliocassēs et Viromanduōs totidem, Aduatucōs xix mīlia; Condrūsōs, Eburōnēs, Caerōsōs, Caemanōs, quī ūnō nōmine Germānī appellantur, arbitrārī ad xl mīlia.

Caesar Gives Directions to the Remi

Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus omnem senātum [1] ad sē convenīre prīncipumque līberōs obsidēs [2] ad sē addūcī iussit. Quae omnia ab hīs dīligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Dīviciācum Aeduum magnopere cohortātus docet, quantō opere reī pūblicae commūnisque salūtis [3] intersit [4] manūs hostium distinērī. Id fierī posse,[5] sī suās cōpiās Aeduī in fīnēs Bellovacōrum intrōdūxerint [6] et eōrum agrōs populārī coeperint. Hīs datīs mandātīs eum ā sē dīmittit.

Caesar Crosses the River and Fortifies His Camp

Postquam omnēs Belgārum cōpiās [1] ad sē venīre vīdit, flūmen [7] Axonam, quod est in extrēmīs Rēmōrum fīnibus, exercitum [7] trādūcere mātūrāvit atque ibi castra posuit. In eō flūmine pōns erat. Ibi praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis Q. Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum sex cohortibus relinquit. Castra in altitūdinem pedum [8] xii vāllō fossāque duodēvīgintī pedum mūnīre iubet.

The Belgians Attack Bibrax

Ab hīs castrīs oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine [9] Bibrax aberat mīlia passuum octō. Id ex itinere Belgae oppugnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentātum est. Belgārum oppugnātiō est haec. Ubi, circumiectā [10] multitūdine hominum tōtīs moenibus,[11] undique in mūrum lapidēs iacī coeptī sunt,[12] mūrusque dēfēnsōribus [13]

---

[1] § 327. [2] § 221. [3] Genitive after the impersonal verb **intersit**.
[4] § 424. [5] § 323.
[6] Subjunctive because it is a subordinate verb in indirect discourse.
[7] **Trādūcere** governs two accusatives.
[8] § 464 (*a*). [9] § 238. [10] § 484. [11] § 440.
[12] Passive voice when followed by a passive infinitive. [13] § 336.

nūdātus est, testūdine factā succēdunt mūrumque subruunt. Quod tum facile fīēbat. Nam cum tanta multitūdō lapidēs ac tēla conicerent, in mūrō cōnsistendī[1] potestās erat nūllī.[2] Cum fīnem oppugnandī nox fēcisset, Iccius Rēmus, quī tum oppidō[3] praefuerat, nūntium ad eum mittit: nisi subsidium sibi submittātur,[4] sēsē diūtius sustinēre nōn posse.[5]

Caesar Sends Relief to the Town, and the Belgians March against Him

Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar īsdem[6] ducibus[7] ūsus, quī nūntiī[7] ab Icciō vēnerant, sagittāriōs et funditōrēs subsidiō[8] oppidānīs mittit; quōrum adventū hostibus[9] spēs potiundī[10] oppidī discessit. Paulisper apud oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī, omnibus vīcīs[11] aedificiīsque, quōs adīre potuerant, incēnsīs, ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiīs[12] contendērunt et ab mīlibus[13] passuum minus duōbus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut fūmō atque ignibus significābātur, amplius mīlibus passuum octō in lātitūdinem patēbant.

Caesar Prepares for Battle

Caesar prīmō et propter multitūdinem hostium et propter eximiam opīniōnem virtūtis proeliō[9] supersedēre statuit; cotīdiē tamen equestribus proeliīs, quid hostis virtūte posset[14] et quid nostrī audērent, perīclitābātur. Ubi nostrōs nōn esse īnferiōrēs intellēxit, ab utrōque latere eius collis trānsversam fossam obdūxit circiter passuum CD et ad extrēmās fossās castella cōnstituit ibique tormenta collocāvit, nē hostēs ab lateribus pugnantēs suōs circumvenīre possent. Hōc factō, duābus legiōnibus, quās proximē cōnscrīpserat, in castrīs relīctīs, ut subsidiō dūcī possent, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castrīs in aciē cōnstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castrīs ēductās īnstrūxerant.

---

[1] § 531. [2] § 528. [3] § 440.
[4] Subjunctive of subordinate clause in indirect discourse. [5] § 323.
[6] § 389. [7] § 221. [8] § 522. [9] § 336. [10] § 533.
[11] § 484. [12] § 136. [13] § 272. [14] § 424.

The Belgians Attempt to Cut Off Caesar's Supplies

Palūs erat nōn magna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Ubi neutrī trānseundī initium faciunt Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. Hostēs ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt. Ibi vadīs repertīs partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnātī sunt, eō cōnsiliō,[1] ut, sī possent,[2] castellum, cui[3] praeerat Q. Titūrius lēgātus, expugnārent[4] pontemque interscinderent, sī minus potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur,[4] quī magnō nōbīs ūsuī[5] ad bellum gerendum[6] erant, commeātūque[7] nostrōs prohibērent.

The Belgians Are Defeated and Dispersed

Caesar certior factus ab Titūriō omnem equitātum et funditōrēs sagittāriōsque pontem trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Ācriter in eō locō pugnātum est.[8] Hostēs impedītōs nostrī[9] in flūmine aggressī magnum eōrum numerum occīdērunt. Hostēs ubi et dē expugnandō oppidō[10] et dē flūmine trānseundō spem sē fefellisse intellēxērunt neque nostrōs in locum inīquiōrem prōgredī pugnandī[11] causā vīdērunt, atque ipsōs rēs frūmentāria dēficere coepit, cōnsiliō convocātō, cōnstituērunt optimum esse, domum[12] suam quemque revertī, quod Aeduōs fīnibus Bellovacōrum appropinquāre cognōverant.

Eā rē cōnstitūtā[13] secundā vigiliā[14] magnō cum strepitū[15] ac tumultū castrīs[7] ēgressī nūllō certō ōrdine neque imperiō, cum sibi quisque prīmum itineris locum peteret[16] et domum pervenīre properāret, fēcērunt, ut cōnsimilis fugae[17] profectiō vidērētur.[18]

They Are Pursued by the Roman Army, and Many Are Slain

Hāc rē statim Caesar per speculātōrēs cognitā, īnsidiās veritus, quod, quā dē causā discēderent,[19] nōndum perspexerat,

---

[1] § 229. [2] Subjunctive by attraction. [3] § 440. [4] § 366.
[5] § 522. [6] § 536, 3. [7] § 336. [8] Fighting was carried on.
[9] § 441[2]. [10] § 533. [11] § 531. [12] § 299. [13] § 484. [14] § 182.
[15] § 151. [16] § 492. [17] § 258. [18] § 402. [19] § 424.

exercitum equitātumque castrīs continuit. Prīmā lūce[1] cōnfīrmātā rē ab explōrātōribus, omnem equitātum, quī novissimum agmen morārētur,[2] praemīsit. Hīs[3] Q. Pedium et L. Aurunculēium Cottam lēgātōs praefēcit. T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus subsequī iussit. Hī novissimōs adortī et multa mīlia passuum prōsecūtī magnam multitūdinem eōrum fugientium concīdērunt. Sub occāsum sōlis sequī dēstitērunt sēque in castra, ut erat imperātum, recēpērunt.

Caesar Attacks the Suessiones, and Their Chief Town, Noviodunum, Surrenders

Caesar, in fīnēs Suessiōnum, quī proximī Rēmīs erant, exercitum dūxit et magnō itinere[4] ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex itinere oppugnāre cōnātus, quod vacuum ab dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitūdinem fossae mūrīque altitūdinem, paucīs dēfendentibus,[5] expugnāre nōn potuit. Castrīs mūnītīs, vīneās agere coepit. Interim omnis ex fugā Suessiōnum multitūdō in oppidum proximā nocte convēnit. Celeriter vīneīs[6] ad oppidum āctīs, aggere iactō turribusque cōnstitūtīs, magnitūdine[7] operum, quae neque vīderant ante Gallī neque audierant, et celeritāte[7] Rōmānōrum permōtī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditiōne mittunt et, petentibus Rēmīs, ut cōnservārentur, impetrant.

The Bellovaci Come and Seek Peace

Caesar, obsidibus acceptīs prīmīs[8] cīvitātis atque ipsīus Galbae rēgis duōbus fīliīs, armīsque omnibus ex oppidō trāditīs, in dēditiōnem Suessiōnēs accēpit exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūcit. Quī cum sē suaque omnia in oppidum Brātuspantium contulissent, atque ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter mīlia passuum quīnque abesset, omnēs maiōrēs nātū[9] ex oppidō

---

[1] § 182. [2] § 366. [3] § 440. [4] By a forced march. [5] § 484 (a) 4.
[6] § 484. [7] § 229. [8] § 221. [9] § 2?8.

ēgressī manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce significāre[1] coepērunt, sēsē[2] in eius fidem ac potestātem venīre neque contrā populum Rōmānum armīs contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset[3] castraque ibi pōneret, puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō passīs[4] manibus suō mōre[5] pācem ab Rōmānīs petiērunt.

Diviciacus Pleads for the Bellovaci

Prō hīs Dīviciācus facit verba: Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fidē atque amīcitiā cīvitātis Aeduae fuisse: impulsōs ā suīs prīncipibus et ab Aeduīs dēfēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Quī[6] eius cōnsiliī prīncipēs fuissent, quod intellegerent quantam calamitātem cīvitātī[7] intulissent,[8] in Britanniam profūgisse. Petere nōn sōlum Bellovacōs, sed etiam prō hīs Aeduōs, ut suā clēmentiā[9] ac mānsuētūdine in eōs ūtātur.

Caesar Accepts the Surrender

Caesar honōris Dīviciācī atque Aeduōrum causā sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōnservātūrum dīxit; quod erat cīvitās magnā inter Belgās auctōritāte[10] atque hominum multitūdine[11] praestābat, sescentōs obsidēs poposcit. Hīs trāditīs omnibusque armīs ex oppidō collātīs, ab eō locō in fīnēs Ambiānōrum pervēnit, quī sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdidērunt.

SELECTIONS FROM BOOK IV

Caesar Plans an Expedition to Britain

Caesar in Britanniam proficīscī contendit. Neque praeter mercātōrēs illō[12] adit quisquam, neque hīs ipsīs quicquam praeter ōram maritimam atque eās regiōnēs, quae sunt contrā Galliās, nōtum est. Itaque vocātīs ad sē undique mercātōribus, neque quanta esset[13] īnsulae magnitūdō, neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent[13] neque quī essent[13] ad maiōrum nāvium multitūdinem idōneī portūs, reperīre poterat.

---

[1] § 210. [2] § 327. [3] § 491. [4] § 484. [5] § 151.
[6] Supply **eōs** as subject of **profūgisse** and antecedent of **quī**. [7] § 440.
[8] § 424. [9] § 389. [10] § 464. [11] § 238. [12] Adverb. [13] § 424.

He Finds Out All He Can about the Island

Ad haec cognōscenda, idōneum esse arbitrātus C. Volusēnum cum nāvī longā praemittit. Huic mandat, ut ad sē quam prīmum revertātur. Interim cōnsiliō eius cognitō et per mercātōrēs perlātō ad Britannōs, ā complūribus īnsulae cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt, quī polliceantur[1] obsidēs dare atque imperiō populī Rōmānī obtemperāre. Quibus audītīs, eōs domum remittit, et cum iīs Commium, cuius et virtūtem et cōnsilium probābat et quem sibi fidēlem esse arbitrābātur, mittit. Huic imperat, quās possit,[2] adeat cīvitātēs sēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiet.

He Crosses, and on Landing Is Attacked by the Britons

Hōrā diēī circiter quartā cum prīmīs nāvibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōnspexit. Cuius locī haec[3] erat nātūra, atque ita montibus angustē mare continēbātur, utī ex locīs superiōribus in lītus tēlum adigī posset. Interim lēgātīs convocātīs et quae ex Volusēnō cognōvisset,[4] et quae fierī vellet,[4] ostendit.

At barbarī, cōnsiliō Rōmānōrum cognitō, praemissō equitātū reliquīs cōpiīs[5] subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus ēgredī prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās, quod nāvēs propter magnitūdinem nisi in altō cōnstituī nōn poterant, mīlitibus[6] autem ignōtīs locīs, magnō et gravī onere armōrum pressīs,[7] simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum[8] et in flūctibus cōnsistendum[8] et cum hostibus erat pugnandum,[8] cum illī aut ex āridō aut paulum in aquam prōgressī omnibus membrīs expedītīs, nōtissimīs locīs audācter tēla conicerent.

---

[1] § 366. [2] Subjunctive by attraction. [3] Such.
[4] § 424. [5] § 136. [6] § 546.
[7] Agrees with mīlitibus.
[8] Passive periphrastic used impersonally.

The Standard Bearer of the Tenth Legion Sets an Example of Bravery

Atque nostrīs mīlitibus cunctantibus, maximē propter altitūdinem maris, quī decimae legiōnis aquilam ferēbat, "Dēsilīte," inquit, "commīlitōnēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere; ego certē meum reī pūblicae atque imperātōrī officium praestiterō." Hoc cum vōce magnā dīxisset, sē ex nāvī prōiēcit atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostrī cohortātī inter sē ex nāvī dēsiluērunt.

After a Bitter Struggle the Britons Are Forced to Flee

Pugnātum est ab utrīsque ācriter. Nostrī tamen, quod neque ōrdinēs servāre neque signa subsequī poterant, magnopere perturbābantur; hostēs vērō, nōtīs omnibus vadīs, ubi ex lītore aliquōs singulārēs ex nāvī ēgredientēs cōnspexerant, plūrēs[1] paucōs circumsistēbant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, hīs subsidia submittēbat. Nostrī, simul in āridō cōnstitērunt, in hostēs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt.

They Make Peace

Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīsērunt; obsidēs datūrōs, quaeque imperāsset factūrōs sēsē pollicitī sunt. Caesar quod bellum sine causā intulissent obsidēs imperāvit; quōrum illī partem statim dedērunt, partem paucīs diēbus sēsē datūrōs dīxērunt.

SELECTIONS FROM BOOK VI

The Two Classes of Gallic Nobility; the Knights and the Druids

In omnī Galliā eōrum hominum, quī aliquō sunt numerō atque honōre, genera sunt duo. Dē hīs duōbus generibus

---

[1] *Several.*

alterum est druidum,[1] alterum equitum.[1] Illī rēbus dīvīnīs intersunt, ad eōs magnus adulēscentium numerus disciplīnae causā concurrit, magnōque hī sunt apud eōs honōre. Ferē dē omnibus contrōversiīs pūblicīs prīvātīsque cōnstituunt. Hīs autem omnibus druidibus[2] praeest ūnus, quī summam inter eōs habet auctōritātem. Hūc omnēs undique, quī contrōversiās habent, conveniunt eōrumque dēcrētīs iūdiciīsque pārent.

Privileges of the Druids

Druidēs ā bellō abesse cōnsuērunt neque tribūta ūnā cum reliquīs pendunt. Tantīs excitātī praemiīs multī in disciplīnam conveniunt et ā parentibus mittuntur. Multa dē sīderibus atque eōrum mōtū, dē terrārum magnitūdine, dē rērum nātūrā, dē deōrum immortālium vī ac potestāte disputant.

The Gods of the Gauls and Their Attributes

Deōrum[3] maximē Mercurium colunt: huius sunt plūrima simulācra; hunc omnium inventōrem artium ferunt, hunc viārum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad quaestūs pecūniae mercātūrāsque habēre vim maximam arbitrantur. Post hunc Apollinem et Mārtem et Iovem et Minervam. Dē hīs eandem ferē, quam reliquae gentēs, habent opīniōnem: Apollinem morbōs dēpellere, Minervam operum atque artificiōrum initia trādere, Iovem imperium caelestium tenēre, Mārtem bella regere.

Huic, cum proeliō dīmicāre cōnstituērunt, ea, quae bellō cēperint, plērumque dēvovent: cum superāvērunt, animālia capta immolant, reliquās rēs in ūnum locum cōnferunt. Multīs in cīvitātibus hārum rērum tumulōs cōnspicārī licet; neque saepe accidit, ut quispiam aut capta apud sē occultāre aut posita tollere audēret, gravissimumque eī reī supplicium cum cruciātū cōnstitūtum est.
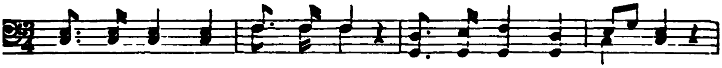
---

[1] Genitive after **est** meaning *composed of*.
[2] § 440.
[3] § 283, depending on **maximē**.

GAUDEAMUS IGITUR

Student Song
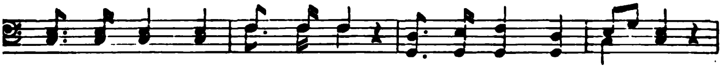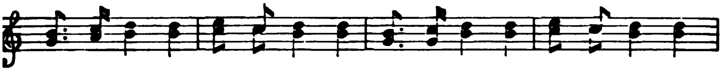


1. Gau - de - a - mus i - gi - tur, Ju - ve - nes dum su - mus;
2. U - bi sunt, qui an - te nos In mun-do fu - e - re?
3. Vi - ta nos - tra bre - vis est Bre - vi fi - ni - e - tur,
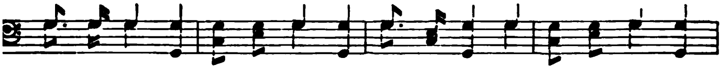




Gau - de - a - mus i - gi - tur, Ju - ve - nes dum su - mus;
U - bi sunt, qui an - te nos In mun-do fu - e - re?
Vi - ta nos - tra bre - vis est Bre - vi fi - ni - e - tur,



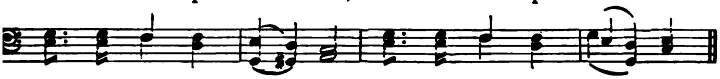


Post ju-cun-dam ju - ven - tu - tem, Post mo-les - tam se - nec - tu - tem,
Tran - se - as ad su - pe - ros, A - be - as ad in - fe - ros,
Ve - nit mors ve - lo - ci - ter, Ra - pit nos a - tro - ci - ter,





Nos ha - be - bit hu - mus, Nos ha - be - bit hu - mus.
Quos si vis vi - de - re, Quos si vis vi - de - re.
Ne - mi - ni par - ce - tur, Ne - mi - ni par - ce - tur.
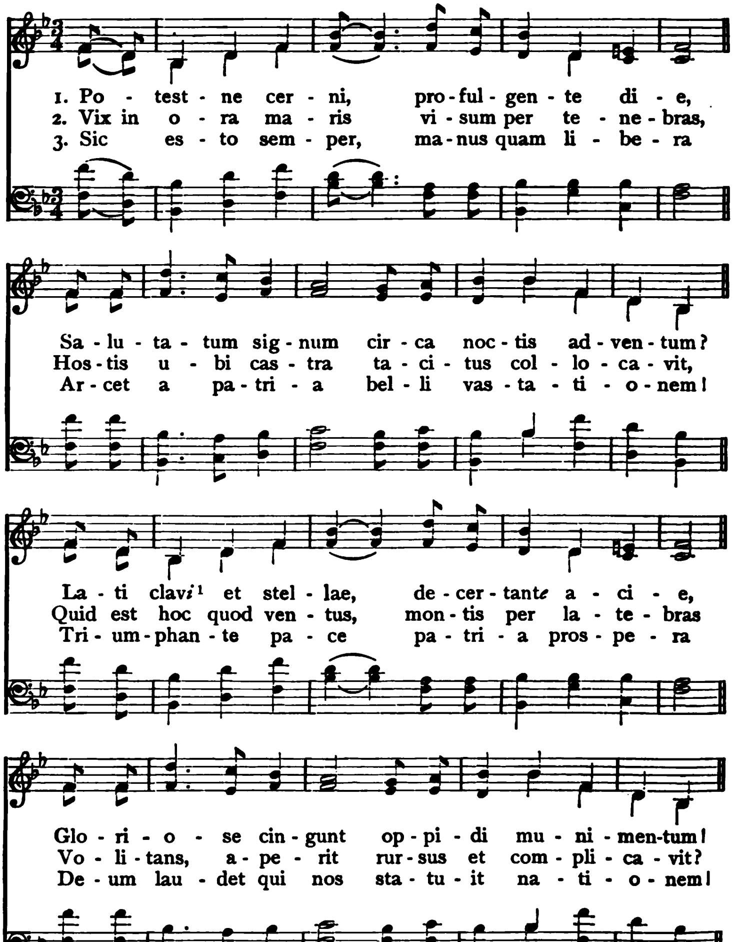


4. Alma mater floreat,
   Quæ nos educavit,
   Caros et commilitones,
   Dissitas in regiones
   Sparsos, congregavit.
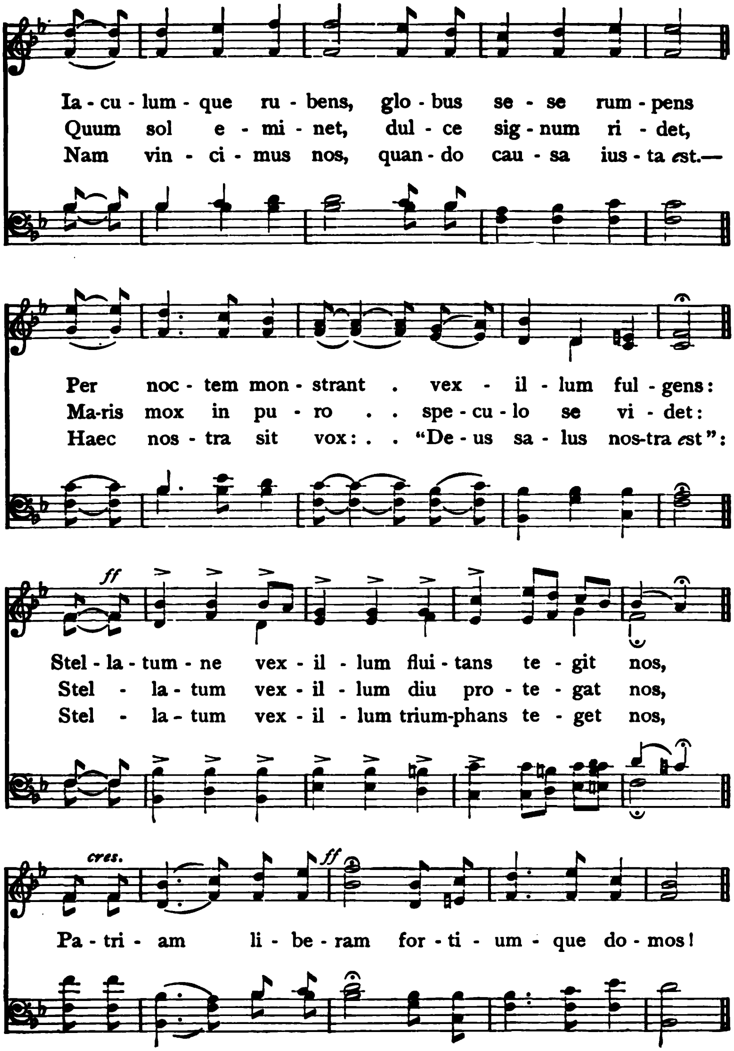
5. Vivat et res publica
   Et qui illam regit,
   Vivat nostra civitas,
   Mæcenatum caritas,
   Quæ nos hic protegit.

VEXILLUM STELLATUM

Anthony F. Geyser, S. J. — John S. Smith

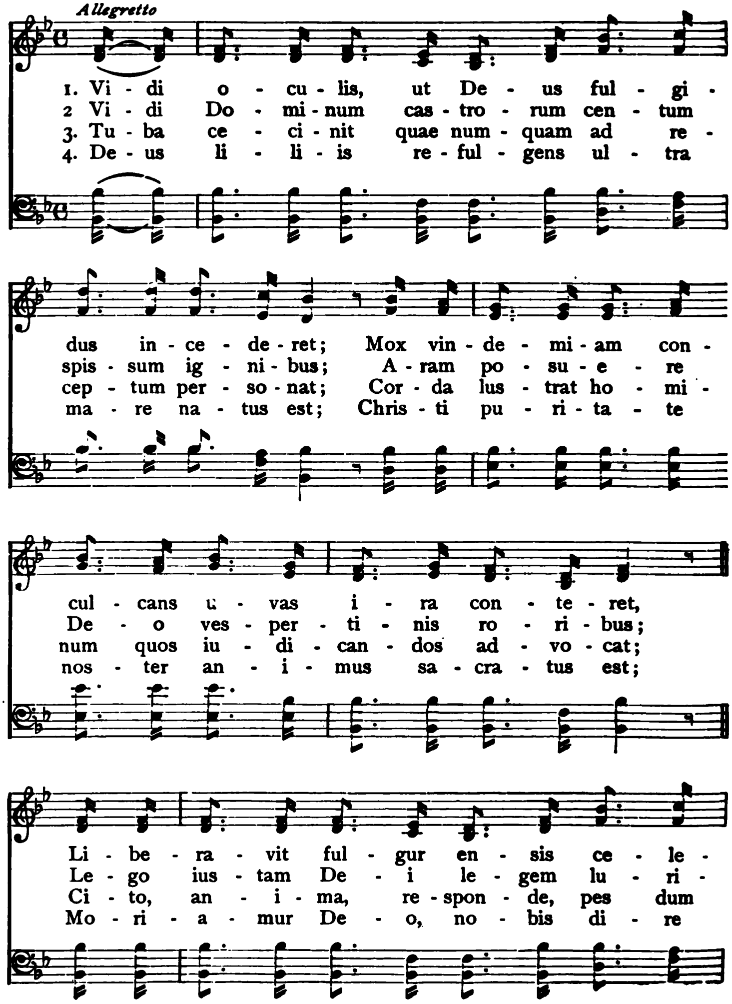


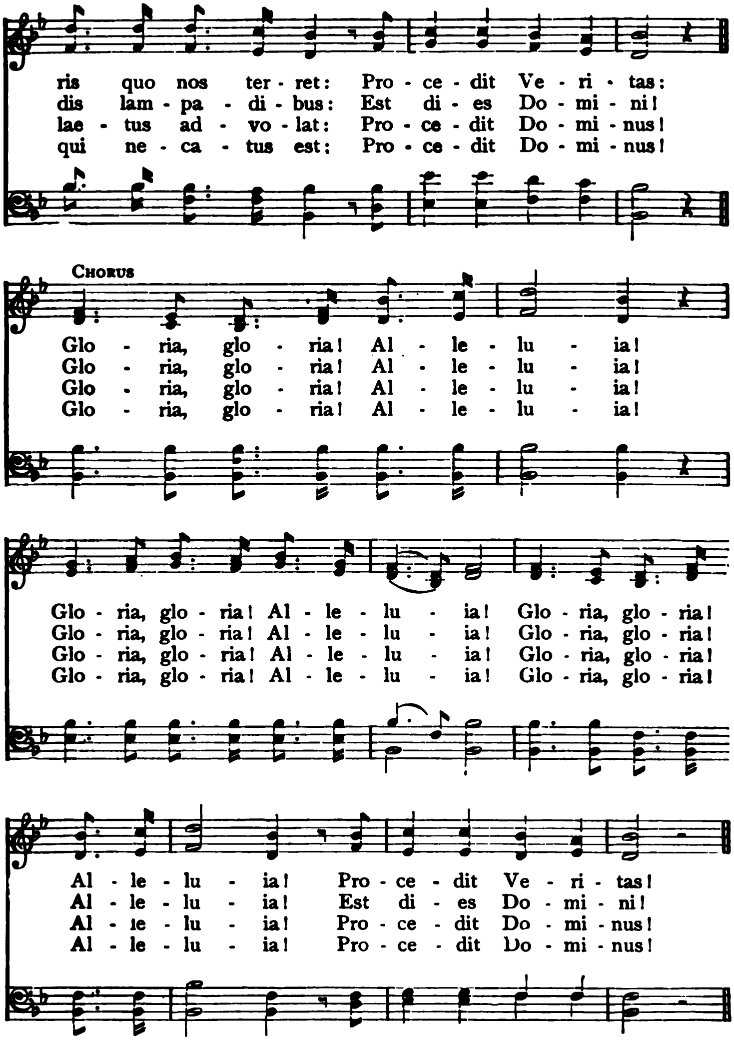
[1] Letters printed in italics are elided in singing.


Ia - cu - lum - que ru - bens, glo - bus se - se rum - pens
Quum sol e - mi - net, dul - ce sig - num ri - det,
Nam vin - ci - mus nos, quan - do cau - sa ius - ta est.—
Per noc - tem mon - strant . vex - il - lum ful - gens:
Ma-ris mox in pu - ro . . spe - cu - lo se vi - det:
Haec nos - tra sit vox: . . "De - us sa - lus nos-tra est":
ff
Stel - la - tum - ne vex - il - lum flui - tans te - git nos,
Stel - la - tum vex - il - lum diu pro - te - gat nos,
Stel - la - tum vex - il - lum trium-phans te - get nos,
cres.
ff
Pa - tri - am li - be - ram for - ti - um - que do - mos!

REI PUBLICAE PAEAN MILITARIS

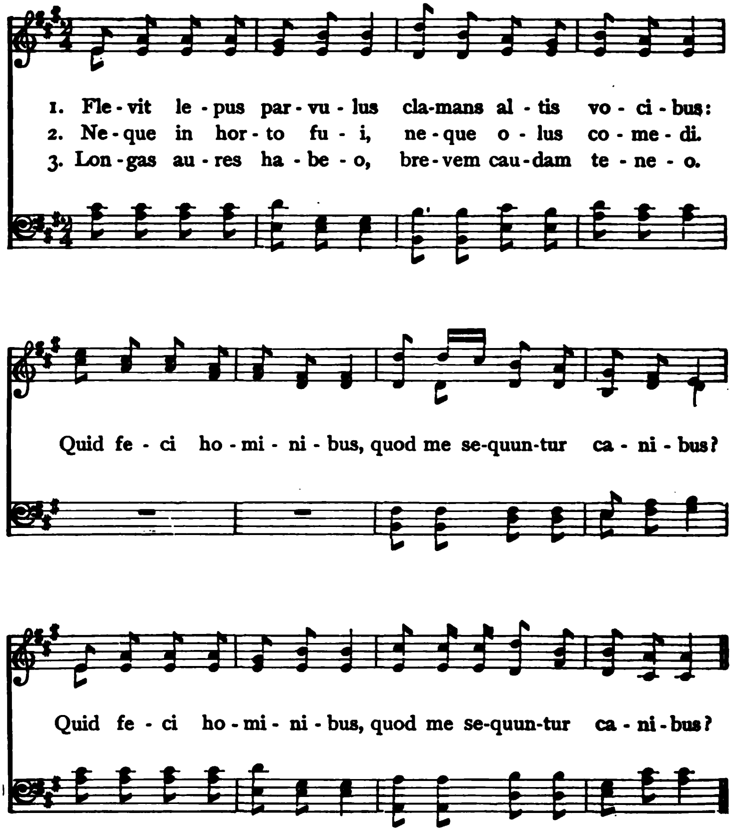
ANTHONY F. GEYSER WILLIAM STEFFE




ris quo nos ter - ret: Pro - ce - dit Ve - ri - tas:
dis lam - pa - di - bus: Est di - es Do - mi - ni!
lae - tus ad - vo - lat: Pro - ce - dit Do - mi - nus!
qui ne - ca - tus est: Pro - ce - dit Do - mi - nus!
Chorus
Glo - ria, glo - ria! Al - le - lu - ia!
Glo - ria, glo - ria! Al - le - lu - ia!
Glo - ria, glo - ria! Al - le - lu - ia!
Glo - ria, glo - ria! Al - le - lu - ia!
Glo - ria, glo - ria! Al - le - lu - ia! Glo - ria, glo - ria!
Glo - ria, glo - ria! Al - le - lu - ia! Glo - ria, glo - ria!
Glo - ria, glo - ria! Al - le - lu - ia! Glo - ria, glo - ria!
Glo - ria, glo - ria! Al - le - lu - ia! Glo - ria, glo - ria!
Al - le - lu - ia! Pro - ce - dit Ve - ri - tas!
Al - le - lu - ia! Est di - es Do - mi - ni!
Al - le - lu - ia! Pro - ce - dit Do - mi - nus!
Al - le - lu - ia! Pro - ce - dit Do - mi - nus!

FLEVIT LEPUS PARVULUS

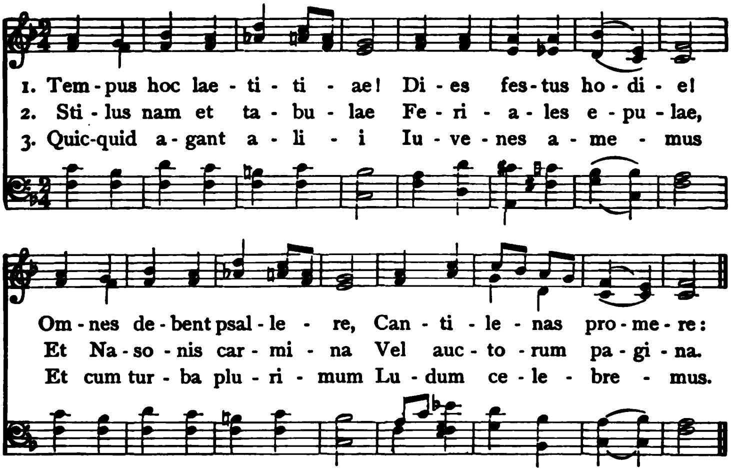
16th Century Student Song



4. Leves pedes habeo, magnum saltum facio. Quid etc.
5. Domus mea silva est, lectus meus durus est. Quid etc.

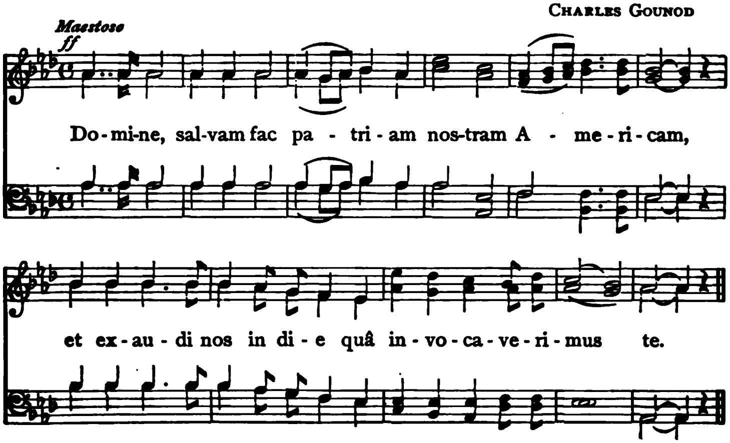
DIES FESTUS HODIE

C. M. Von Weber, 1826
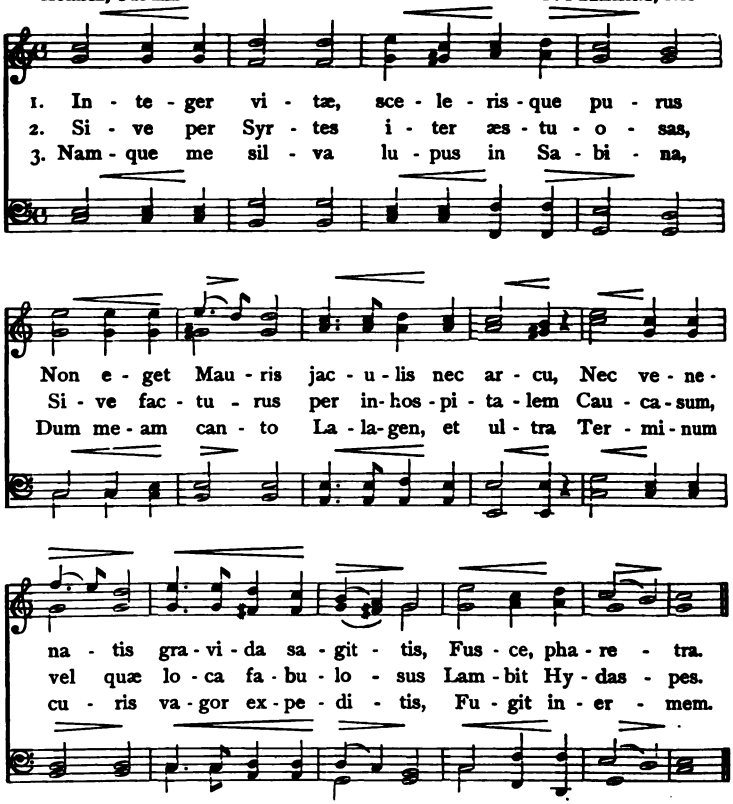


DOMINE SALVAM FAC

Charles Gounod



INTEGER VITAE

HORACE, Ode xxii — F. FLEMMING, 1810



The pure in life and free from crime needs no Moorish darts nor bow, nor, my Fuscus, a quiver laden with poisoned arrows, whether he means to journey over the boiling Syrtes, or over the inhospitable Caucasus, or the places laved by storied Hydaspes. For from me, whilst singing my Lalagé in my Sabine wood, and roving beyond its bound with cares cast aside, there fled a wolf, unarmed as I was.

Translated by WILLIAM COUTTS.

APPENDIX

alterum est druidum,[1] alterum equitum.[1] Illī rēbus dīvīnīs intersunt, ad eōs magnus adulēscentium numerus disciplīnae causā concurrit, magnōque hī sunt apud eōs honōre. Ferē dē omnibus contrōversiīs pūblicīs prīvātīsque cōnstituunt. Hīs autem omnibus druidibus[2] praeest ūnus, quī summam inter eōs habet auctōritātem. Hūc omnēs undique, quī contrōversiās habent, conveniunt eōrumque dēcrētīs iūdiciīsque pārent.

Privileges of the Druids

Druidēs ā bellō abesse cōnsuērunt neque tribūta ūnā cum reliquīs pendunt. Tantīs excitātī praemiīs multī in disciplīnam conveniunt et ā parentibus mittuntur. Multa dē sīderibus atque eōrum mōtū, dē terrārum magnitūdine, dē rērum nātūrā, dē deōrum immortālium vī ac potestāte disputant.

The Gods of the Gauls and Their Attributes

Deōrum[3] maximē Mercurium colunt: huius sunt plūrima simulācra; hunc omnium inventōrem artium ferunt, hunc viārum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad quaestūs pecūniae mercātūrāsque habēre vim maximam arbitrantur. Post hunc Apollinem et Mārtem et Iovem et Minervam. Dē hīs eandem ferē, quam reliquae gentēs, habent opīniōnem: Apollinem morbōs dēpellere, Minervam operum atque artificiōrum initia trādere, Iovem imperium caelestium tenēre, Mārtem bella regere.

Huic, cum proeliō dīmicāre cōnstituērunt, ea, quae bellō cēperint, plērumque dēvovent: cum superāvērunt, animālia capta immolant, reliquās rēs in ūnum locum cōnferunt. Multīs in cīvitātibus hārum rērum tumulōs cōnspicārī licet; neque saepe accidit, ut quispiam aut capta apud sē occultāre aut posita tollere audēret, gravissimumque eī reī supplicium cum cruciātū cōnstitūtum est.
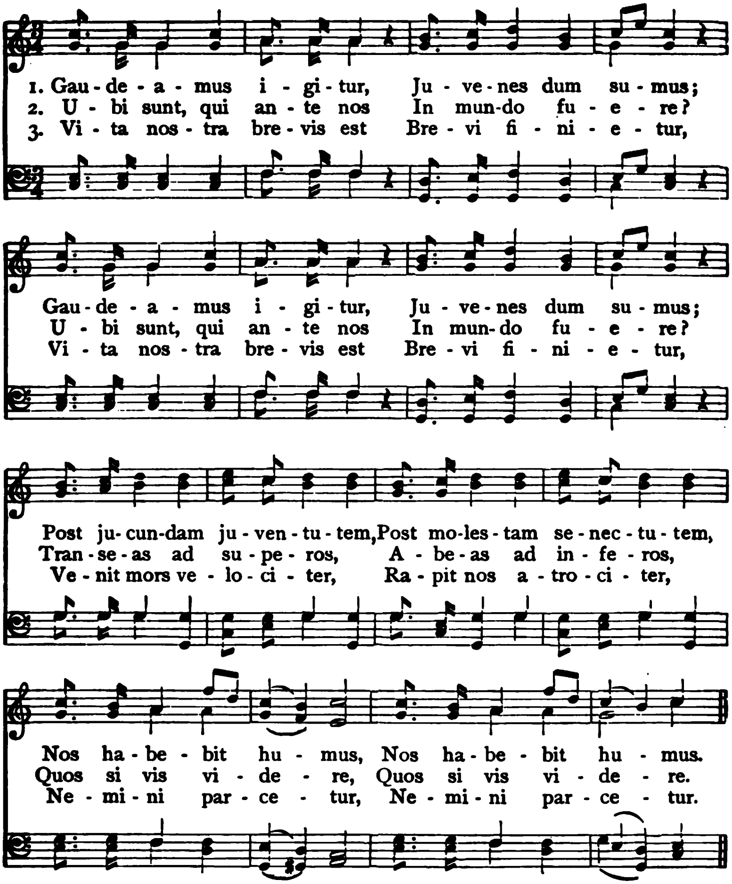
---

[1] Genitive after **est** meaning *composed of.*

[2] § 440. [3] § 283, depending on **maximē**.

GAUDEAMUS IGITUR

Student Song



4. Alma mater floreat,
   Quæ nos educavit,
Caros et commilitones,
Dissitas in regiones
   Sparsos, congregavit.

5. Vivat et res publica
   Et qui illam regit,
Vivat nostra civitas,
Mæcenatum caritas,
   Quæ nos hic protegit.

In General: herb, separate, ambulance, tenement, oculist, spectacles, dentist, matron, relative, pantry, necessary, anniversary, complexion, circus, testament, testimony, motor, dependent, candidate, association, delegate, committee, itinerary, prohibition, secretary, accept, except, conductor, eraser, manual, professor, assignment, ignorance, vacation, college, university, lecture, diligence, discipline, superintendent, examination, privilege, laboratory, finally, similar, occasion, accommodate, preparation, occurrence, effect, affect, compliment, complement, conscience, describe, supersede, opposite, prejudice, counsel, council, possession, simultaneous, benefit, adjacent, comparative, apparatus, temperate, temporal, latitude, lateral.

STATE MOTTOES

Two fifths of the States have Latin mottoes, some of which have already appeared in the Lessons.

Ad astra per aspera	Kansas
Animis opibusque parati dum spiro spero	South Carolina
Cedant arma togae	Wyoming
Crescit eundo	New Mexico
Dirigo	Maine
Ditat Deus	Arizona
E pluribus unum	United States
Ense petit placidam sub libertate quietem	Massachusetts
Excelsior	New York
Justitia omnibus	District of Columbia
Montani semper liberi	West Virginia
Nil sine numine	Colorado
Qui transtulit sustinet	Connecticut
Regnant populi	Arkansas
Salve	Idaho
Salus populi suprema lex esto	Missouri
Scuto bonae voluntatis tuae coronasti nos	Maryland
Si quaeris peninsulam amoenam circumspice	Michigan
Sic semper tyrannis	Virginia

LATIN WORDS IN THE CONSTITUTION

Note the large proportion of words derived from the Latin.[1]

Preamble to the *Constitution*

We, the *people* of the *United States, in order* to *form* a more *perfect union, establish justice, insure domestic tranquillity, provide* for the *common defence, promote* the *general* welfare, *secure* the blessings of *liberty* to ourselves and our *posterity,* do *ordain* and *establish* this *constitution* for the *United States* of *America.*

LATIN PHRASES

Below is a partial list of familiar Latin phrases, some of which have already appeared in the mottoes of the Lessons.

Ad finem
Ad infinitum
Ad modum
Ad nauseam
Ad referendum
Ad valorem
Alias
Alibi
Alma Mater
Alter ego
Ante bellum
Aqua vitae
Bona fide
Carthago delenda est
Cave canem
Ceteris paribus
Corpus Christi
De gustibus non disputandum
De novo
Deo, amicis, patriae
Deo volente *or* Volente deo
Deus vobiscum
Dramatis personae
Dux femina facti
Ecce homo
E pluribus unum
Excelsior
Exeunt
Exit
Ex officio
Ex post facto
Ex tempore
Ex voto
Facsimile
Fiat
Fiat lux
Gloria in excelsis
Habeas corpus
In armis
In esse
In extremis
Infra dignitatem (infra dig.)
In memoriam

[1] Selections from English Classics with which the student is familiar may be treated in the same way.

In pace
In posse
In situ
In statu quo
Inter nos
In toto
Ipse dixit
Ipso facto
Ita lex scripta est
Labor omnia vincit
Lapsus linguae
Lapsus memoriae
Lares et Penates
Laus Deo
Lex non scripta
Lex terrae
Mea culpa
Mens sana in corpore sano
Meum et tuum
Mirabile dictu
Modus operandi
Morituri salutamus
Multum in parvo
Ne plus ultra
Nolens volens
Non compos mentis
Nulli secundus
Omnia ad Dei gloriam
Pater noster
Pater patriae
Pax vobiscum
Per annum
Per capita
Per diem
Per se
Post mortem
Prima facie
Pro bono publico
Pro et con(tra)
Pro rata
Pro tempore
Quid nunc
Requiescat in pace
Res gestae
Semper fidelis
Sine die
Sine dubio
Sine qua non
Sui generis
Summum bonum
Te Deum laudamus
Tempus fugit
Terra firma
Ultimatum
Una voce
Vade mecum
Veni, vidi, vici
Versus
Via
Vice versa
Vivat rex
Vivat res publica
Viva voce
Vox populi, vox Dei

ABBREVIATIONS FROM LATIN WORDS

A.D. — Annō Dominī
Aet. — Aetātis
A.M. — Ante merīdiem; Artium Magister
A.U.C. — Ab urbe conditā
e.g. — exemplī grātiā
etc. — et cētera
i.e. — id est
I.H.S. — In hōc signō; Iēsus hominum salvātor
I.N.R.I. — Iēsus Nazarēnus Rēx Iūdaeōrum
N.B. — Notā bene
P.M. — Post merīdiem
P.S. — Post scrīptum
S.P.Q.R. — Senātus Populusque Rōmānus
vs. — versus

LATIN QUOTATIONS

Quotations from the Latin are constantly met in reading, and in the speech of many people. Below are given some of the best-known, many of which have already appeared in the Lessons.

Alea iacta est. The die is cast. — *Caesar at the Rubicon.*

Ave Caesar! Morituri te salutant. Hail, Caesar! those about to die salute thee! — *Gladiators in the Arena.*

Carpe diem. Seize the opportunity. — *Horace.*

Cui bono? To whose advantage? — *Cicero.*

Cum grano salis. With a grain of salt. — *Pliny.*

De mortuis nil nisi bonum (bene). Of the dead nothing but good (should be spoken or said). — *Diogenes Laertius.*

Diem perdidi. I have lost a day. — *Titus.*

Dira necessitas. Dire necessity. — *Horace.*

Disiecta membra. Scattered members (parts). — *Horace.*

Docendo discitur. We learn by teaching. — *Seneca.*

Eheu fugaces anni! Alas, the fleeting years! — *Horace.*

Errare humanum est. To err is human. — *Seneca.*

Facilis descensus Averno. The descent to Avernus is easy. — *Virgil.*

Factum fieri infectum non potest. You can't undo what's done. — *Terence.*

Festina lente. Make haste slowly. — *Augustus in Suetonius.*

Finis coronat opus. The end crowns the work. — *Ovid.*

Fortes fortuna adiuvat. Fortune favors the brave. — *Terence.*

Fortuna caeca est. Fortune is blind. — *Cicero.*

Hinc illae lacrimae. Hence those tears. — *Terence.*

In hoc signo vinces. In this sign (the cross) thou wilt conquer. — *Constantine.*

In medias res. Into the midst of things. — *Horace.*

In medio tutissimus ibis. You will go safest in the middle. — *Ovid.*

Ipse dixit. He said it himself. — *Cicero.*

Labor omnia vincit. Work conquers everything. — *Virgil.*

Laudator temporis acti. A praiser of times gone by. — *Horace.*

Licentia poetica. Poetic license. — *Seneca.*

Lupus in fabula. The wolf in the fable. — *Terence.*

Mens sana in corpore sano. A sound mind in a sound body. — *Juvenal.*

Nec possum tecum vivere, nec sine te. I can't live with you, nor without you. — *Martial.*

Nil homini certum est. Nothing is sure to man. — *Ovid.*

Nomen et omen. The name and the portent. — *Plautus.*

Non omnia possumus omnes. We can't all do everything. — *Lucilius.*

Non omnis moriar. I shall not wholly perish. — *Horace.*

(Astra castra) Numen lumen. (The stars my camp) God my light. — *Motto of University of Wisconsin.*

Omnia mutantur. All things change. — *Ovid.*

O tempora! O mores! Oh the times! Oh the customs! — *Cicero.*

Pares cum paribus facillime congregantur. Birds of a feather flock together. — *Cicero.*

Per aspera ad astra. To the stars through bolts and bars. — *Seneca.*

Periculum in mora. Danger in delay. — *Livy.*

Potior est, qui prior est. First come first served, *or* The early bird catches the worm. — *Terence.*

Quod erat demonstrandum. Which was to be proved. — *Euclid.*

Quot homines, tot sententiae. As many opinions as people. — *Terence.*

Rara avis. A rare bird. — *Horace.*

Requiescat in pace. Let him rest in peace.

Roma aeterna. Rome the eternal. — *Tibullus.*

Semper idem. Always the same. — *Cicero.*

Summa summarum. The top of the tops (The height of everything). — *Plautus.*

Suum cuique. To every one his own. — *Cicero.*

Tempus edax rerum. Time, the devourer of (all) things. — *Ovid.*

Timeo Danaos et dona ferentes. I fear the Greeks even when bringing gifts. — *Virgil.*

Ultima Thule. The farthest land. — *Virgil.*

Vae victis. Woe to the vanquished! — *Livy.*

Vanitas vanitatum et omnia vanitas. Vanity of vanities, all is vanity. — *Ecclesiastes i, 2.*

Veni, vidi, vici. I came, saw, conquered. — *Caesar.*

Vires acquirit eundo. It gains strength as it goes. — *Virgil.*

Virginibus puerisque. For girls and boys. — *Horace.*

Vita brevis, ars longa. Life is short, art long. — *Hippocrates.*

APPENDIX II

HELPFUL HINTS

In studying Latin you will find that certain words, forms, and constructions occur over and over again. If these are carefully memorized your work will be much easier. In this appendix the commonest of these forms and constructions are so grouped that they can be readily learned. Nothing is included unless it will be of value later on.

The work in Derivatives and Word-formation and the suggestions for a Notebook will also help make your study easier.

In the lists the words are in alphabetical order, except that compounds of verbs are grouped together. The English meanings are printed in a separate column so that either column may be covered with a sheet of paper for rapid memory drill.

FIRST HALF YEAR

Vocabulary. — The following list is to be memorized and drilled. Time-limited tests are recommended; on these tests ninety per cent efficiency should be expected.

(*a*) Verbs

a'mō	*love*	dī'cō	*say*
appel'lō	*name, call*	dō	*give*
au'deō	*dare, venture*	exīs'timō	*think, consider*
cognōs'cō	*learn, ascertain*	exspec'tō	*expect, wait, await*
cōnfīr'mō	*strengthen, encourage, affirm*	ge'rō	*carry on, accomplish*
cōn'sulō	*consult* (w. acc.)	iu'beō	*order*
dē'beō	*owe, ought*	labō'rō	*labor, suffer*
dēfen'dō	*defend*	lī'berō	*set free*

lo'cō	*place, put, set*
nā'vigō	*sail*
nūn'tiō	*announce, declare*
oc'cupō	*seize, occupy*
opor'tet	*it is fitting*
pā'cō	*subdue, pacify*
pe'tō	*seek*
por'tō	*carry*
pro'perō	*hurry*
pu'tō	*think*
relin'quō	*leave behind, abandon*
respon'deō	*answer*
spec'tō	*look at*
ti'meō	*fear*
a'gō	*drive, do*
cō'gō	*drive together, collect, compel*
re'digō	*drive back, reduce, render*
ca'piō	*take*
acci'piō	*accept, receive*
inci'piō	*begin, undertake*
interci'piō	*intercept, cut off*
susci'piō	*undertake*
discē'dō	*go away, depart*
excē'dō	*go out*
prōcē'dō	*go forward, advance*
dū'cō	*lead*
abdū'cō	*lead away*
addū'cō	*lead to, influence*
ēdū'cō	*lead out*
indū'cō	*lead in, induce*
perdū'cō	*lead through, extend*
prōdū'cō	*lead forward*
redū'cō	*lead back*
ha'beō	*have, hold*
adhi'beō	*apply, employ*
prohi'beō	*prohibit, prevent*
mit'tō	*send*
āmit'tō	*send away, lose*
commit'tō	*commit, intrust* (w. proelium = *begin*)
dīmit'tō	*send away*
intermit'tō	*interrupt, discontinue*
permit'tō	*permit, grant, intrust*
praemit'tō	*send ahead*
remit'tō	*send back*
mo'neō	*advise, warn*
admo'neō	*remind*
mo'veō	*move*
commo'veō	*alarm, excite*
permo'veō	*arouse, disturb*
remo'veō	*move back, remove*
pa'rō	*get ready, prepare for*
com'parō	*get together, provide*
pug'nō	*fight*
expug'nō	*capture by assault*
oppug'nō	*attack*
scrī'bō	*write*
cōnscrī'bō	*enroll*
ser'vō	*save, protect*
cōnser'vō	*save fully, preserve*
sum	*be*
ab'sum	*be away*
ad'sum	*be near, be present*
pos'sum	*be able*
te'neō	*hold, keep*
conti'neō	*hold together, contain, confine*
obti'neō	*obtain, hold, have*

perti'neō	*reach, extend, pertain*	prōvi'deō	*foresee, provide*
reti'neō	*hold back, retain*	vo'cō	*call*
susti'neō	*hold up, sustain*	con'vocō	*call together, summon*
vi'deō	*see*	ē'vocō	*call out*

(*b*) **Nouns**

aes'tās	*summer*	fu'ga	*flight*
a'ger	*field*	hi'ems	*winter*
agri'cola	*farmer*	ho'mō	*man*
amīci'tia	*friendship*	impedīmen'tum	*hindrance;* pl., *baggage*
a'nimus	*spirit, life, soul*	iniū'ria	*wrong*
an'nus	*year*	īn'sula	*island*
ar'ma	*arms*	iū'dex	*judge, juror*
auctō'ritās	*influence*	iūdi'cium	*trial, judgment*
auxi'lium	*aid, help*	lēx	*law*
bel'lum	*war*	li'ber	*book*
ca'put	*head*	lī'bertās	*freedom*
cas'tra	*camp*	lin'gua	*tongue, language*
cele'ritās	*speed, swiftness*	lo'cus	*place*
cī'vitās	*citizenship, state*	lūx	*light*
cōnsi'lium	*advice, plan*	mā'ter	*mother*
cōn'sul	*consul*	memo'ria	*memory*
de'us	*god*	mī'les	*soldier*
dīg'nitās	*worth, position*	nātū'ra	*nature*
dīligen'tia	*painstaking, care*	negō'tium	*business, trouble*
dux	*leader*	nō'men	*name*
e'ques	*horseman*	nu'merus	*number*
e'quus	*horse*	offi'cium	*duty, service, courtesy*
exem'plum	*example, precedent*	op'pidum	*town*
fac'tum	*thing done, act, deed*	pa'ter	*father*
fā'ma	*reputation, report*	pāx	*peace*
fī'lia	*daughter*	pecū'nia	*money*
fī'lius	*son*	perī'culum	*trial, danger*
flū'men	*river*	poe'na	*penalty*
fortū'na	*fortune, wealth*	po'pulus	*people*
frā'ter	*brother*	por'ta	*gate*
frūmen'tum	*grain*		

prae'mium	*reward*
praesi'dium	*garrison, guard*
prīn'ceps	*leader, chief man*
proe'lium	*battle*
puel'la	*girl*
pu'er	*boy*
rēgī'na	*queen*
rēg'num	*kingdom*
rēx	*king*
sa'lūs	*safety*
ser'vitūs	*slavery*
ser'vus	*slave*
sig'num	*sign, signal, standard*
sil'va	*forest*
so'cius	*ally, comrade*
so'ror	*sister*
suppli'cium	*punishment*
tem'pus	*time*
ter'ra	*land, earth*
vi'a	*highway, road*
victō'ria	*victory*
vīl'la	*farmhouse*
vir	*man, hero*
vir'tūs	*manliness, courage*
vī'ta	*life*
vōx	*voice, speech, remark*

(*c*) Adverbs, Conjunctions, Prepositions

ā (or) ab	*away from, by*
ad	*to*
ac (or) atque	*and also*
ante	*before* (prep. and adv.)
an'tea	*before* (adv.)
aut	*or, either . . . or*
certē	*certainly, at least*
cum	*with* (prep.)
cūr	*why*
dē	*down from, concerning*
ē (or) ex	*out from*
et	*and, also, even*
etiam	*even*
iam	*by this time, already*
in	*in, on* (w. abl.); *into* (w. acc.)
longē	*far*
-ne	(sign of a question)
nec (neque)	*and not, nor*
neque . . . neque (or) nec . . . nec	*neither, neither . . . nor*
nōn	*not*
nunc	*now*
per	*through*
post	*after, behind* (prep.)
pos'teā	*afterwards* (adv.)
prō	*in front of, on behalf of*
quam	*than* (conj.), *how!* (adv. of degree)
-que	*and*
sed	*but*
trāns	*across*
tum	*then*
u'bi	*where, when*

(*d*) Pronouns and Adjectives

ae′quus	*level, even, just, fair*
al′tus	*high, deep*
amī′cus	*friendly* (as a noun, *friend*)
am′plus	*large, distinguished*
bar′barus	*foreign, barbarous*
bo′nus	*good*
cer′tus	*fixed, certain*
crē′ber	*frequent, thick*
ēgre′gius	*eminent, unusual*
fīni′timus	*neighboring*
hic	*this* (as adj.); *he* (as pron.); *here* (as adv.)
ī′dem	*the same*
ip′se	*self, the very*
il′le	*that, he*
inimī′cus	*hostile* (as noun, *enemy*)
inī′quus	*uneven, unfavorable, unjust*
in′teger	*whole, unimpaired*
is	*this, that* (as adj.); *he* (as pron.)
lī′ber	*free*
lon′gus	*long*
mag′nus	*large*
me′dius	*middle, middle of*
me′us	*my, mine*
nos′ter	*our, ours*
nō′tus	*known*
no′vus	*new*
par′vus	*small*
pau′cī	*few*
prī′mus . . . de′cimus	*first . . . tenth*
pūb′licus	*belonging to the state, official, public*
pul′cher	*beautiful*
quis	*who* (interrogative)
re′liquus	*the rest, remaining, remainder of*
sa′cer	*sacred*
tar′dus	*slow, late*
ti′midus	*fearful*
tu′us	*your, yours*
ū′nus . . . de′cem	*one . . . ten*
vē′rus	*true*
ves′ter	*your, yours*

(*e*) **Division of words into syllables, and quantity.** — From the beginning of the study of Latin careful attention should be given to pronunciation, quantity of vowels, and division into syllables. In written work the pupil should be encouraged to indicate the quantity of the vowels, thus showing that he understands the correct pronunciation.

Inflections. — Frequent time-limited tests on inflections will insure accuracy and speed.

(*a*) *Nouns:* 1st declension.
2d declension.
3d declension — mute and liquid stems.

(*b*) *Adjectives:* 1st and 2d declension.
(*c*) *Comparison* of regular 1st and 2d declension adjectives and the formation of adverbs therefrom.
(*d*) *Pronouns:* the interrogative and the demonstratives.
(*e*) *Verbs:* conjugation of *sum* throughout the indicative.
1st conjugation; indicative, active, and passive.
2d conjugation; indicative, active, and passive.
3d conjugation; indicative, active, and passive.

Principles of Syntax. — The rules involved in the following twelve principles are to be thoroughly memorized and applied in oral and written exercises.

1. Subject nominative.
2. Agreement of verb.
3. Direct object.
4. Agreement of adjective.
5. Predicate nominative.
6. Predicate adjective.
7. Genitive of possessor (including predicate use).
8. Indirect object.
9. Appositive.
10. Ablative of means.
11. Ablative of accompaniment.
12. Ablative of personal agent.

Note. — In the light of investigations into the actual occurrence in high school Latin of various constructions of Syntax (Bryne's *Syntax of High School Latin*), it is believed that the following points can profitably be omitted from the teaching of the first two years: ablative of comparison, ablative of price and penalty, cognate accusative, double accusative, genitive with *refert*, etc., genitive with verbs of feeling, all independent uses of subjunctive mood, clauses after verbs of fearing.

Word Formation.

(*a*) **Prefixes.** — First half year. *ā* (*ab*, *abs*), *ad*, *con* (prepositional and adverbial force), *dē*, *ex* (*ē*), *in* (both prepositional and negative uses).

These prefixes are to be used in two ways: first, to form new Latin verbs from simple verbs; second, to

suggest English derivatives. The simple verbs to be used in this exercise are those which occur in the required vocabularies. For example, in the first half year:

dūcō, *lead* + ab = abdūcō, *lead away.*
+ ad = addūcō, *lead to.*
+ con = condūcō, *lead together.*
+ dē = dēdūcō, *lead down.*
+ ē = ēdūcō, *lead out.*
+ in = indūcō, *lead into.*
+ prō = prōdūcō, *lead forth.*
+ re = redūcō, *lead back.*
+ trāns (trā) = trādūcō, *lead across.*

English derivatives: *adduce, conduce, deduce, educe, induce, conduct, deduct, induct, conducive, deduction,* etc.

Note. — Attention should be called to phonetic changes in Latin compounds; for example, *ad + capiō = accipiō; con + locō = collocō.*

(*b*) **Suffixes.** — Latin words formed by means of suffixes should be observed carefully and compared with the related words. Except in the case of suffixes that have a uniform and easily defined meaning, it is advisable merely to lead the pupils to associate the words concerned. In the first half year the following types of words should be noted:

(1) Nouns from nouns; for example, *virtūs* (*vir*), *servitūs* (*servus*), *cīvitās* (*cīvis*).

(2) Nouns from adjectives; for example, *amīcitia* (*amīcus*), *celeritās* (*celer*), *dignitās* (*dignus*), *dīligentia* (*dīligēns*).

(*c*) **Derivation.** — Since a very large number of English words have come, directly or indirectly, from Latin, special attention should be given to the derivation of such words. Accordingly, ten Latin verbs are assigned for each half year as a basis for study in derivation. From each of these verbs the pupil should be required to make a list of all the more important English derivatives. An optional list of ten verbs has been added for each half year in the belief that many teachers will wish to emphasize even more strongly this feature of the study of Latin.

Required		*Optional*	
1. servō	6. moveō	1. iūdicō	6. habeō
2. locō	7. dūcō	2. pācō	7. moneō
3. vocō	8. mittō	3. parō	8. teneō
4. putō	9. dīcō	4. pugnō	9. agō
5. videō	10. capiō	5. spectō	10. cognōscō

Note. — A suggested form of arrangement in this work follows:

Derivation notebook (specimen page).

Type **1** (without definitions)

locō, locāre, locāvī, locātus — *place.*

locate, local, locality, location, locus, collocate, collocation, dislocate, localization, localize, locally, locative, locomotive, locomotor.

Type **2** (with definitions)

vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus — *call.*

vocation — a *calling*, occupation.
vocational — pertaining to a vocation or *calling*.
vocal — pertaining to voice.
evoke — *call* out.
convoke — *call* together.
vocative — case of *calling*, case of address.
revoke — *call* back, remand.
invoke — *call* upon, ask for.
vociferous — with large *calling* power, with loud tones.
invocation — a *calling* upon, a prayer.

Type **3** (with examples of use in English)

mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus — *send.*

mission — He was sent on a mission to Europe.
missionary — He was sent as a missionary to China.
missive — The letter was a formidable missive.
missile — Stones were the missiles of early warfare.

transmit — They will transmit the message to us.
remission — He preached the remission of sins.
commit — She was committed to his care.
submit — They submitted to the inevitable.
submissive — The slave was not submissive.
omit — Omit the non-essential.

Oral Sentence Work. — Latin into English and English into Latin; daily exercises with books closed. Writing Latin from dictation. Practice in translating easy sentences at hearing.

Latin Readings. — Not less than *five* pages of very easy connected text.

In reading Latin, attention should be given to the phrases or word groups, as in English. In translating Latin, the first step is to observe the word groups and attack them in order. After a passage has been studied and translated, it is well for the pupil to return to the word groups and practice reading the Latin with proper emphasis and expression.

SECOND HALF YEAR

Vocabulary. — The following list is to be memorized and drilled. Time-limited tests are to be continued and emphasized.

(*a*) Verbs

antecē'dō	*go before, precede*	con'citō	*arouse, excite*
appropin'quō	*draw near to, approach*	cōnfī'dō	*trust*
		cu'piō	*desire*
au'diō	*hear*	dē'ligō	*select, choose*
cē'dō	*go, yield*	dēmōn'strō	*point out, show*
coe'pi	*begin*	dē'sum	*be lacking*

do′ceō	*teach, show*
dor′miō	*sleep*
du′bitō	*doubt, hesitate*
ēri′piō	*snatch away*
ignō′rō	*be ignorant of*
impe′diō	*hinder*
im′perō	*command, order*
incen′dō	*set on fire*
invi′deō	*envy*
le′gō	*pick. gather, read*
li′cet	*it is lawful, permitted*
mū′niō	*fortify*
no′ceō	*injure*
ō′dī	*hate*
persuā′deō	*persuade*
perter′reō	*alarm*
praeci′piō	*order, instruct, advise*
praedī′cō	*foretell*
prae′sum	*be in command of*
pre′mō	*press, oppress*
quae′rō	*seek, inquire*
rī′deō	*laugh*
sci′ō	*know*
sen′tiō	*feel, realize*
ser′viō	*serve*
sū′mō	*take, assume*
su′perō	*overcome, excel, surpass*
temp′tō	*test, try, attempt*
trādū′cō	*lead across*
tra′hō	*drag*
vin′cō	*conquer*
vul′nerō	*wound*
clau′dō	*close, confine*
exclū′dō	*shut out*
interclū′dō	*shut off, cut off, stop*
dō	*give*
ab′dō	*put away, hide*
ad′dō	*add*
circum′dō	*put around, surround*
red′dō	*give back*
trā′dō	*hand over*
fa′ciō	*do, make*
cōnfi′ciō	*finish, exhaust*
dēfi′ciō	*fail, revolt, rebel*
exci′piō	*take, accept*
interfi′ciō	*kill*
perfi′ciō	*accomplish*
praefi′ciō	*put in charge of*
refi′ciō	*repair*
satisfa′ciō	*satisfy*
ia′ciō	*throw, hurl*
adi′ciō	*throw to, add*
coni′ciō	*hurl*
dēi′ciō	*throw down*
ēi′ciō	*throw out*
obi′ciō	*throw against, oppose*
prōi′ciō	*throw forward*
rei′ciō	*throw back*
trāi′ciō	*throw across, pierce*
ma′neō	*remain*
perma′neō	*remain, hold out*
rema′neō	*stay behind, remain*
pel′lō	*drive, defeat*
expel′lō	*drive out*
impel′lō	*drive on, excite*
repel′lō	*drive back, repulse*
pō′nō	*put, place*
dēpō′nō	*put down, put aside*
expō′nō	*set forth, explain*
oppō′nō	*put against, oppose*
prōpō′nō	*put before, propose*

ascen′dō	*climb, ascend, mount*
dēscen′dō	*descend*
se′deō	*sit*
obsi′deō	*besiege*
consis′tō	*take one's place, stop*
dēsis′tō	*desist from, cease*
resis′tō	*resist*
spē′rō	*hope*
dēspē′rō	*lose hope, despair*
ex′struō	*pile up, erect*
īn′struō	*arrange*
conten′dō	*struggle, hasten*
osten′dō	*show*
ve′niō	*come*
circumve′niō	*come around, surround*
conve′niō	*come together*
inve′niō	*come upon, find*
perve′niō	*come through, arrive*
reci′piō	*take back* (esp. with se, *withdraw, retreat*), *receive*
submit′tō	*send to the assistance of, yield to*
succēdō	*come up, succeed*

(*b*) **Nouns**

a′ciēs	*line of battle*
adven′tus	*a coming* (*to*), *arrival*
ae′tās	*age*
altitū′dō	*height, depth*
benefi′cium	*kindness*
cī′vis	*citizen*
co′hors	*cohort*
condi′ciō	*condition, terms*
cōnsuētū′dō	*custom, habit*
cō′pia	*supply;* pl., *forces*
cor′nū	*horn, wing* (of army)
cor′pus	*body*
cupi′ditās	*desire, greed*
di′ēs	*day*
difficul′tās	*difficulty*
do′lor	*grief*
do′mus (f.),	*home, house*
equitā′tus	*cavalry*
exer′citus	*army*
ex′itus	*a going forth, outcome, departure*
fi′dēs	*good faith, protection*
fī′nis	*end;* pl., *boundaries, territory*
ge′nus	*race, kind*
hos′tis	*enemy* (of the state)
imperā′tor	*commander, general*
impe′rium	*command, power*
ino′pia	*need, lack*
i′ter	*journey*
iūs	*justice, right*
laus	*praise*
magnitū′dō	*size, importance*
ma′nus (f.)	*hand, group, force*
ma′re	*sea*
mēns	*mind*
mo′dus	*manner*

mōns	*mountain*
mors	*death*
multitū'dō	*multitude*
nāvi'gium	*boat*
nā'vis	*ship*
nox	*night*
ōrā'tiō	*speaking, speech*
ōrdō	*rank, class*
pars	*part*
pas'sus	*pace* (about five feet)
pōns	*bridge*
potes'tās	*power, authority, chance*
ra'tiō	*account, theory, manner*
rēs	*thing*
rēs frūmentā'ria	*grain supplies*
rēs militā'ris	*military affairs, art of war*
rēs pū'blica	*commonwealth, government*
senā'tus	*senate*
spa'tium	*space, time, distance*
spēs	*hope*
ti'mor	*fear*
tur'ris	*tower*
urbs	*city*
vīs	*force, violence;* pl., *strength*
vul'nus	*wound*

(c) Adverbs, Conjunctions, Prepositions

ā'criter	*sharply, fiercely*
am'plē	*fully*
a'pud	*among, at the home of*
au'tem (postpositive)	*moreover, on the other hand*
be'ne	*well*
cele'riter	*swiftly, quickly*
dīligen'ter	*with care*
e'nim (postpositive)	*for*
fa'cile	*easily*
for'titer	*bravely*
gra'viter	*heavily, weightily, seriously*
in'ter	*between, among*
in'terim	*meanwhile*
magno'pere	*greatly*
mul'tum	*much*
nam	*for*
nē . . . qui'dem	*not even*
ob	*on account of*
prop'ter	*on account of*
qui'dem (postpositive)	*indeed, certainly, at least*
quod	*because*
sa'tis	*enough, quite*
sī	*if*
si'ne	*without*
trāns	*across*
vē'rō	*in truth, but*

(*d*) Pronouns and Adjectives

ā'cer	*sharp, keen*
ce'ler	*swift*
cen'tum	*hundred*
commū'nis	*common*
cu'pidus	*desirous, eager*
dex'ter	*right (hand)*
diffi'cilis	*difficult*
ducen'tī	*two hundred*
e'go	*I*
eques'ter	*cavalry*
fa'cilis	*easy*
familiā'ris	*of the household, intimate*
for'tis	*brave*
frūmentā'rius	*pertaining to grain*
gra'vis	*heavy, serious*
idō'neus	*fit, suitable*
immortā'lis	*without death, immortal*
inco'lumis	*unharmed, safe*
le'vis	*light* (in weight)
mīlitā'ris	*military*
mīl'le	*one thousand*
mul'tus	*much, many*
necessā'rius	*necessary, urgent*
nō'bilis	*(knowable), noble, famous*
om'nis	*every;* pl., *all*
pār	*equal*
pedes'ter	*infantry* (adj.)
perī'tus	*skilled, experienced*
plē'nus	*full*
prae'sēns	*present in person*
propin'quus	*near, a relative*
quadringen'tī	*four hundred*
quī	*who*
re'cēns	*fresh, new, recent*
sescen'tī	*six hundred*
si'milis	*like*
singulā'ris	*single, unusual*
sinis'ter	*left (hand)*
su'ī	*himself, herself, themselves*
su'us	*his (her, its, their) own*
tā'lis	*such*
trecen'tī	*three hundred*
tū	*you*
ūn'decim . . . vīgin'tī	*eleven . . . twenty*
vī'vus	*alive*

Inflections. — Frequent time tests on inflections will insure accuracy and speed.

(*a*) *Inflections* of the first half year are to be thoroughly reviewed according to a complete and classified list of typical words to date.

(*b*) *Nouns:* 3d declension; i-stems and apparent consonant stems.
4th declension.
5th declension.

(*c*) *Pronouns:* interrogative, relative, and personal. Illustrate with the relative all case-uses to date.

(*d*) *Adjectives:* comparison and declension of regular adjectives of the 3d declension; for example, *ācer*, *fortis*, *prūdēns*, *audax*. Declension of the comparative. Comparison of *bonus*, *magnus*, *malus*, *parvus*, *multus*.
(*e*) *Adverbs:* adverbs from adjectives of 3d declension: their formation and comparison.
(*f*) *Verbs:* 4th conjugation, indicative, active and passive; the subjunctive, active, and passive of all four conjugations; all infinitives and participles of the four conjugations.

Principles of Syntax.—The twelve principles of syntax of the first half year are to be thoroughly reviewed and the following additional principles taken up:

1. Ablative of cause.
2. Ablative of specification.
3. Ablative of manner.
4. Agreement of relative pronoun.
5. Dative with certain intransitive verbs.
6. Dative with certain adjectives.
7. Ablative of time when or within which.
8. Accusative of duration of time or extent of space.
9. Genitive: subjective, objective (including genitive with adjectives).
10. Genitive and ablative of description.
11. Ablative of separation.
12. Ablative of degree of difference.
13. Clauses of purpose with *ut* (affirmative), *nē* (negative).
14. Sequence of tenses in clauses of purpose.
15. Ablative absolute.

Word Formation.

(*a*) **Prefixes.**—*inter*, *per*, *prae*, *prō*, *sub*.

For suggestions regarding the proper procedure in the study of this list, see outline of work for the first half year (pages 287 and 288).

(*b*) **Suffixes.** — It is important to observe carefully the following typical nouns and to associate them with the verbs from which they are derived:

adventus (*adveniō*), *oppugnātiō* (*oppugnō*), *praesidium* (*praesideō*), *iūdicium* (*iūdicō*).

Similarly the following nouns derived from nouns and adjectives should be noted:

pecūnia (*pecus*), *cupiditās* (*cupiō*, *cupidus*), *potestās* (*possum*, *potēns*), *altitūdō* (*altus*).

Note. — In the second half year, both prefixes and simple verbs already studied are to be reviewed, the new prefixes are to be compounded with the old verbs, and the old prefixes with the new verbs.

(*c*) **Derivation.** — The following *ten* verbs and the more important English words derived from their roots.

Required		*Optional*	
1. nā'vigō	6. vin'cō	1. dō	6. tra'hō
2. do'ceō	7. sū'mō	2. ve'niō	7. pel'lō
3. ti'meō	8. fa'ciō	3. fī'dō	8. cōn'sulō
4. se'deō	9. ia'ciō	4. pō'nō	9. au'deō
5. scrī'bō	10. au'diō	5. ter'reō	10. mū'niō

Oral Sentence Work. — Auditory and vocal practice continued daily with books closed. Writing Latin from dictation continued.

Latin Readings. — Not less than *ten* pages of easy Latin narrative selected from Eutropius's *Breviarium*, or Lhomond's *Viri Romae*, or simple narrative as in numerous selections, such as Ritchie's *Story of Perseus*, and simple Latin stories, as in Heatley's *Gradatim* or other similar collections of interesting stories.

Composition.

(*a*) Practice in translating prepared lessons at hearing and in reproducing orally and in writing incidents taken from the selections read.

(*b*) Practice at regular intervals in writing easy Latin sentences involving the principles of syntax on page 295.

APPENDIX III

INFLECTIONS

NOUNS

563. FIRST DECLENSION

Tuba, f., *trumpet.*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	tuba	tubae
Gen.	tubae	tubārum
Dat.	tubae	tubīs
Acc.	tubam	tubās
Abl.	tubā	tubīs

564. SECOND DECLENSION

	Amīcus, m., *friend.*	**Puer**, m., *boy.*	**Ager**, m., *field.*	**Vir**, m., *man.*	**Bellum**, n., *war.*
			SINGULAR		
Nom.	amīcus	puer	ager	vir	bellum
Gen.	amīcī	puerī	agrī	virī	bellī
Dat.	amīcō	puerō	agrō	virō	bellō
Acc.	amīcum	puerum	agrum	virum	bellum
Abl.	amīcō	puerō	agrō	virō	bellō
			PLURAL		
Nom.	amīcī	puerī	agrī	virī	bella
Gen.	amīcōrum	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	bellōrum
Dat.	amīcīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	bellīs
Acc.	amīcōs	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	bella
Abl.	amīcīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	bellīs

565. THIRD DECLENSION

	Cōnsul, m., *consul.*	**Mīles**, m., *soldier.*	**Frāter**, m., *brother.*	**Flūmen**, n., *river.*
		SINGULAR		
Nom.	cōnsul	mīles	frāter	flūmen
Gen.	cōnsulis	mīlitis	frātris	flūminis
Dat.	cōnsulī	mīlitī	frātrī	flūminī
Acc.	cōnsulem	mīlitem	frātrem	flūmen
Abl.	cōnsule	mīlite	frātre	flūmine

		Plural		
Nom.	cōnsulēs	mīlitēs	frātrēs	flūmina
Gen.	cōnsulum	mīlitum	frātrum	flūminum
Dat.	cōnsulibus	mīlitibus	frātribus	flūminibus
Acc.	cōnsulēs	mīlitēs	frātrēs	flūmina
Abl.	cōnsulibus	mīlitibus	frātribus	flūminibus

	Ignis, m., *fire.*	**Mare**, n., *sea.*	**Hostis**, m., f., *enemy.*	**Urbs**, f., *city.*
		Singular		
Nom.	ignis	mare	hostis	urbs
Gen.	ignis	maris	hostis	urbis
Dat.	ignī	marī	hostī	urbī
Acc.	ignem	mare	hostem	urbem
Abl.	ignī, -e	marī	hoste	urbe
		Plural		
Nom.	ignēs	maria	hostēs	urbēs
Gen.	ignium	marium	hostium	urbium
Dat.	ignibus	maribus	hostibus	urbibus
Acc.	ignīs, -ēs	maria	hostīs, -ēs	urbīs, -ēs
Abl.	ignibus	maribus	hostibus	urbibus

566. Fourth Declension

	Exercitus, m., *army.*		**Cornū**, n., *horn.*	
	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nom.	exercitus	exercitūs	cornū	cornua
Gen.	exercitūs	exercituum	cornūs	cornuum
Dat.	exercituī	exercitibus	cornū	cornibus
Acc.	exercitum	exercitūs	cornū	cornua
Abl.	exercitū	exercitibus	cornū	cornibus

567. Fifth Declension

	Diēs, m. and f., *day.*		**Rēs**, f., *thing.*	
	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nom.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
Gen.	diēī	diērum	reī	rērum
Dat.	diēī	diēbus	reī	rēbus
Acc.	diem	diēs	rem	rēs
Abl.	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

568. IRREGULAR DECLENSIONS

	Deus, m., *god.*	**Dea**, f., *goddess.*	**Domus**, f., *house.*	**Vīs**, f., *force, strength.*
		SINGULAR		
Nom.	deus	dea	domus	vīs
Gen.	deī	deae	domūs, -ī	vīs
Dat.	deō	deae	domuī, -ō	vī
Acc.	deum	deam	domum	vim
Abl.	deō	deā	domō, -ū	vī
		PLURAL		
Nom.	deī, diī, dī	deae	domūs	vīrēs
Gen.	deōrum, deum	deārum	domuum, -ōrum	vīrium
Dat.	deīs, diīs, dīs	deābus	domibus	vīribus
Acc.	deōs	deās	domōs, -ūs	vīrīs, -ēs
Abl.	deīs, diīs, dīs	deābus	domibus	vīribus

ADJECTIVES

569. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

Bonus, *good.*

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
		SINGULAR	
Nom.	bonus	bona	bonum
Gen.	bonī	bonae	bonī
Dat.	bonō	bonae	bonō
Acc.	bonum	bonam	bonum
Abl.	bonō	bonā	bonō
		PLURAL	
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	bonī	bonae	bona
Gen.	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
Dat.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Acc.	bonōs	bonās	bona
Abl.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

570. THIRD DECLENSION — THREE ENDINGS

Ācer, *sharp.*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Gen.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
Dat.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Acc.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrīs (-ēs)	ācrīs (-ēs)	ācria
Abl.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

571. THIRD DECLENSION — TWO ENDINGS

Fortis, *brave.*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. AND F.	NEUT.	M. AND F.	NEUT.
Nom.	fortis	forte	fortēs	fortia
Gen.	fortis	fortis	fortium	fortium
Dat.	fortī	fortī	fortibus	fortibus
Acc.	fortem	forte	fortīs (-ēs)	fortia
Abl.	fortī	fortī	fortibus	fortibus

572. THIRD DECLENSION — ONE ENDING

(*a*) **Potēns**, *powerful.*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. AND F.	NEUT.	M. AND F.	NEUT.
Nom.	potēns	potēns	potentēs	potentia
Gen.	potentis	potentis	potentium	potentium
Dat.	potentī	potentī	potentibus	potentibus
Acc.	potentem	potēns	potentēs, -īs	potentia
Abl.	potentī, -e	potentī, -e	potentibus	potentibus

(*b*) **Plūs**, *more*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. AND F.	NEUT.	M. AND F.	NEUT.
Nom.	——	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
Gen.	——	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
Dat.	——	——	plūribus	plūribus
Acc.	——	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
Abl.	——	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

573. DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

Melior, *better*.

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. AND F.	NEUT.	M. AND F.	NEUT.
Nom.	melior	melius	**meliōrēs**	**meliōra**
Gen.	**meliōris**	**meliōris**	**meliōrum**	**meliōrum**
Dat.	**meliōrī**	**meliōrī**	**meliōribus**	**meliōribus**
Acc.	**meliōrem**	melius	**meliōrēs (-īs)**	**meliōra**
Abl.	**meliōre**	**meliōre**	**meliōribus**	**meliōribus**

574. IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

Alius, *another*. **Ūnus**, *one*.

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	**alius**	**alia**	**aliud**	**ūnus**	**ūna**	**ūnum**
Gen.	**alīus**	**alīus**	**alīus**	**ūnīus**	**ūnīus**	**ūnīus**
Dat.	**aliī**	**aliī**	**aliī**	**ūnī**	**ūnī**	**ūnī**
Acc.	**alium**	**aliam**	**aliud**	**ūnum**	**ūnam**	**ūnum**
Abl.	**aliō**	**aliā**	**aliō**	**ūnō**	**ūnā**	**ūnō**

The plural of **alius** is regular, of the First and Second Declensions.

575. **Duo**, *two*. **Trēs**, *three*.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	duo	**duae**	duo	**trēs**	**trēs**	**tria**
Gen.	**duōrum**	**duārum**	**duōrum**	**trium**	**trium**	**trium**
Dat.	**duōbus**	**duābus**	**duōbus**	**tribus**	**tribus**	**tribus**
Acc.	**duōs**, duo	**duās**	duo	**trīs (trēs)**	**trīs (-ēs)**	**tria**
Abl.	**duōbus**	**duābus**	**duōbus**	**tribus**	**tribus**	**tribus**

576. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
fortis	**fortior**	**fortissimus**
vēlōx	**vēlōcior**	**vēlōcissimus**
miser	**miserior**	**miserrimus**
ācer	**ācrior**	**ācerrimus**

577 IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus, *good*	melior	**optimus**
malus, *bad*	peior	**pessimus**
magnus, *great*	maior	**maximus**
parvus, *small*	minor	**minimus**
multus, *much*		**plūrimus**
multum, *much*	plūs	**plūrimum**
multī, *many*	plūrēs	**plūrimī**
senex, *old*	senior (maior nātū)	**maximus nātū**
iuvenis, *young*	iūnior (minor nātū)	**minimus nātū**
idōneus, *suitable*	magis idōneus	**maximē idōneus**
exterus, *outer*	exterior	**extrēmus** *or* **extimus**
īnferus, *below*	īnferior	**īnfimus** *or* **īmus**
posterus, *following*	posterior	**postrēmus** *or* **postumus**
superus, *above*	superior	**suprēmus** *or* **summus**
(cis, citrā)	citerior, *hither*	**citimus**
(in, intrā)	interior, *inner*	**intimus**
(prae, prō)	prior, *former*	**prīmus**
(prope)	propior, *nearer*	**proximus**
(ultrā)	ulterior, *farther*	**ultimus**
facilis, *easy*	facilior	**facillimus**
difficilis, *difficult*	difficilior	**difficillimus**
similis, *like*	similior	**simillimus**
dissimilis, *unlike*	dissimilior	**dissimillimus**
humilis, *low*	humilior	**humillimus**

578. COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
lātē (lātus)	lātius	lātissimē
pulchrē (pulcher)	pulchrius	pulcherrimē
miserē (miser)	miserius	miserrimē
fortiter (fortis)	fortius	fortissimē
ācriter (ācer)	ācrius	ācerrimē
facile (facilis)	facilius	facillimē
bene (bonus)	melius	optimē

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
male (malus)	peius	pessimē
magnopere (magnus)	magis	maximē
parum (parvus)	minus	minimē
diū	diūtius	diūtissimē

579. NUMERALS

	CARDINALS	ORDINALS
1.	ūnus, -a, -um	prīmus, -a, -um
2.	duo, duae, duo	secundus
3.	trēs, tria	tertius
4.	quattuor	quārtus
5.	quīnque	quīntus
6.	sex	sextus
7.	septem	septimus
8.	octō	octāvus
9.	novem	nōnus
10.	decem	decimus
11.	ūndecim	ūndecimus
12.	duodecim	duodecimus
13.	tredecim	tertius decimus
14.	quattuordecim	quārtus decimus
15.	quīndecim	quīntus decimus
16.	sēdecim	sextus decimus
17.	septendecim	septimus decimus
18.	duodēvīgintī	duodēvīcēsimus
19.	ūndēvīgintī	ūndēvīcēsimus
20.	vīgintī	vīcēsimus
21.	vīgintī ūnus (ūnus et vīgintī)	vīcēsimus prīmus
29.	ūndētrīgintā	ūndētrīcēsimus
30.	trīgintā	trīcēsimus
40.	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimus
50.	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsimus
60.	sexāgintā	sexāgēsimus
70.	septuāgintā	septuāgēsimus
80.	octōgintā	octōgēsimus
90.	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsimus
100.	centum	centēsimus

	CARDINALS	ORDINALS
200.	ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsimus
300.	trecentī	trecentēsimus
400.	quadringentī	quadringentēsimus
500.	quīngentī	quīngentēsimus
600.	sescentī	sescentēsimus
700.	septingentī	septingentēsimus
800.	octingentī	octingentēsimus
900.	nōngentī	nōngentēsimus
1000.	mīlle	mīllēsimus
2000.	duo mīlia	bis mīllēsimus

PRONOUNS

580. Personal

FIRST PERSON — **Ego**, *I.*

SECOND PERSON — **Tū**, *you* (*thou*).

THIRD PERSON — **Is**, *he;* **ea**, *she;* **id**, *it.* For declension see § 582, *e.*

	First Person Singular	First Person Plural	Second Person Singular	Second Person Plural
Nom.	ego	nōs	tū	vōs
Gen.	meī	nostrum / nostrī	tuī	vestrum / vestrī
Dat.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs
Acc.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs
Abl.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs

581. Reflexive

FIRST PERSON

Meī, *of myself,*

SECOND PERSON

Tuī, *of yourself* (*thyself*).

These are declined like the personal pronoun of the same person, except that they have no nominative.

THIRD PERSON

Suī, *of himself, herself, itself.*

	Singular	Plural
Gen.	suī	suī
Dat.	sibi	sibi
Acc.	sē *or* sēsē	sē *or* sēsē
Abl.	sē *or* sēsē	sē *or* sēsē

582. DEMONSTRATIVE

(*a*) **Hic**, *this.*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
Gen.	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

(*b*) **Ille**, *that.*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
Gen.	illīus	illīus	illīus	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
Acc.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
Abl.	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

(*c*) **Iste**, *that, that of yours.* (*d*) **Ipse**, *self.*

	SINGULAR					
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	iste	ista	istud	ipse	ipsa	ipsum
Gen.	istīus	istīus	istīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus
Dat.	istī	istī	istī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī
Acc.	istum	istam	istud	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum
Abl.	istō	istā	istō	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō

The plural is regular.

(*e*) **Is**, *that, he.*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	is	ea	id	iī (ī), eī	eae	ea
Gen.	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	eī	eī	eī	iīs (īs), eīs	iīs (īs), eīs	iīs (īs), eīs
Acc.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Abl.	eō	eā	eō	iīs (īs), eīs	iīs (īs), eīs	iīs (īs), eīs

(*f*) **Idem**, *same.*

	Singular			Plural		
	masc.	fem.	neut.	masc.	fem.	neut.
Nom.	īdem	eadem	idem	īdem (iīdem), eīdem	eaedem	eadem
Gen.	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	īsdem (iīsdem), eīsdem		
Acc.	eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Abl.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	īsdem (iīsdem), eīsdem		

583. RELATIVE

Quī, *who, which, that.*

	Singular			Plural		
	masc.	fem.	neut.	masc.	fem.	neut.
Nom.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

584. INTERROGATIVE

Quis, *who? what?*

	Singular		Plural		
	m. and f.	neut.	masc.	fem.	neut.
Nom.	quis	quid	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quid	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

The adjective **quī**, *what*, is declined like the relative **quī**.

585. INDEFINITE

Aliquis, *some one.*

	Singular		Plural		
	m. and f.	neut.	masc.	fem.	neut.
Nom.	aliquis	aliquid	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
Gen.	alicuius	alicuius	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
Dat.	alicui	alicui	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
Acc.	aliquem	aliquid	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
Abl.	aliquō	aliquō	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

The adjective is **aliquī, aliqua, aliquod.**

VERBS

586. FIRST CONJUGATION

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **portō, portāre, portāvī, portātus.**
STEMS: **portā-, portāv-, portāt-.**

Active Voice / **Passive Voice**

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

I carry, am carrying, etc.		*I am carried*, etc.	
portō	**portāmus**	**portor**	**portāmur**
portās	**portātis**	**portāris (-re)**	**portāminī**
portat	**portant**	**portātur**	**portantur**

IMPERFECT

I carried, was carrying, etc.		*I was carried*, etc.	
portābam	**portābāmus**	**portābar**	**portābāmur**
portābās	**portābātis**	**portābāris (-re)**	**portābāminī**
portābat	**portābant**	**portābātur**	**portābantur**

FUTURE

I shall carry, etc.		*I shall be carried*, etc.	
portābō	**portābimus**	**portābor**	**portābimur**
portābis	**portābitis**	**portāberis (-re)**	**portābiminī**
portābit	**portābunt**	**portābitur**	**portābuntur**

PERFECT

I have carried, I carried, etc.		*I have been (was) carried*, etc.			
portāvī	**portāvimus**	**portātus** (-a, -um)	**sum**	**portātī** (-ae, -a)	**sumus**
portāvistī	**portāvistis**		**es**		**estis**
portāvit	**portāvērunt (-ēre)**		**est**		**sunt**

PLUPERFECT

I had carried, etc.		*I had been carried*, etc.			
portāveram	**portāverāmus**	**portātus** (-a, -um)	**eram**	**portātī** (-ae, -a)	**erāmus**
portāverās	**portāverātis**		**erās**		**erātis**
portāverat	**portāverant**		**erat**		**erant**

Active Voice		**Passive Voice**	

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have carried, etc.		*I shall have been carried*, etc.	
portāverō	**portāverimus**	**portātus** (-a, -um) **erō**	**portātī** (-ae, -a) **erimus**
portāveris	**portāveritis**	**eris**	**eritis**
portāverit	**portāverint**	**erit**	**erunt**

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

portem	**portēmus**	**porter**	**portēmur**
portēs	**portētis**	**portēris (-re)**	**portēminī**
portet	**portent**	**portētur**	**portentur**

IMPERFECT

portārem	**portārēmus**	**portārer**	**portārēmur**
portārēs	**portārētis**	**portārēris (-re)**	**portārēminī**
portāret	**portārent**	**portārētur**	**portārentur**

PERFECT

portāverim	**portāverīmus**	**portātus** (-a, -um) **sim**	**portātī** (-ae, -a) **sīmus**
portāverīs	**portāverītis**	**sīs**	**sītis**
portāverit	**portāverint**	**sit**	**sint**

PLUPERFECT

portāvissem	**portāvissēmus**	**portātus** (-a, -um) **essem**	**portātī** (-ae, -a) **essēmus**
portāvissēs	**portāvissētis**	**essēs**	**essētis**
portāvisset	**portāvissent**	**esset**	**essent**

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

Carry thou, etc.		*Be thou carried*, etc.	
2d **portā**	**portāte**	2d **portāre**	**portāminī**

FUTURE

Thou shalt carry.		*Thou shalt be carried.*	
2d **portātō**	**portātōte**	2d **portātor**	
3d **portātō**	**portantō**	3d **portātor**	**portantor**

INFINITIVE

	Active	Passive
PRES.	**portāre**, *to carry.*	**portārī**, *to be carried.*
PERF.	**portāvisse**, *to have carried.*	**portātus esse**, *to have been carried.*
FUT.	**portātūrus esse**, *to be about to carry.*	**portātum īrī**, *to be about to be carried.*

Active Voice	**Passive Voice**

PARTICIPLES

	Active		Passive
PRES.	**portāns, -antis**, *carrying.*	PERF.	**portātus, -a, -um**, *having been carried.*
FUT.	**portātūrus, -a, -um**, *about to carry.*		

GERUND		GERUNDIVE	
Gen.	**portandī**, *of carrying.*		**portandus, -a, -um**, *to be carried*, etc.
Dat.	**portandō**, *for carrying.*		SUPINE
Acc.	**portandum**, *carrying.*	*Acc.*	**portātum**, *to carry.*
Abl.	**portandō**, *by carrying.*	*Abl.*	**portātū**, *to carry.*

587. SECOND CONJUGATION

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus.**
STEMS: **monē-, monū-, monit-.**

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

I advise, warn, etc.		*I am advised, warned*, etc.	
moneō	**monēmus**	**moneor**	**monēmur**
monēs	**monētis**	**monēris (-re)**	**monēminī**
monet	**monent**	**monētur**	**monentur**

IMPERFECT

I advised, was advising, etc.		*I was advised*, etc.	
monēbam	**monēbāmus**	**monēbar**	**monēbāmur**
monēbās	**monēbātis**	**monēbāris (-re)**	**monēbāminī**
monēbat	**monēbant**	**monēbātur**	**monēbantur**

FUTURE

I shall advise, etc.		*I shall be advised*, etc.	
monēbō	**monēbimus**	**monēbor**	**monēbimur**
monēbis	**monēbitis**	**monēberis (-re)**	**monēbiminī**
monēbit	**monēbunt**	**monēbitur**	**monēbuntur**

PERFECT

I have advised, etc.		*I have been advised*, etc.			
monuī	**monuimus**	**monitus**	**sum**	**monitī**	**sumus**
monuistī	**monuistis**	**(-a, -um)**	**es**	**(-ae, -a)**	**estis**
monuit	**monuērunt (-ēre)**		**est**		**sunt**

570. THIRD DECLENSION — THREE ENDINGS

Ācer, *sharp.*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Gen.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
Dat.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Acc.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrīs (-ēs)	ācrīs (-ēs)	ācria
Abl.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

571. THIRD DECLENSION — TWO ENDINGS

Fortis, *brave.*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. AND F.	NEUT.	M. AND F.	NEUT.
Nom.	fortis	forte	fortēs	fortia
Gen.	fortis	fortis	fortium	fortium
Dat.	fortī	fortī	fortibus	fortibus
Acc.	fortem	forte	fortīs (-ēs)	fortia
Abl.	fortī	fortī	fortibus	fortibus

572. THIRD DECLENSION — ONE ENDING

(*a*) **Potēns**, *powerful.*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. AND F.	NEUT.	M. AND F.	NEUT.
Nom.	potēns	potēns	potentēs	potentia
Gen.	potentis	potentis	potentium	potentium
Dat.	potentī	potentī	potentibus	potentibus
Acc.	potentem	potēns	potentēs, -īs	potentia
Abl.	potentī, -e	potentī, -e	potentibus	potentibus

(*b*) **Plūs**, *more*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. AND F.	NEUT.	M. AND F.	NEUT.
Nom.	——	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
Gen.	——	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
Dat.	——	——	plūribus	plūribus
Acc.	——	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
Abl.	——	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

573. DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

Melior, *better.*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. AND F.	NEUT.	M. AND F.	NEUT.
Nom.	melior	melius	**meliōrēs**	**meliōra**
Gen.	**meliōris**	**meliōris**	**meliōrum**	**meliōrum**
Dat.	**meliōrī**	**meliōrī**	**meliōribus**	**meliōribus**
Acc.	**meliōrem**	melius	**meliōrēs (-īs)**	**meliōra**
Abl.	**meliōre**	**meliōre**	**meliōribus**	**meliōribus**

574. IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

Alius, *another.* **Ūnus**, *one.*

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	**alius**	**alia**	**aliud**	**ūnus**	**ūna**	**ūnum**
Gen.	**alīus**	**alīus**	**alīus**	**ūnīus**	**ūnīus**	**ūnīus**
Dat.	**aliī**	**aliī**	**aliī**	**ūnī**	**ūnī**	**ūnī**
Acc.	**alium**	**aliam**	**aliud**	**ūnum**	**ūnam**	**ūnum**
Abl.	**aliō**	**aliā**	**aliō**	**ūnō**	**ūnā**	**ūnō**

The plural of **alius** is regular, of the First and Second Declensions.

575. **Duo**, *two.* **Trēs**, *three.*

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	duo	duae	duo	**trēs**	**trēs**	**tria**
Gen.	**duōrum**	**duārum**	**duōrum**	**trium**	**trium**	**trium**
Dat.	**duōbus**	**duābus**	**duōbus**	**tribus**	**tribus**	**tribus**
Acc.	**duōs**, duo	**duās**	duo	**trīs** (**trēs**)	**trīs** (**-ēs**)	**tria**
Abl.	**duōbus**	**duābus**	**duōbus**	**tribus**	**tribus**	**tribus**

576. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
fortis	**fortior**	**fortissimus**
vēlōx	**vēlōcior**	**vēlōcissimus**
miser	**miserior**	**miserrimus**
ācer	**ācrior**	**ācerrimus**

577 Irregular Adjectives

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus, *good*	**melior**	**optimus**
malus, *bad*	**peior**	**pessimus**
magnus, *great*	**maior**	**maximus**
parvus, *small*	**minor**	**minimus**
multus, *much*		**plūrimus**
multum, *much*	**plūs**	**plūrimum**
multī, *many*	**plūrēs**	**plūrimī**
senex, *old*	**senior (maior nātū)**	**maximus nātū**
iuvenis, *young*	**iūnior (minor nātū)**	**minimus nātū**
idōneus, *suitable*	**magis idōneus**	**maximē idōneus**
exterus, *outer*	**exterior**	**extrēmus** *or* **extimus**
īnferus, *below*	**īnferior**	**īnfimus** *or* **īmus**
posterus, *following*	**posterior**	**postrēmus** *or* **postumus**
superus, *above*	**superior**	**suprēmus** *or* **summus**
(cis, citrā)	**citerior**, *hither*	**citimus**
(in, intrā)	**interior**, *inner*	**intimus**
(prae, prō)	**prior**, *former*	**prīmus**
(prope)	**propior**, *nearer*	**proximus**
(ultrā)	**ulterior**, *farther*	**ultimus**
facilis, *easy*	**facilior**	**facillimus**
difficilis, *difficult*	**difficilior**	**difficillimus**
similis, *like*	**similior**	**simillimus**
dissimilis, *unlike*	**dissimilior**	**dissimillimus**
humilis, *low*	**humilior**	**humillimus**

578. Comparison of Adverbs

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
lātē (lātus)	**lātius**	**lātissimē**
pulchrē (pulcher)	**pulchrius**	**pulcherrimē**
miserē (miser)	**miserius**	**miserrimē**
fortiter (fortis)	**fortius**	**fortissimē**
ācriter (ācer)	**ācrius**	**ācerrimē**
facile (facilis)	**facilius**	**facillimē**
bene (bonus)	**melius**	**optimē**

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
male (malus)	peius	pessimē
magnopere (magnus)	magis	maximē
parum (parvus)	minus	minimē
diū	diūtius	diūtissimē

579. NUMERALS

	CARDINALS	ORDINALS
1.	ūnus, -a, -um	prīmus, -a, -um
2.	duo, duae, duo	secundus
3.	trēs, tria	tertius
4.	quattuor	quārtus
5.	quīnque	quīntus
6.	sex	sextus
7.	septem	septimus
8.	octō	octāvus
9.	novem	nōnus
10.	decem	decimus
11.	ūndecim	ūndecimus
12.	duodecim	duodecimus
13.	tredecim	tertius decimus
14.	quattuordecim	quārtus decimus
15.	quīndecim	quīntus decimus
16.	sēdecim	sextus decimus
17.	septendecim	septimus decimus
18.	duodēvīgintī	duōdēvīcēsimus
19.	ūndēvīgintī	ūndēvīcēsimus
20.	vīgintī	vīcēsimus
21.	vīgintī ūnus (ūnus et vīgintī)	vīcēsimus prīmus
29.	ūndētrīgintā	ūndētrīcēsimus
30.	trīgintā	trīcēsimus
40.	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimus
50.	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsimus
60.	sexāgintā	sexāgēsimus
70.	septuāgintā	septuāgēsimus
80.	octōgintā	octōgēsimus
90.	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsimus
100.	centum	centēsimus

	CARDINALS	ORDINALS
200.	ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsimus
300.	trecentī	trecentēsimus
400.	quadringentī	quadringentēsimus
500.	quīngentī	quīngentēsimus
600.	sescentī	sescentēsimus
700.	septingentī	septingentēsimus
800.	octingentī	octingentēsimus
900.	nōngentī	nōngentēsimus
1000.	mīlle	mīllēsimus
2000.	duo mīlia	bis mīllēsimus

PRONOUNS

580. PERSONAL

FIRST PERSON: **Ego**, *I.*

SECOND PERSON: **Tū**, *you* (*thou*).

THIRD PERSON: **Is**, *he;* **ea**, *she;* **id**, *it.* For declension see § 582, *e.*

	First Person Singular	First Person Plural	Second Person Singular	Second Person Plural
Nom.	ego	nōs	tū	vōs
Gen.	meī	nostrum / nostrī	tuī	vestrum / vestrī
Dat.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs
Acc.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs
Abl.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs

581. REFLEXIVE

FIRST PERSON

Meī, *of myself,*

SECOND PERSON

Tuī, *of yourself* (*thyself*).

These are declined like the personal pronoun of the same person, except that they have no nominative.

THIRD PERSON

Suī, *of himself, herself, itself.*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Gen.	suī	suī
Dat.	sibi	sibi
Acc.	sē *or* sēsē	sē *or* sēsē
Abl.	sē *or* sēsē	sē *or* sēsē

582. DEMONSTRATIVE

(*a*) **Hic**, *this.*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
Gen.	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

(*b*) **Ille**, *that.*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
Gen.	illīus	illīus	illīus	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
Acc.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
Abl.	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

(*c*) **Iste**, *that, that of yours.* (*d*) **Ipse**, *self.*

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	iste	ista	istud	ipse	ipsa	ipsum
Gen.	istīus	istīus	istīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus
Dat.	istī	istī	istī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī
Acc.	istum	istam	istud	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum
Abl.	istō	istā	istō	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō

The plural is regular.

(*e*) **Is**, *that, he.*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	is	ea	id	iī (ī), eī	eae	ea
Gen.	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	eī	eī	eī	iīs (īs), eīs	iīs (īs), eīs	iīs (īs), eīs
Acc.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Abl.	eō	eā	eō	iīs (īs), eīs	iīs (īs), eīs	iīs (īs), eīs

(*f*) **Idem**, *same.*

	Singular			Plural		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	īdem	eadem	idem	īdem (iīdem), eīdem	eaedem	eadem
Gen.	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	īsdem (iīsdem), eīsdem		
Acc.	eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Abl.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	īsdem (iīsdem), eīsdem		

583. Relative

Quī, *who, which, that.*

	Singular			Plural		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

584. Interrogative

Quis, *who? what?*

	Singular		Plural		
	M. AND F	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	quis	quid	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quid	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

The adjective **quī**, *what,* is declined like the relative **quī.**

585. Indefinite

Aliquis, *some one.*

	Singular		Plural		
	M. AND F.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	aliquis	aliquid	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
Gen.	alicuius	alicuius	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
Dat.	alicui	alicui	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
Acc.	aliquem	aliquid	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
Abl.	aliquō	aliquō	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

The adjective is **aliquī, aliqua, aliquod.**

VERBS

586. FIRST CONJUGATION

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **portō, portāre, portāvī, portātus.**
STEMS: **portā-, portāv-, portāt-.**

Active Voice / **Passive Voice**

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

I carry, am carrying, etc.		*I am carried,* etc.	
portō	**portāmus**	**portor**	**portāmur**
portās	**portātis**	**portāris (-re)**	**portāminī**
portat	**portant**	**portātur**	**portantur**

IMPERFECT

I carried, was carrying, etc.		*I was carried,* etc.	
portābam	**portābāmus**	**portābar**	**portābāmur**
portābās	**portābātis**	**portābāris (-re)**	**portābāminī**
portābat	**portābant**	**portābātur**	**portābantur**

FUTURE

I shall carry, etc.		*I shall be carried,* etc.	
portābō	**portābimus**	**portābor**	**portābimur**
portābis	**portābitis**	**portāberis (-re)**	**portābiminī**
portābit	**portābunt**	**portābitur**	**portābuntur**

PERFECT

I have carried, I carried, etc.		*I have been (was) carried,* etc.	
portāvī	**portāvimus**	**portātus (-a, -um) sum**	**portātī (-ae, -a) sumus**
portāvistī	**portāvistis**	**es**	**estis**
portāvit	**portāvērunt (-ēre)**	**est**	**sunt**

PLUPERFECT

I had carried, etc.		*I had been carried,* etc.	
portāveram	**portāverāmus**	**portātus (-a, -um) eram**	**portātī (-ae, -a) erāmus**
portāverās	**portāverātis**	**erās**	**erātis**
portāverat	**portāverant**	**erat**	**erant**

Active Voice		Passive Voice	

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have carried, etc.		*I shall have been carried*, etc.	
portāverō	portāverimus	portātus (-a, -um) erō	portātī (-ae, -a) erimus
portāveris	portāveritis	eris	eritis
portāverit	portāverint	erit	erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

portem	portēmus	porter	portēmur
portēs	portētis	portēris (-re)	portēminī
portet	portent	portētur	portentur

IMPERFECT

portārem	portārēmus	portārer	portārēmur
portārēs	portārētis	portārēris (-re)	portārēminī
portāret	portārent	portārētur	portārentur

PERFECT

portāverim	portāverīmus	portātus (-a, -um) sim	portātī (-ae, -a) sīmus
portāverīs	portāverītis	sīs	sītis
portāverit	portāverint	sit	sint

PLUPERFECT

portāvissem	portāvissēmus	portātus (-a, -um) essem	portātī (-ae, -a) essēmus
portāvissēs	portāvissētis	essēs	essētis
portāvisset	portāvissent	esset	essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

Carry thou, etc.		*Be thou carried*, etc.	
2d portā	portāte	2d portāre	portāminī

FUTURE

Thou shalt carry.		*Thou shalt be carried.*	
2d portātō	portātōte	2d portātor	
3d portātō	portantō	3d portātor	portantor

INFINITIVE

PRES.	portāre, *to carry.*	portārī, *to be carried.*
PERF.	portāvisse, *to have carried.*	portātus esse, *to have been carried.*
FUT.	portātūrus esse, *to be about to carry.*	portātum īrī, *to be about to be carried.*

Active Voice	**Passive Voice**

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	**portāns, -antis,** *carrying.*	PERF.	**portātus, -a, -um,** *having been carried.*
FUT.	**portātūrus, -a, -um,** *about to carry.*		

GERUND		GERUNDIVE	
Gen.	**portandī,** *of carrying.*		**portandus, -a, -um,** *to be carried,* etc.
Dat.	**portandō,** *for carrying.*		SUPINE
Acc.	**portandum,** *carrying.*	*Acc.*	**portātum,** *to carry.*
Abl.	**portandō,** *by carrying.*	*Abl.*	**portātū,** *to carry.*

587. SECOND CONJUGATION

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus.**
STEMS: **monē-, monu-, monit-.**

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

I advise, warn, etc.		*I am advised, warned,* etc.	
moneō	**monēmus**	**moneor**	**monēmur**
monēs	**monētis**	**monēris (-re)**	**monēminī**
monet	**monent**	**monētur**	**monentur**

IMPERFECT

I advised, was advising, etc.		*I was advised,* etc.	
monēbam	**monēbāmus**	**monēbar**	**monēbāmur**
monēbās	**monēbātis**	**monēbāris (-re)**	**monēbāminī**
monēbat	**monēbant**	**monēbātur**	**monēbantur**

FUTURE

I shall advise, etc.		*I shall be advised,* etc.	
monēbō	**monēbimus**	**monēbor**	**monēbimur**
monēbis	**monēbitis**	**monēberis (-re)**	**monēbiminī**
monēbit	**monēbunt**	**monēbitur**	**monēbuntur**

PERFECT

I have advised, etc.		*I have been advised,* etc.			
monuī	**monuimus**	**monitus**	**sum**	**monitī**	**sumus**
monuistī	**monuistis**	**(-a, -um)**	**es**	**(-ae, -a)**	**estis**
monuit	**monuērunt (-ēre)**		**est**		**sunt**

Active Voice		Passive Voice	

PLUPERFECT

I had advised, etc.		*I had been advised*, etc.	
monueram	monuerāmus	monitus (-a, -um) eram	monitī (-ae, -a) erāmus
monuerās	monuerātis	erās	erātis
monuerat	monuerant	erat	erant

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have advised, etc.		*I shall have been advised*, etc.	
monuerō	monuerimus	monitus (-a, -um) erō	monitī (-ae, -a) erimus
monueris	monueritis	eris	eritis
monuerit	monuerint	erit	erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

moneam	moneāmus	monear	moneāmur
moneās	moneātis	moneāris (-re)	moneāminī
moneat	moneant	moneātur	moneantur

IMPERFECT

monērem	monērēmus	monērer	monērēmur
monērēs	monērētis	monērēris (-re)	monērēminī
monēret	monērent	monērētur	monērentur

PERFECT

monuerim	monuerīmus	monitus (-a, -um) sim	monitī (-ae, -a) sīmus
monuerīs	monuerītis	sīs	sītis
monuerit	monuerint	sit	sint

PLUPERFECT

monuissem	monuissēmus	monitus (-a, -um) essem	monitī (-ae, -a) essēmus
monuissēs	monuissētis	essēs	essētis
monuisset	monuissent	esset	essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

Advise thou, etc.		*Be thou advised*, etc.	
2d monē	monēte	2d monēre	monēminī

FUTURE

Thou shalt advise, etc.		*Thou shalt be advised*, etc.	
2d monētō	monētōte	2d monētor	
3d monētō	monentō	3d monētor	monentor

PERFECT

voluerim	**nōluerim**	**māluerim**

PLUPERFECT

voluissem	**nōluissem**	**māluissem**

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

(lacking)	2d **nōlī** **nōlīte**	(lacking)

FUTURE

(lacking)	2d **nōlītō** **nōlītōte**	(lacking)
(lacking)	3d **nōlītō** **nōluntō**	(lacking)

INFINITIVE

PRES.	**velle**	**nōlle**	**mālle**
PERF.	**voluisse**	**nōluisse**	**māluisse**

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	**volēns**	**nōlēns**	(lacking)

593. PRINCIPAL PARTS: **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus**, *bear, carry.*

PRESENT INDICATIVE

Active		Passive	
ferō	**ferimus**	**feror**	**ferimur**
fers	**fertis**	**ferris** (-re)	**feriminī**
fert	**ferunt**	**fertur**	**feruntur**

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
Active	**Passive**	**Active**	**Passive**
IMPERFECT		PRESENT	
ferēbam	**ferēbar**	**feram**	**ferar**
FUTURE		IMPERFECT	
feram	**ferar**	**ferrem**	**ferrer**
PERFECT		PERFECT	
tulī	**lātus sum**	**tulerim**	**lātus sim**

Active Voice		Passive Voice	

FUTURE

I shall lead, etc.		*I shall be led*, etc.	
dūcam	dūcēmus	dūcar	dūcēmur
dūcēs	dūcētis	dūcēris (-re)	dūcēminī
dūcet	dūcent	dūcētur	dūcentur

PERFECT

I led, have led, etc.		*I was led, have been led*, etc.	
dūxī	dūximus	ductus (-a, -um) sum	ductī (-ae, -a) sumus
dūxistī	dūxistis	es	estis
dūxit	dūxērunt (-ēre)	est	sunt

PLUPERFECT

I had led, etc.		*I had been led*, etc.	
dūxeram	dūxerāmus	ductus (-a, -um) eram	ductī (-ae, -a) erāmus
dūxerās	dūxerātis	erās	erātis
dūxerat	dūxerant	erat	erant

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have led, etc.		*I shall have been led*, etc.	
dūxerō	dūxerimus	ductus (-a, -um) erō	ductī (-ae, -a) erimus
dūxeris	dūxeritis	eris	eritis
dūxerit	dūxerint	erit	erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

dūcam	dūcāmus	dūcar	dūcāmur
dūcās	dūcātis	dūcāris (-re)	dūcāminī
dūcat	dūcant	dūcātur	dūcantur

IMPERFECT

dūcerem	dūcerēmus	dūcerer	dūcerēmur
dūcerēs	dūcerētis	dūcerēris (-re)	dūcerēminī
dūceret	dūcerent	dūcerētur	dūcerentur

PERFECT

dūxerim	dūxerīmus	ductus (-a, -um) sim	ductī (-ae, -a) sīmus
dūxerīs	dūxerītis	sīs	sītis
dūxerit	dūxerint	sit	sint

Active Voice		**Passive Voice**			
		PLUPERFECT			
dūxissem	**dūxissēmus**	**ductus** (-a, -um)	**essem**	**ductī** (-ae, -a)	**essēmus**
dūxissēs	**dūxissētis**		**essēs**		**essētis**
dūxisset	**dūxissent**		**esset**		**essent**

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

Lead thou, etc.		*Be thou led*, etc.	
2d **dūc** [1]	**dūcite**	2d **dūcere**	**dūciminī**

FUTURE

Thou shalt lead, etc.		*Thou shalt be led*, etc.	
2d **dūcitō**	**dūcitōte**	2d **dūcitor**	
3d **dūcitō**	**dūcuntō**	3d **dūcitor**	**dūcuntor**

INFINITIVE

	Active	Passive
PRES.	**dūcere**, *to lead.*	**dūcī**, *to be led.*
PERF.	**dūxisse**, *to have led.*	**ductus esse**, *to have been led.*
FUT.	**ductūrus esse**, *to be about to lead.*	**ductum īrī**, *to be about to be led.*

PARTICIPLES

PRES. **dūcēns, -entis**, *leading.*
FUT. **ductūrus, -a, -um**, *about to lead.*
PERF. **ductus, -a, -um**, *having been led.*

GERUND

Gen. **dūcendī**, *of leading.*
Dat. **dūcendō**, *for leading.*
Acc. **dūcendum**, *leading.*
Abl. **dūcendō**, *by leading.*

GERUNDIVE

dūcendus, -a, -um, *to be led.*

SUPINE

Acc. **ductum**, *to lead.*
Abl. **ductū**, *to lead.*

589. FOURTH CONJUGATION

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus.**
STEM: **audī-, audīv-, audīt-.**

[1] Irregular for **dūce**.

Active Voice		**Passive Voice**	

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

I hear, am hearing, do hear, etc.		*I am heard*, etc.	
audiō	**audīmus**	**audior**	**audīmur**
audīs	**audītis**	**audīris (-re)**	**audīminī**
audit	**audiunt**	**audītur**	**audiuntur**

IMPERFECT

I heard, was hearing, etc.		*I was heard*, etc.	
audiēbam	**audiēbāmus**	**audiēbar**	**audiēbāmur**
audiēbās	**audiēbātis**	**audiēbāris (-re)**	**audiēbāminī**
audiēbat	**audiēbant**	**audiēbātur**	**audiēbantur**

FUTURE

I shall hear, etc.		*I shall be heard*, etc.	
audiam	**audiēmus**	**audiar**	**audiēmur**
audiēs	**audiētis**	**audiēris (-re)**	**audiēminī**
audiet	**audient**	**audiētur**	**audientur**

PERFECT

I have heard, I heard, etc.		*I have been (was) heard*, etc.			
audīvī	**audīvimus**	**audītus (-a, -um)**	**sum**	**audītī (-ae, -a)**	**sumus**
audīvistī	**audīvistis**		**es**		**estis**
audīvit	**audīvērunt (-ēre)**		**est**		**sunt**

PLUPERFECT

I had heard, etc.		*I had been heard*, etc.			
audīveram	**audīverāmus**	**audītus (-a, -um)**	**eram**	**audītī (-ae, -a)**	**erāmus**
audīverās	**audīverātis**		**erās**		**erātis**
audīverat	**audīverant**		**erat**		**erant**

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have heard, etc.		*I shall have been heard*, etc.			
audīverō	**audīverimus**	**audītus (-a, -um)**	**erō**	**audītī (-ae, -a)**	**erimus**
audīveris	**audīveritis**		**eris**		**eritis**
audīverit	**audīverint**		**erit**		**erunt**

Active Voice		Passive Voice	

Subjunctive

Present

audiam	**audiāmus**	**audiar**	**audiāmur**
audiās	**audiātis**	**audiāris** (-re)	**audiāminī**
audiat	**audiant**	**audiātur**	**audiantur**

Imperfect

audīrem	**audīrēmus**	**audīrer**	**audīrēmur**
audīrēs	**audīrētis**	**audīrēris** (-re)	**audīrēminī**
audīret	**audīrent**	**audīrētur**	**audīrentur**

Perfect

audīverim	**audīverīmus**	**audītus** (-a, -um)	**sim**	**audītī** (-ae, -a)	**sīmus**
audīverīs	**audīverītis**		**sīs**		**sītis**
audīverit	**audīverint**		**sit**		**sint**

Pluperfect

audīvissem	**audīvissēmus**	**audītus** (-ā, -um)	**essem**	**audītī** (-ae, -a)	**essēmus**
audīvissēs	**audīvissētis**		**essēs**		**essētis**
audīvisset	**audīvissent**		**esset**		**essent**

Imperative

Present

Hear thou, etc.		*Be thou heard*, etc.	
2d **audī**	**audīte**	2d **audīre**	**audīminī**

Future

Thou shalt hear, etc.		*Thou shalt be heard*, etc.	
2d **audītō**	**audītōte**	2d **audītor**	
3d **audītō**	**audiuntō**	3d **audītor**	**audiuntor**

Infinitive

PRES.	**audīre**, *to hear.*	**audīrī**, *to be heard.*
PERF.	**audīvisse**, *to have heard.*	**audītus esse**, *to have been heard.*
FUT.	**audītūrus esse**, *to be about to hear.*	**audītum īrī**, *to be about to be heard.*

Participles

PRES. **audiēns, -entis**, *hearing.*
FUT. **audītūrus, -a, -um**, *about to hear.*
PERF. **audītus, -a, -um**, *heard, having been heard.*

Active Voice		**Passive Voice**	
GERUND		GERUNDIVE	
Gen.	**audiendī**, *of hearing.*	**audiendus, -a, -um**, *to be heard.*	
Dat.	**audiendō**, *for hearing.*	SUPINE	
Acc.	**audiendum**, *hearing.*	*Acc.*	**audītum**, *to hear.*
Abl.	**audiendō**, *by hearing.*	*Abl.*	**audītū**, *to hear.*

590. THIRD CONJUGATION — VERBS IN *IŌ*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **capiō, capere, cēpī, captus.**
STEMS: **cape-, cēp-, capt-.**

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

I take, am taking, do take, etc.		*I am taken,* etc.	
capiō	**capimus**	**capior**	**capimur**
capis	**capitis**	**caperis (-re)**	**capiminī**
capit	**capiunt**	**capitur**	**capiuntur**

IMPERFECT

I took, was taking, etc.	*I was taken,* etc.
capiēbam, etc.	**capiēbar**, etc.

FUTURE

I shall take, etc.		*I shall be taken,* etc.	
capiam	**capiēmus**	**capiar**	**capiēmur**
capiēs	**capiētis**	**capiēris (-re)**	**capiēminī**
capiet	**capient**	**capiētur**	**capientur**

PERFECT

I have taken, took, etc.	*I have been (was) taken,* etc.
cēpī, etc.	**captus sum**, etc.

PLUPERFECT

I had taken, etc.	*I had been taken,* etc.
cēperam, etc.	**captus eram**, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have taken, etc.	*I shall have been taken,* etc.
cēperō, etc.	**captus erō**, etc.

Active Voice		**Passive Voice**	
	SUBJUNCTIVE		
	PRESENT		
capiam	**capiāmus**	**capiar**	**capiāmur**
capiās	**capiātis**	**capiāris (-re)**	**capiāminī**
capiat	**capiant**	**capiātur**	**capiantur**
	IMPERFECT		
caperem, etc.		**caperer**, etc.	
	PERFECT		
cēperim, etc.		**captus sim**, etc.	
	PLUPERFECT		
cēpissem, etc.		**captus essem**, etc.	

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

Take (thou), etc.		*Be (thou) taken*, etc.	
2d **cape**	**capite**	2d **capere**	**capiminī**

FUTURE

Thou shalt take, etc.		*Thou shalt be taken*, etc.	
2d **capitō**	**capitōte**	2d **capitor**	
3d **capitō**	**capiuntō**	3d **capitor**	**capiuntor**

INFINITIVE

	Active	Passive
PRES.	**capere**, *to take.*	**capī**, *to be taken.*
PERF.	**cēpisse**, *to have taken.*	**captus esse**, *to have been taken.*
FUT.	**captūrus esse**, *to be about to take.*	**captum īrī**, *to be about to be taken.*

PARTICIPLES

PRES. **capiēns, -ientis**, *taking.*

FUT. **captūrus, -a, -um**, *about to take.*

PERF. **captus, -a, -um**, *taken, having been taken.*

GERUND

Gen. **capiendī**, *of taking.*
Dat. **capiendō**, *for taking.*
Acc. **capiendum**, *taking.*
Abl. **capiendō**, *by taking.*

GERUNDIVE

capiendus, -a, -um, *to be taken.*

SUPINE

Acc. **captum**, *to take.*
Abl. **captū**, *to take.*

591. IRREGULAR VERBS

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **sum, esse, fuī.**		PRINCIPAL PARTS: **possum, posse, potuī.**	

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

I am, etc.		*I am able, I can*, etc.	
sum	**sumus**	**possum**	**possumus**
es	**estis**	**potes**	**potestis**
est	**sunt**	**potest**	**possunt**

IMPERFECT

I was, etc.		*I was able, I could*, etc.	
eram	**erāmus**	**poteram**	**poterāmus**
erās	**erātis**	**poterās**	**poterātis**
erat	**erant**	**poterat**	**poterant**

FUTURE

I shall be, etc.		*I shall be able*, etc.	
erō	**erimus**	**poterō**	**poterimus**
eris	**eritis**	**poteris**	**poteritis**
erit	**erunt**	**poterit**	**poterunt**

PERFECT

I was, have been, etc.		*I have been able, I could*, etc.	
fuī	**fuimus**	**potuī**	**potuimus**
fuistī	**fuistis**	**potuistī**	**potuistis**
fuit	**fuērunt (-ēre)**	**potuit**	**potuērunt (-ēre)**

PLUPERFECT

I had been, etc.		*I had been able*, etc.	
fueram	**fuerāmus**	**potueram**	**potuerāmus**
fuerās	**fuerātis**	**potuerās**	**potuerātis**
fuerat	**fuerant**	**potuerat**	**potuerant**

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have been, etc.		*I shall have been able*, etc.	
fuerō	**fuerimus**	**potuerō**	**potuerimus**
fueris	**fueritis**	**potueris**	**potueritis**
fuerit	**fuerint**	**potuerit**	**potuerint**

Sum		Possum	

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

sim	**sīmus**	**possim**	**possīmus**
sīs	**sītis**	**possīs**	**possītis**
sit	**sint**	**possit**	**possint**

IMPERFECT

essem	**essēmus**	**possem**	**possēmus**
essēs	**essētis**	**possēs**	**possētis**
esset	**essent**	**posset**	**possent**

PERFECT

fuerim	**fuerīmus**	**potuerim**	**potuerīmus**
fuerīs	**fuerītis**	**potuerīs**	**potuerītis**
fuerit	**fuerint**	**potuerit**	**potuerint**

PLUPERFECT

fuissem	**fuissēmus**	**potuissem**	**potuissēmus**
fuissēs	**fuissētis**	**potuissēs**	**potuissētis**
fuisset	**fuissent**	**potuisset**	**potuissent**

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT		PRESENT
Be thou, etc.		(lacking)
2d **es**	**este**	

FUTURE		FUTURE
Thou shalt be, etc.		(lacking)
2d **estō**	**estōte**	
3d **estō**	**suntō**	

INFINITIVE

PRES.	**esse**, *to be.*	**posse**, *to be able.*
PERF.	**fuisse**, *to have been.*	**potuisse**, *to have been able.*
FUT.	**futūrus esse**, or **fore** } *to be about to be.*	(lacking)

PARTICIPLES

PRESENT	PRESENT
(lacking)	**potēns, -entis** (used as an adjective), *powerful.*
FUTURE	FUTURE
futūrus, -a, -um, *about to be.*	(lacking)

592. PRINCIPAL PARTS: **volō, velle, voluī,** *be willing, wish.*
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, *be unwilling.*
mālō, mālle, māluī, *be more willing, prefer.*

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

volō	**volumus**	**nōlō**	**nōlumus**	**mālō**	**mālumus**
vīs	**vultis**	**nōn vīs**	**nōn vultis**	**māvīs**	**māvultis**
vult	**volunt**	**nōn vult**	**nōlunt**	**māvult**	**mālunt**

IMPERFECT		
volēbam	**nōlēbam**	**mālēbam**
FUTURE		
volam	**nōlam**	**mālam**
PERFECT		
voluī	**nōluī**	**māluī**
PLUPERFECT		
volueram	**nōlueram**	**mālueram**
FUTURE PERFECT		
voluerō	**nōluerō**	**māluerō**

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

velim	**velīmus**	**nōlim**	**nōlīmus**	**mālim**	**mālīmus**
velīs	**velītis**	**nōlīs**	**nōlītis**	**mālīs**	**mālītis**
velit	**velint**	**nōlit**	**nōlint**	**mālit**	**mālint**

IMPERFECT		
vellem	**nōllem**	**māllem**

PERFECT

voluerim	**nōluerim**	**māluerim**

PLUPERFECT

voluissem	**nōluissem**	**māluissem**

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

(lacking)	2d **nōlī** **nōlīte**	(lacking)

FUTURE

(lacking)	2d **nōlītō** **nōlītōte**	(lacking)
(lacking)	3d **nōlītō** **nōluntō**	(lacking)

INFINITIVE

PRES.	**velle**	**nōlle**	**mālle**
PERF.	**voluisse**	**nōluisse**	**māluisse**

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	**volēns**	**nōlēns**	(lacking)

593. PRINCIPAL PARTS: **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus**, *bear, carry.*

PRESENT INDICATIVE

Active		Passive	
ferō	**ferimus**	**feror**	**ferimur**
fers	**fertis**	**ferris** (-re)	**feriminī**
fert	**ferunt**	**fertur**	**feruntur**

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
Active	**Passive**	**Active**	**Passive**
IMPERFECT		PRESENT	
ferēbam	**ferēbar**	**feram**	**ferar**
FUTURE		IMPERFECT	
feram	**ferar**	**ferrem**	**ferrer**
PERFECT		PERFECT	
tulī	**lātus sum**	**tulerim**	**lātus sim**

PLUPERFECT		PLUPERFECT	
tuleram	**lātus eram**	**tulissem**	**lātus essem**

FUTURE PERFECT	
tulerō	**lātus erō**

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

2d **fer**	**ferte**	2d **ferre**	**feriminī**

FUTURE

2d **fertō**	**fertōte**	2d **fertor**	
3d **fertō**	**feruntō**	3d **fertor**	**feruntor**

INFINITIVE			PARTICIPLES		
PRES.	**ferre**	**ferrī**	PRES.	**ferēns**	——
PERF.	**tulisse**	**lātus esse**	PERF.	——	**lātus**
FUT.	**lātūrus esse**	**lātum īrī**	FUT.	**lātūrus**	——

GERUND		GERUNDIVE	SUPINE	
Gen.	**ferendī**	**ferendus**	*Acc.*	**lātum**
Dat.	**ferendō**		*Abl.*	**lātū**
Acc.	**ferendum**			
Abl.	**ferendō**			

594. PRINCIPAL PARTS: **eō, īre, iī (īvī), itūrus,** *go.*

INDICATIVE		IMPERATIVE		INFINITIVE	
PRESENT					
eō	**īmus**	PRES.	2d **ī, īte**	PRES.	**īre**
īs	**ītis**	FUT.	2d **ītō, ītōte**	PERF.	**īsse (iisse)**
it	**eunt**		3d **ītō, euntō**	FUT.	**itūrus esse**

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	PARTICIPLES	
IMPERFECT	PRESENT		
ībam	**eam**	PRES.	**iēns, euntis**
FUTURE	IMPERFECT	FUT.	**itūrus**
ībō	**īrem**		

PERFECT	PERFECT	GERUND
iī	**ierim**	*Gen.* **eundī**
		Dat. **eundō**
PLUPERFECT	PLUPERFECT	*Acc.* **eundum**
ieram	**īssem**	*Abl.* **eundō**
FUTURE PERFECT		SUPINE
ierō		*Acc.* **itum**
		Abl. **itū**

595. PRINCIPAL PARTS: **fīō, fierī, factus sum,** *be made, become.*

INDICATIVE		IMPERATIVE	INFINITIVE
PRESENT		PRESENT	
fīō	**fīmus**	**fī**	PRES. **fierī**
fīs	**fītis**	**fīte**	PERF. **factus esse**
fit	**fīunt**		FUT. **factum īrī**
		SUBJUNCTIVE	PARTICIPLES
IMPERFECT		PRESENT	
fīēbam		**fīam**	PRES. ——
FUTURE		IMPERFECT	PERF. **factus**
fīam		**fierem**	
PERFECT		PERFECT	GERUNDIVE
factus sum		**factus sim**	**faciendus**
PLUPERFECT		PLUPERFECT	
factus eram		**factus essem**	
FUTURE PERFECT			
factus erō			

ENGLISH GRAMMAR

As an Aid to the Study of Latin

NOUNS

596. A *Noun* is the name of some person or thing.

597. A *Common Noun* is the name of one of a class of objects: *picture, story.*

Active Voice		Passive Voice	
GERUND		GERUNDIVE	
Gen.	**audiendī**, *of hearing.*	**audiendus, -a, -um**, *to be heard.*	
Dat.	**audiendō**, *for hearing.*	SUPINE	
Acc.	**audiendum**, *hearing.*	*Acc.*	**audītum**, *to hear.*
Abl.	**audiendō**, *by hearing.*	*Abl.*	**audītū**, *to hear.*

590. THIRD CONJUGATION — VERBS IN *IŌ*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **capiō, capere, cēpī, captus.**
STEMS: **cape-, cēp-, capt-.**

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

I take, am taking, do take, etc.		*I am taken,* etc.	
capiō	**capimus**	**capior**	**capimur**
capis	**capitis**	**caperis (-re)**	**capiminī**
capit	**capiunt**	**capitur**	**capiuntur**

IMPERFECT

I took, was taking, etc.	*I was taken,* etc.
capiēbam, etc.	**capiēbar**, etc.

FUTURE

I shall take, etc.		*I shall be taken,* etc.	
capiam	**capiēmus**	**capiar**	**capiēmur**
capiēs	**capiētis**	**capiēris (-re)**	**capiēminī**
capiet	**capient**	**capiētur**	**capientur**

PERFECT

I have taken, took, etc.	*I have been (was) taken,* etc.
cēpī, etc.	**captus sum**, etc.

PLUPERFECT

I had taken, etc.	*I had been taken,* etc.
cēperam, etc.	**captus eram**, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have taken, etc.	*I shall have been taken,* etc.
cēperō, etc.	**captus erō**, etc.

Active Voice		**Passive Voice**	
	SUBJUNCTIVE		
	PRESENT		
capiam	**capiāmus**	**capiar**	**capiāmur**
capiās	**capiātis**	**capiāris** (-re)	**capiāminī**
capiat	**capiant**	**capiātur**	**capiantur**
	IMPERFECT		
caperem, etc.		**caperer**, etc.	
	PERFECT		
cēperim, etc.		**captus sim**, etc.	
	PLUPERFECT		
cēpissem, etc.		**captus essem**, etc.	

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

Take (thou), etc.		*Be (thou) taken*, etc.	
2d **cape**	**capite**	2d **capere**	**capiminī**

FUTURE

Thou shalt take, etc.		*Thou shalt be taken*, etc.	
2d **capitō**	**capitōte**	2d **capitor**	
3d **capitō**	**capiuntō**	3d **capitor**	**capiuntor**

INFINITIVE

	Active	Passive
PRES.	**capere**, *to take.*	**capī**, *to be taken.*
PERF.	**cēpisse**, *to have taken.*	**captus esse**, *to have been taken.*
FUT.	**captūrus esse**, *to be about to take.*	**captum īrī**, *to be about to be taken.*

PARTICIPLES

PRES. **capiēns**, **-ientis**, *taking.*
FUT. **captūrus**, **-a**, **-um**, *about to take.*

PERF. **captus**, **-a**, **-um**, *taken, having been taken.*

GERUND

Gen. **capiendī**, *of taking.*
Dat. **capiendō**, *for taking.*
Acc. **capiendum**, *taking.*
Abl. **capiendō**, *by taking.*

GERUNDIVE

capiendus, **-a**, **-um**, *to be taken.*

SUPINE

Acc. **captum**, *to take.*
Abl. **captū**, *to take.*

Aurunculēius, **-ī**, m., *Aurunculeius Cotta*, a lieutenant of Caesar.
auspicium, **-ī**, n., *divination by the flight of birds, auspice*.
aut, conj., *or;* **aut . . . aut**, *either . . . or*.
autem, conj., *but, moreover*.
auxilium, **-ī**, n., *aid, help;* pl., *auxiliary forces*, or *troops*.
aveō, **-ēre**, —, —, in the imperative, **avē**, *hail!*
avus, **-ī**, m., *grandfather*.
Axona, **-ae**, f., *the Aisne* (river).

B

baculum, **-ī**, n., *staff, wand*.
barbarī, **-ōrum**, m., *foreigners*.
barbarus, **-a**, **-um**, *foreign, barbarous*.
Belgae, **-ārum**, m., *Belgians*, the bravest of the Gauls.
Bellovacī, **-ōrum**, m., *Bellovaci*, a people of Gaul.
bellum, **-ī**, n., *war*.
bene, adv., *well*.
beneficium, **-ī**, n., *kindness, benefit*.
benignē, adv., *kindly*.
bibō, **-ere**, **bibī**, **bibitum**, *drink*.
Bibrax, **-actis**, f., *Bibrax*, a town of the Remi.
biennium, **-ī**, n., *period of two years*.
bis, num. adv., *twice*.
bonus, **-a**, **-um** (comp., **melior**; sup., **optimus**), adj., *good*.
Brātuspantium, **-ī**, n., *Bratuspantium*, a stronghold of the Bellovaci.
brevis, **-e**, adj., *short, brief*.
Britannī, **-ōrum**, m., *Britons*.
Britannia, **-ae**, f., *Britain*.
Brūtus, **-ī**, m., *Brutus*.

C

C., abbreviation for **Gāius**, **-ī**, **m.**, (Eng.) *Caius*.
cadō, **-ere**, **cecidī**, **cāsūrus**, *fall*.
caecus, **-a**, **-um**, *blind*.
caedēs, **-is**, f., *slaughter*.
caelestēs, **-ium**, m., *gods*.
caelum, **-ī**, n., *sky, heavens*.
Caemanī, **-ōrum**, m., *Caemani*, a people in Belgic Gaul.
Caerōsī, **-ōrum**, m., *Caerosi*, a people in Belgic Gaul.
Caesar, **-aris**, m., *Caesar*.
calamitās, **-tātis**, f., *calamity*.
calathus, **-ī**, m., *basket*.
calefaciō, **-ere**, **-fēcī**, **-factus**, *make hot*.
Caletī, **-ōrum**, m., *Caleti*, a tribe living near the mouth of the Seine.
Campānus, **-a**, **-um**, *of Campania*.
canis, **-is**, m. and f., *dog*.
canō, **-ere**, **cecinī**, *sound, sing*.
cantilēna, **-ae**, f., *old song*.
capiō, **-ere**, **cēpī**, **captus**, *take, seize, capture*.
Capitōlium, **-ī**, n., *Capitoline hill*.
captīva, **-ae**, f., *captive* (female).
captīvus, **-ī**, m., *captive*.
captīvus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *captive*.
captō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *catch*.
caput, **-itis**, n., *head*.
cāritās, **-ātis**, f., *esteem*.
carmen, **-minis**, n., *song, poem*.
carō, **carnis**, f., *flesh*.
Carolus, **-ī**, m., *Charles*.
carpentum, **-ī**, n., *carriage*.
carpō, **-ere**, **-psī**, **-ptus**, *grasp*.
carrus, **-ī**, m., *cart, wagon*.
Carthāginiēnsēs, **-ium**, m., *Carthaginians*.

Carthāgō, -inis, f., *Carthage*, a city in Africa.
cārus, -a, -um, adj., *dear*.
casa, -ae, f., *cottage*.
Cassius, -ī, m., *Cassius*.
castellum, -ī, n., *stronghold*.
castra, -ōrum, n., *camp*.
cāsus, -ūs, m., *fall, chance; misfortune, calamity*.
Catilīna, -ae, m., *Catiline*.
Catō, -ōnis, m., *Cato*.
cauda, -ae, f., *tail*.
causa, -ae, f., *cause, reason;* **multīs dē causīs**, *for many reasons*.
causā (with gen.), *for the sake (of)*.
caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautūrus, *beware*.
cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessūrus, *yield*.
celebrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *practice, engage in; celebrate*.
celer, celeris, celere, adj., *quick, swift*.
celeritās, -tātis, f., *swiftness*.
celeriter, adv., *quickly*.
cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *conceal*.
Celtae, -ārum, m., *Celts*.
cēna, -ae, f., *dinner, supper, feast*.
cēnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *dine, sup*.
cēnsus, -ūs, m., *registration, census*.
centum, indecl. num., *one hundred*.
centuriō, -ōnis, m., *centurion*.
cernō, -ere, crēvī, *see, discern*.
certāmen, -inis, n., *contest, match*.
certē, adv., *certainly*.
certus, -a, -um, adj., *certain;* **certiōrem facere**, *inform*.
cēterus, -a, -um, adj., *the other*.
Christus, -ī, m., *Christ*.
cibus, -ī, m., *food*.
Cicerō, -ōnis, m., *Cicero*.
Cincinnātus, -ī, m., *Cincinnatus*.
cingō, -ere, cinxī, cinctus, *surround*.
circā, adv., *about*.
Circē, -ēs, abl. **-ē**, f., *Circe*.
circiter, adv., *about*.
circum, prep. (with acc.), *around, about*.
circum, adv., *about, around*.
circumdō, -are, -dedī, -datus, *put around, surround*.
circumiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, *place around*.
circumsistō, -ere, -stetī, —, *stand around*.
circumspiciō, -ere, -exī, -ectus, *look around*.
circumveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *come around, surround*.
cis, prep. (with acc.), *on this side of*.
citerior, -ius, adj., *hither;* **in citeriōre Galliā**, *in hither Gaul*.
cito, adv., *quickly*.
cīvis, -is, m. and f., *citizen*.
cīvitās, -tātis, f., *state*.
clāmitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call out, cry out*.
clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call, cry out*.
clāmor, -ōris, m., *shout, noise*.
clārus, -a, -um, *clear, honorable*.
classis, -is, f., *a fleet*.
claudō, -ere, clausī, clausus, *shut, close*.
clāvus, -ī, m., *stripe*.
clēmentia, -ae, f., *clemency*.
Coclēs, -itis, m., *Cocles* ("*one-eyed*").
coëmō, -emere, -ēmī, -ēmptus, *buy*.
coepī, -isse (def., found mainly in perfect stem tenses), *began*.
cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *consider*.
cognōmen, -inis, n., *surname*.

cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus, *become acquainted with, learn.*
cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctus, *collect, compel.*
cohors, cohortis, f., *cohort* (the tenth part of a legion).
cohortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *encourage.*
Collātīnus, -ī, m., *Collatinus.*
collis, -is, m., *hill;* **ab summō colle,** *from the top of the hill;* (**in**) **mediō colle,** *halfway up the hill.*
collocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *place together, arrange.*
collum, -ī, n., *neck.*
colō, colere, coluī, cultus, *cultivate; worship.*
columna, -ae, f., *column, pillar.*
combūrō, -ere, -ussī, -ūstus, *burn.*
comedō, -ere, -ēdī, -ēsus, *eat up.*
comes, -itis, m. or f., *companion, associate.*
commeātus, -ūs, m., *supplies.*
commīlitō, -ōnis, m., *fellow soldier, comrade.*
committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *join;* **proelium committere,** *join battle, begin an engagement.*
Commius, -ī, m., *Commius.*
commoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *disturb, alarm.*
commūnis, -e, adj., *common.*
comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *prepare.*
compellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus, *drive together, compel, force.*
compleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, *fill, cover, complete.*
complicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *fold together.*
complūrēs, -a, adj., *several, very many.*
compos, -otis, adj., *having control.*
cōnātus, -ūs, m., *attempt.*
concēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, *yield.*
concidō, -ere, -cidī, —, *fall, be slain.*
concitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *arouse, excite, stir up.*
concordia, -ae, f., *concord.*
conculcō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trample upon.*
concurrō, -ere, -cucurrī, -cursūrus, *run together.*
concursus, -ūs, m., *onset.*
condiciō, -ōnis, f., *condition, terms.*
condō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *form, found, establish.*
Condrūsī, -ōrum, m., a Belgic tribe.
condūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *bring together.*
cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, collātus, *bring together, collect;* (with **sē**), *to betake oneself.*
cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, *do thoroughly, accomplish, furnish, exhaust.*
cōnfīdō, -ere, -fīsus sum, *trust.*
cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *declare, arrange for, strengthen, assert.*
cōnflīgō, -ere, -flīxī, -flīctus, *fight, contend.*
congregō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *gather, collect.*
coniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, *hurl together, hurl.*
coniungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus, *join together, unite.*
coniūnx, -iugis, m. and f., *spouse husband, wife.*
coniūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *conspire.*
cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *try, attempt.*

cōnscendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsūrus, *climb, go on board.*
cōnscrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus, *enroll, enlist, levy.*
consensus, -ūs, m., *agreement.*
cōnsentiō, -īre, -sēnsī, -sēnsus, *agree, conspire.*
cōnservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *spare, preserve.*
cōnsīderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *look closely at, consider.*
cōnsīdō, -ere, -sēdī, —, *encamp, settle.*
cōnsilium, -ī, n., *plan, advice, counsel, wisdom.*
cōnsimilis, -e, adj., *very like.*
cōnsistō, -sistere, -stitī, —, *stand, make a stand, stop.*
cōnspectus, -ūs, m., *sight, view, presence.*
cōnspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus, *observe.*
cōnspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *see.*
cōnstanter, adv., *uniformly.*
cōnstat (impers.), *it is evident.*
cōnstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtus, *determine, found, station, draw up in line, erect, settle;* of ships, *moor.*
cōnstitūtiō, -ōnis, f., *constitution.*
cōnsuēscō, -ere, -ēvī, -ētus, *become accustomed;* in the perfect tenses, *be accustomed.*
cōnsuētūdō, -inis, f., *habit, custom.*
cōnsul, -ulis, m., *consul.*
cōnsulō, -ere, -suluī, -sultus, *consult.*
cōnsūmō, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptus, *use up, spend, consume.*
contendō, -ere, -dī, -tentus, *hasten, contend.*
contentiō, -ōnis, f., *quarrel, dispute.*
conterō, -ere, -trīvī, -trītus, *grind.*
continenter, adv., *constantly.*
contineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus, *hold together, hem in, keep in.*
contrā, adv., *opposite.*
contrā, prep. (with acc.), *against.*
contrōversia, -ae, f., *dispute.*
conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *assemble.*
conventus, -ūs, m., *assembly, meeting.*
convertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus, *turn, transform.*
convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call together, summon.*
cōpia, -ae, f., *abundance, plenty, supply;* pl., *forces.*
cor, cordis, n., *heart.*
Cornēlia, -ae, f., *Cornelia.*
cornū, -ūs, n., *horn; wing* (of an army); **ā sinistrō cornū,** *on the left wing;* **ā dextrō cornū,** *on the right wing.*
corōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *crown.*
corpus, -oris, n., *body.*
corripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptus, *seize, snatch.*
cotīdiānus, -a, -um, adj., *daily.*
cotīdiē, adv., *daily.*
Cotta, -ae, see **Aurunculēius.**
crās, adv., *to-morrow.*
Crassus, -ī, m., *Crassus.*
crātēra, -ae, f., *bowl.*
crēber, -bra, -brum, adj., *frequent, numerous.*
crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *trust, believe.*
creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *choose, appoint, elect.*
crēscō, -ere, crēvī, crētus, *increase.*

cruciātus, **-ūs**, m., *torture*.
crūdēlis, **-e**, *cruel*, *unmerciful*.
crūdēlitās, **-tātis**, f., *harshness*, *cruelty*.
culpō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *blame*, *censure*.
cultus, **-ūs**, m., *civilization*.
cum, prep. (with abl.), *with*.
cum, conj., *when*, *since*, *although*.
cum prīmum, *as soon as*.
cunctāns, **-antis**, adj., *hesitating*, *delaying*.
cupiditās, **-tātis**, f., *eagerness*, *desire*, *greed*.
cupidus, **-a**, **-um**, *eager*, *desirous*.
cupiō, **-ere**, **cupīvī**, **cupītus**, *desire*, *wish*, *long for*.
cūr, adv., *why? wherefore?*
cūria, **-ae**, f., *curia*, the name of a division of the plebeians; *senate-house*.
cūrō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *cure*.
currō, **-ere**, **cucurrī**, **cursus**, *run*.
cursus, **-ūs**, m., *running*, *course*, *voyage*.
cūstōdiō, **-īre**, **-īvī**, **-ītus**, *watch*.
cūstōs, **-ōdis**, m., *guard*, *watch*, *keeper*.
Cyclōps, **-ōpis**, m., *Cyclops*; pl., *Cyclopes*.

D

dē, prep. (with abl.), *about*, *concerning*, *from*.
dea, **-ae**, f., *goddess*.
dēbeō, **-ēre**, **-uī**, **-itus**, *ought*, *must* (followed by infin.).
dēcēdō, **-ere**, **-cessī**, **-cessūrus**, *go away*, *withdraw*; *pass away*, *die*.
decem, num. adj. (indecl.), *ten*.
dēcertō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *fight*.
decimus, **-a**, **-um**, num. adj., *tenth*.
dēcipiō, **-ere**, **-cēpī**, **-ceptus**, *deceive*.
decōrus, **-a**, **-um**, *fitting*, *seemly*.
dēcrētum, **-ī**, n., *decree*, *decision*.
dēditiō, **-ōnis**, f., *surrender*.
dēdō, **-ere**, **-didī**, **-ditus**, *give up*, *surrender*.
dēdūcō, **-ere**, **-dūxī**, **-ductus**, *lead down*, *conduct*; *launch*.
dēfendō, **-ere**, **-fendī**, **-fēnsus**, *defend*, *guard*.
dēfēnsiō, **-ōnis**, f., *defense*.
dēfēnsor, **-ōris**, m., *defender*.
dēferō, **-ferre**, **-tulī**, **-lātus**, *carry down*, *carry away*, *report*.
dēfessus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *tired*, *weary*, *worn out*.
dēficiō, **-ere**, **-fēcī**, **-fectus**, *fail*, *desert*.
dēiciō, **-icere**, **-iēcī**, **-iectus**, *throw down*, *disappoint*.
deinde, adv., *then*, *next*, *thereupon*.
dēleō, **-ēre**, **-ēvī**, **-ētus**, *destroy*.
dēlīberō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *consult*.
dēligō, **-ere**, **-lēgī**, **-lēctus**, *choose* (*from*), *gather*, *select*.
dēmittō, **-ere**, **-mīsī**, **-missus**, *send down*, *let go down*, *lower*.
dēmōnstrō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *point out*, *explain*.
depellō, **-ere**, **-pulī**, **-pulsus**, *drive away*, *ward off*.
dēpōnō, **-ere**, **-posuī**, **-positus**, *put down*, *put aside*, *give up*.
dēpopulor, **-ārī**, **-ātus sum**, *lay waste*, *plunder*.
dēprecor, **-ārī**, **-ātus sum**, *beg to escape*, *ask for quarter*.
dēscendō, **-ere**, **-dī**, **-sus**, *descend*.
dēsertus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *deserted*.
dēsiliō, **-īre**, **-uī**, **-ultus**, *leap down*.

dēsinō, -ere, -siī, -situs, *leave off, cease.*

dēsistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitūrus, *leave off, cease.*

dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *despair, lose hope.*

dēsum, deesse, dēfuī, *be lacking, fail.*

dēterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *frighten off, deter.*

deus, -ī, m., *god.*

dēvorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *eat, devour.*

dēvoveō, -ēre, -vōvī, -vōtus, *vow, consecrate.*

dexter, -tra, -trum, adj., *right, right hand.*

dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus, *say, speak.*

dictātor, -ōris, m., *dictator.*

dictitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *say repeatedly.*

diēs, -ēī, m. and f., *day;* **multō diē,** *late in the day;* **posterō diē,** *the following day.*

differō, -ferre, distulī, dīlātus, *scatter, differ.*

difficilis, -e, adj. (superl., **difficillimus**), *difficult.*

difficultās, -tātis, f., *difficulty.*

dignitās, -tātis, f., *worth, position, grandeur.*

dīligenter, adv., *carefully, diligently.*

dīligentia, -ae, f., *diligence, care.*

dīmicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *fight.*

dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *send in different directions, dismiss, lose.*

dīrē, *horribly.*

discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, *go apart, scatter, depart, leave.*

disciplīna, -ae, f., *instruction, discipline.*

discipulus, -ī, m., *pupil.*

discrīmen, -inis, n., *danger, crisis.*

disiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, *throw apart, scatter.*

disputō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *discuss.*

dissimilis, -e, adj. (superl., **dissimillimus**), *unlike.*

dissitus, -a, -um, adj., *remote.*

distineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus, *keep apart, separate.*

distribuō, -ere, -tribuī, -tribūtus, *divide, apportion, distribute.*

ditō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *enrich.*

diū, diūtius, diūtissimē, adv., *long;* **quam diū,** *how long?*

dīvellō, -ere, -vellī, -vulsus, *tear apart, rend.*

dīversus, -a, -um, *different.*

dīvidō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsus, *divide.*

dīvīnus, -a, -um, *divine, sacred.*

Dīviciācus, -ī, *Divicia'cus,* an Aeduan of great influence.

dō, -are, dedī, datus, *give;* **in fugam dare,** *to put to flight.*

doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctus, *teach, show.*

dolor, -ōris, m., *pain, grief.*

domesticus, -a, -um, *domestic.*

domina, -ae, f., *mistress, matron.*

dominus, -ī, m., *master, lord.*

domus, -ūs, f. (locative, **domī**), *house, home;* **domī,** *at home.*

dōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *give, present.*

dōnum, -ī, n., *gift, present.*

dormiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *sleep.*

drāma, -atis, n., *drama, play.*

Druidēs, -um, m., *Druids.*

dubitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *doubt hesitate.*

dubius, -a, -um, *doubtful.*

ducentī, -ae, -a, *two hundred.*

dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead; consider.*
dulcis, -e, adj., *pleasant, sweet.*
dum, conj., *while, until.*
duo, duae, duo, adj., *two.*
duodecim, *twelve.*
duodēvīgintī, *eighteen.*
dūrus, -a, -um, *hard.*
dux, ducis, m., *leader, guide.*

E

ē or **ex,** prep. (with abl.), *out of, from, on account of.*
ēbrius, -a, -um, *drunk.*
Eburōnēs, -um, m., a Belgic tribe.
ecce, adv., *behold.*
edō, ēsse, ēdī, ēsus, *eat.*
ēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *give forth, produce, give birth to.*
ēdoceō, -ēre, -cuī, -doctus, *inform, instruct.*
ēducō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *train, educate.*
ēdūcō, -ere, ēdūxī, ēductus, *lead out.*
Edvardus, -ī, m., *Edward.*
efferō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātus, *bring out, carry away, produce.*
efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, *accomplish, bring about.*
effundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsus, *pour out, pour forth.*
ego, meī, pers. pron., *I.*
ēgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, *go out, disembark.*
ēgregius, -a, -um, *eminent, unusual.*
ēicio, ēicere, ēiēcī, ēiectus, *cast out, expel.*
ēlēctus, -a, -um, *chosen, picked.*
ēlīdō, -ere, -līsī, -līsus, *knock out, shatter.*
ēmineō, -ēre, uī, —, *become visible.*
ēmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *send out.*
emptor, -ōris, m., *buyer.*
enim, conj., postpositive, *for.*
Ennius, -ī, m., *Ennius.*
ensis, -is, m., *sword.*
eō, īre, iī (īvī), itūrus, *go.*
eō, adv., *there, thither, to that place.*
epistula, -ae, f., *a letter, an epistle.*
epulae, -ārum, pl., *feast, banquet.*
eques, -itis, m., *horseman, knight;* pl., *cavalry.*
equester, -tris, -tre, adj., *(of) cavalry.*
equitātus, -ūs, m., *cavalry.*
equus, -ī, m., *horse.*
ēripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptus, *snatch away, seize;* **sē ēripere,** *escape.*
errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *err, wander.*
et, conj., *and, also;* **et . . . et,** *both . . . and.*
etiam, adv., *also, even.*
Etrūscī, -ōrum, m., *Etruscans.*
etsī, conj., *although.*
Eurōpa, -ae, f., *Europe.*
Eurylochus, -ī, m., *Eurylochus.*
ēvādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsūrus, *go forth, escape.*
ēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call out.*
exaudiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *hear.*
excēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, *go out, go away.*
excelsus, -a, -um, adj., *high, lofty.*
excipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, *take, accept, catch; entertain, welcome*
excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *rouse.*
exclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *cry out, exclaim.*
exclūdō, -ere, -sī, -sus, *shut out, exclude.*

exemplum, -ī, n., *example*.
exeō, **-īre**, **-iī** (**-īvī**), **-itūrus**, *go out, withdraw*.
exercitus, **-ūs**, m., *army*.
eximius, **-a**, **-um**, *distinguished, excellent*.
existimō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *think, reckon*.
exitium, **-ī**, n., *destruction, ruin, death*.
exitus, **-ūs**, m., *going forth, outcome, departure, end*.
expedītus, **-a**, **-um**, *unencumbered*.
expellō, **-ere**, **-pulī**, **-pulsus**, *drive out*.
experientia, **-ae**, f., *experience*.
explōrātor, **-ōris**, m., *scout, spy*.
explōrō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *investigate, explore*.
expōnō, **-ere**, **-posuī**, **-positus**, *set out, array*.
expugnō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *take by storm*.
exsilium, **-ī**, n., *exile*.
exspectō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *wait, await, expect*.
exstruō, -ere, **-strūxī**, **-strūctus**, *pile up, erect, build*.
exterus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *outward;* superl., **extrēmus**, *last;* **ad extrēmum**, *at the end, finally*
extrā, prep., *outside, beyond*.
extrēmus, **-a**, **-um**, sup. of **exterus**, *furthest, last*.

F

faber, **fabrī**, m., *smith*.
fābula, **-ae**, f., *story*.
fac, imperative of **faciō**.
faciēs, **-ēī**, f., *appearance, sight*.
facile, adv., *easily;* **minus facile**, *less easily*.
facilis, **-e**, adj., *easy*.
faciō, **-ere**, **fēcī**, **factus**, *make, do, accomplish;* with **iter**, *march;* **certiōrem facere**, *inform*.
factum, **-ī**, n., *deed*.
facultās, **-tātis**, f., *opportunity, ability*.
fallō, **-ere**, **fefellī**, **falsus**, *disappoint, deceive*.
fāma, **-ae**, f., *report, story, tradition; reputation*.
famēs, **-is**, abl. **-ē**, f., *hunger, famine*.
familiāris, **-e**, *belonging to the family, of the household, intimate;* **rēs familiāris**, **reī familiāris**, f., *household affair, private property*.
fās, indecl. n., *right, justice*.
Faustulus, **-ī**, m., *Faustulus*.
fax, **facis**, f., *torch, firebrand*.
fēlīcitās, **-tātis**, f., *happiness, prosperity, good luck*.
fēlīciter, adv., *happily, successfully, fortunately*.
fēmina, **-ae**, f., *woman*.
fenestra, **-ae**, f., *window*.
ferāx, **-ācis**, adj., *fertile, productive*.
ferē, adv., *almost, quite*.
feriālis, **-e**, adj., *festival*.
ferō, **ferre**, **tulī**, **lātus**, *bear, carry: report, say*.
ferōx, **ferōcis**, *bold, fierce, headstrong*.
ferrum, **-ī**, n., *iron, sword*.
fertilitās, **-ātis**, f., *fertility*.
festīnō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *make haste*.

festus, -a, -um, adj., *festive, joyous, (of a) holiday.*
fidēlis, -e, adj., *faithful, loyal.*
fidēs, -eī, f., *faith, pledge, confidence.*
fīdō, -ere, fīsus sum, *trust.*
fīdus, -a, -um, *faithful, reliable.*
figūra, -ae, f., *shape, figure.*
fīlia, -ae, f., *daughter.*
fīlius, -ī, m., *son.*
fīniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *limit, stop, put an end to.*
fīnis, -is, m., *end;* pl., *territory.*
fīnitimī, -ōrum, m., *neighbors.*
fīnitimus, -a, -um, adj., *neighboring.*
fīō, fierī, factus sum, *become, be made, happen.*
firmus, -a, -um, adj., *firm, solid.*
flamma, -ae, f., *flame.*
fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētus, *weep, lament.*
flōreō, -ēre, -uī, —, *flourish, prosper.*
flōs, flōris, m., *flower.*
fluctus, -ūs, m., *wave, billow.*
fluitāns, -tis, *waving.*
flūmen, -inis, n., *river.*
fluō, -ere, flūxī, flūxus, *flow.*
focus, -ī, m., *hearth.*
fōns, fontis, m., *fountain, spring.*
forīs, adv., *out of doors, outside.*
fōrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *form.*
forte, adv., *by chance.*
fortis, -e, adj., *brave.*
fortiter, adv., *bravely;* **quam fortissimē**, *as bravely as possible.*
fortūna, -ae, f., *fortune.*
forum, forī, n., *forum.*
fossa, -ae, f., *ditch, trench.*
frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctus, *break, shatter, wreck.*
frāter, -tris, m., *brother.*
fraus, fraudis, f., *trick, stratagem, fraud.*
Fredericus, -ī, m., *Frederick.*
frōns, frontis, f., *forehead.*
frūctus, -ūs, m., *fruit.*
frūmentārius, -a, -um, *pertaining to grain, of grain;* **rēs frūmentāria, reī frūmentāriae**, f., *grain supply.*
frūmentum, -ī, n., *grain.*
fruor, fruī, frūctus sum, *enjoy.*
frūstrā, adv., *in vain.*
fuga, -ae, f., *flight.*
fugiō, -ere, fūgī, *flee.*
fulgēns, -entis, *flashing.*
fulgidus, -a, -um, *flashing, shining.*
fulgur, -uris, n., *lightning.*
fūmus, -ī, m., *smoke.*
funditor, -ōris, m., *slinger.*
fungor, fungī, fūnctus sum, *perform.*
fūnis, -is, m., *rope.*
fūr, fūris, m. and f., *thief.*
furor, -ōris, m., *rage, frenzy.*

G

Gaius, -ī, m., *Caius.*
Galba, -ae, m., *Galba.*
Gallī, -ōrum, m., *Gauls.*
Gallia, -ae, f., *Gaul.*
Gallicus, -a, -um, adj., *Gallic, of Gaul.*
Garumna, -ae, f., *the Garonne* (river).
gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum, *rejoice.*
gaudium, -ī, n., *delight, gladness.*
geminī, -ōrum, m., *twins.*
Genava, -ae, f., *Geneva.*
generālis, -e, adj., *general.*
gēns, gentis, f., *family, nation.*
genus, -eris, n., *kind, class.*
Germānia, -ae, f., *Germany.*

Germānus, -a, -um, adj., *German.*
Germānus, -ī, m., *a German.*
gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus, *carry on, wear;* with **bellum,** *wage;* **hīs rēbus gestīs,** *when these things had been accomplished.*
gigās, -antis, m., *giant.*
gladius, -ī, m., *sword.*
globus, -ī, *m., sphere; bomb.*
glōria, -ae, f., *glory.*
glōriōsē, *gloriously.*
Gracchus, -ī, m., *Gracchus.*
gradus, -ūs, m., *step, stair.*
Graecus, -a, -um, adj., *Greek.*
grānum, -ī, n., *grain.*
grātia, -ae, f., *influence, favor;* abl., *for the sake (of).*
grātus, -a, -um, *pleasing.*
gravis, -e, adj., *heavy, severe.*
graviter, adv., *heavily, weightily, seriously.*
gustō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *taste.*

H

habeō, -ēre, habuī, -itus, *have, hold, consider;* with **ōrātiō,** *deliver.*
Hamilcar, -aris, m., *Hamilcar.*
hauriō, -īre, hausī, haustus, *draw, drain.*
Helvētiī, -ōrum, m., *Helvetians.*
Helvētius, -a, -um, adj., *Helvetian.*
herba, -ae, f., *herb, plant, grass.*
hesternus, -a, -um, *of yesterday;* **hesternō diē,** *yesterday.*
hīberna, -ōrum, n., *winter quarters.*
hīc, adv., *here.*
hic, haec, hoc, gen. **huius,** dem. pron., *this.*
hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *pass the winter, winter.*
hiems, hiemis, f., *winter, stormy weather.*
hinc, adv., *from this place.*
hodiē, adj., *to-day.*
Homērus, -ī, m., *Homer.*
homō, -inis, m. and f., *human being, man.*
honor, -ōris, m., *honor, esteem, glory.*
hōra, -ae, f., *hour;* **tertiā hōrā,** *at nine o'clock.*
Horātius, -ī, m., *Horatius.*
horreum, -ī, n., *granary, barn.*
horribilis, -e, *dreadful, horrible.*
hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *encourage, urge.*
hortus, -ī, m., *garden.*
hospitium, -ī, n., *hospitality, entertainment.*
Hostīlius, -ī, m., *Hostilius.*
hostis, -is, m., *enemy;* pl., *the enemy.*
hūc, adv., *here, hither, to this place.*
hūmānitās, -ātis, f., *refinement, humanity.*
hūmānus, -a, -um, adj., *human.*
humus, -ī, f., *earth, soil; grave.*

I

iaceō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, *lie.*
iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactus, *throw, throw up, banish.*
iaculum, -ī, n., *javelin.*
iam, adv., *already.*
iānitor, -ōris, m., *doorkeeper, porter.*
iānua, -ae, f., *door.*
ibi, adv., *there, in that place.*
Iccius, -ī, m., a leader of the Remi.
īdem, eadem, idem, dem. pron., *the same.*

idōneus, -a, -um (comp., **magis idōneus**; sup., **maximē idōneus**), adj., *fit, suitable.*
Iēsus, -u, m., *Jesus.*
igitur, conj., *therefore.*
ignis, -is, m., *fire.*
ignōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *not know, be ignorant of.*
ignōtus, -a, -um, adj., *unknown.*
Īlias, -adis, f., *the Iliad.*
ille, illa, illud, gen., **illīus,** dem. pron., *that.*
illō, adv., *there, thither, to that place.*
imber, -bris, m., *rain, shower.*
immittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *send in, let in.*
immolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *sacrifice.*
immortālis, -e, adj., *immortal.*
impār, -paris, adj., *unequal.*
impedīmentum, -ī, n., *hindrance;* pl., *heavy baggage.*
impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *hinder.*
impellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus, *urge on, incite.*
impendeō, -ēre, —, —, *hang over.*
imperātor, -ōris, m., *commander-in-chief, general, emperor.*
imperātum, -ī, n., *command, order.*
imperium, -ī, n., *command, control, military authority, empire.*
imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *order* (governs dat., followed by ut with the subjunctive).
impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *obtain by request.*
impetus, -ūs, m., *attack.*
impluvium, -ī, n., *impluvium* (the square basin in which the rain water was received).
impōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *place upon.*
impudens, -entis, adj., *impudent.*
impūne, adv., *without punishment.*
in, prep. (with abl.), *in, on, upon, across, over;* (with acc.), *into, against, upon.*
incautus, -a, -um, *off guard, unaware.*
incēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, *go, step.*
incendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsus, *set on fire, burn.*
incipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, *begin, undertake.*
inclūdō, -ere, -sī, -sus, *keep in, surround.*
incola, -ae, m. or f., *inhabitant.*
incolō, -ere, -uī, —, (intrans.), *live, dwell;* (trans.), inhabit, dwell in.
incolumis, -e, *unharmed, safe.*
incrēdibilis, -e, adj., *incredible.*
incursiō, -ōnis, f., *invasion, raid.*
incūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *find fault with, blame, accuse.*
indūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead in, lead, induce.*
ineō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itus, *enter, begin.*
īnferō, -ferre, intulī, illātus, *bring in, upon,* or *against;* **bellum īnferre,** *make war (on);* **signa īnferre,** *advance* (to the attack).
īnferus, -ī, m., *inhabitant of the lower world.*
īnferus, -a, -um (comp., **īnferior**; sup., **īnfimus** or **īmus**), **adj.,** *below.*
īnfēstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trouble, plunder.*
īnfīnītum, -ī, n., *that which is boundless, infinity.*
īnfluō, -ere, -flūxī, -flūxus, *flow into.*

ingēns, ingentis, *vast, huge.*
iniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, *throw on, place on.*
inimīcus, -a, -um, adj., *unfriendly.*
inimīcus, -ī, m., *a personal enemy.*
inīquus, -a, -um, *uneven, unfavorable, unjust.*
initium, -ī, n., *beginning.*
iniūria, -ae, f., *injury, wrong.*
inopia, -ae, f., *want, scarcity.*
inquam, inquis, inquit, *say.*
inrīdeō, -ēre, -rīsī, -rīsus, *laugh at, mock, ridicule.*
īnsidiae, -ārum, f., *ambush.*
īnsidior, -ārī, -ātus sum, *lie in wait.*
īnstitūtum, -ī, n., *institution, custom.*
īnstruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus, *draw up, construct, furnish.*
īnsula, -ae, f., *island.*
integer, -gra, -grum, *whole, sound, unimpaired.*
intellegō, -ere, -ēxī, -lēctus, *understand.*
inter, prep. (with acc.), *between, among.*
intercēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, *intervene.*
intercipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, *intercept, cut off; usurp, steal.*
interclūdō, -ere, -sī, -sus, *shut off, cut off, stop.*
intereā, adv., *in the meantime, meanwhile.*
interest, impers., *it concerns.*
interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, *kill.*
intericiō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, *throw between;* **interiectus, -a, -um,** *having elapsed.*
interim, adv., *in the meantime.*
interior, -ius (sup., **intimus**), adj., *inner.*
intermittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *send between, interrupt, discontinue;* **intermissus, -a, -um,** *having elapsed.*
interrēgnum, -ī, n., *interregnum,* an interval between two reigns.
interscindō, -ere, -scidī, -scissus, *cut down, destroy.*
intersum, -esse, -fuī, *take part in.*
intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *enter.*
intrōdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead into.*
introitus, -ūs, m., *entrance.*
inūtilis, -e, adj., *useless.*
inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *come upon, find.*
inventor, -ōris, m., *inventor.*
invictus, -a, -um, adj., *unconquered, invincible.*
invideō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsus, *envy,* with dative.
invidia, -ae, f., *envy, hatred.*
invītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *invite.*
invītus, -a, -um, adj., *unwilling.*
invocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call upon, invoke.*
iocus, -ī, m., *joke.*
ipse, ipsa, ipsum, gen., **ipsīus,** dem. pron., *self, himself,* etc.
īra, -ae, f., *anger, wrath.*
īrātus, -a, -um, *angry, enraged.*
is, ea, id, gen., **eius,** dem. pron., *this, that, he.*
iste, ista, istud, gen., **istīus,** dem pron., *that, that of yours.*
ita, adv., *so* (manner).
Italia, -ae, f., *Italy.*
itaque, adv., *and so.*
item, adv., *in like manner.*

iter, **itineris**, n., *journey, march.*
iterum, adv., *a second time, again.*
Ithaca, **-ae**, f., *Ithaca.*
iubeō, **-ēre**, **iussī**, **iussus**, *order, command.*
iūcundus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *joyful.*
Iūdaeī, **-ōrum**, m., *Jews.*
iūdex, **-icis**, m., *judge.*
iūdicium, **-ī**, n., *decision.*
iūdicō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *judge.*
iugum, **-ī**, n., *yoke;* **sub iugum**, *under the yoke;* (of mountains) *ridge, summit.*
Iūlia, **-ae**, f., *Julia.*
iūmentum, **-ī**, n., *beast of burden.*
iungō, **-ere**, **iūnxī**, **iūnctus**, *join.*
iūnior, **-ius**, comp. of **iuvenis**, *younger.*
Iuppiter, **Iovis**, m., *Jupiter.*
Iūra, **-ae**, m., *the Jura* (a range of mountains).
iūs, **iūris**, n., *right, law.*
iūs iūrandum, **iūris iūrandī**, n., *oath.*
iūstitia, **-ae**, f., *justice.*
iūstus, **-a**, **-um**, *just.*
iuvenis, **-e** (comp., **iūnior**; sup., **minimus nātū**), adj., *young.*
iuventūs, **-ūtis**, f., *youth.*
iuvō, **-āre**, **iūvī**, **iūtus**, *help, aid, assist.*

L

L. = **Lūcius.**
Labiēnus, **-ī**, m., *Titus Labienus,* Caesar's lieutenant.
labor, **-ōris**, m., *toil, labor.*
labōrō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *labor.*
lac, **lactis**, n., *milk.*
Lacedaemoniī, **-ōrum**, m., *Lacedaemonians, Spartans.*
lacessō, **-ere**, **-īvī**, **-ītus**, *arouse, provoke, harm.*
lacrima, **-ae**, f., *tear.*
lacus, **-ūs**, m., *lake.*
laetitia, **-ae**, f., *joy.*
laetus, **-a**, **-um**, *joyful.*
lambō, **-ere**, *lick, wash.*
lampas, **-adis**, f., *torch.*
lapis, **-idis**, m., *stone.*
lapsus, **-ūs**, m., *a slip, error.*
Lārentia, **-ae**, f., *Larentia.*
lātē, adv., *widely.*
latebra, **-ae**, f., *hiding-place.*
lātitūdō, **-inis**, f., *width.*
lātrātus, **-ūs**, m., *barking.*
latrō, **-ōnis**, m., *robber.*
latus, **-eris**, n., *side.*
lātus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *broad, wide.*
laudō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *praise.*
laus, **laudis**, f., *praise.*
lectus, **-ī**, m., *couch, bed.*
lēgātus, **-ī**, m., *lieutenant, ambassador.*
legiō, **-ōnis**, f., *legion.*
legō, **-ere**, **lēgī**, **lēctus**, *read, choose.*
Lemannus, **-ī**, m., (*Lake*) *Geneva.*
lentē, adv., *slowly.*
Lentulus, **-ī**, m., *Lentulus.*
lepus, **-oris**, m., *hare.*
levis, **-e**, adj., *light* (in weight), *slight.*
leviter, adv., *lightly, slightly.*
lēx, **lēgis**, f., *law.*
libenter, adv., *gladly.*
liber, **librī**, m., *book.*
līber, **-era**, **-erum**, adj., *free.*
līberī, **-ōrum**, m., *children.*
līberō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *set free.*
lībertās, **-ātis**, f., *freedom, liberty.*
Libya, **-ae**, f., *Libya, Africa.*
licet, **-ēre**, **-uit**, impers. (with dat.), *it is permitted.*

lignum, -ī, n., *wood.*
līlium, līlī, n., *lily.*
līmen, -inis, n., *threshold.*
lingua, -ae, f., *tongue, language.*
littera, -ae, f., *letter of the alphabet;* pl., *letter, an epistle, literature, letters.*
lītus, -oris, n., *shore* (of the sea).
locō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *place, put.*
locus, -ī, m., pl., **loca,** n., *place, location.*
longē, adv., *far, by far;* **quam longē,** *how far.*
longitūdō, -inis, f., *length.*
longus, -a, -um, adj., *long, tall.*
loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, *speak, say.*
lōtus, -ī, f., *lotus.*
Lūcius, -ī, m., *Lucius.*
Lucrētia, -ae, f., *Lucretia.*
lūdicer, -cra, -crum, *sportive.*
Ludovīcus, -ī, m., *Louis.*
lūdus, -ī, m., *game, play.*
lūmen, -inis, n., *light.*
lūna, -ae, f., *moon.*
lupa, -ae, f., *she-wolf.*
lūridus, -a, -um, *pale, dim.*
lustrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *purify.*
lūx, lūcis, f., *light;* **prīmā lūce,** *at daybreak.*

M

maculō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *spot, spoil.*
Maecēnās, -ātis, m., *Maecenas,* a famous Roman patron of letters, hence any *patron of letters.*
magicus, -a, -um, *magic.*
magister, -trī, m., *teacher.*
magnitūdō, -inis, f., *greatness, size.*
magnopere (comp., **magis;** sup., **maximē**), adv., *greatly.*
magnus, -a, -um (compar., **maior,** superl., **maximus**), adj., *large, great.*
maior, -ius, comp. of **magnus,** *greater;* **maior nātū,** see **nātū.**
maiōrēs, -um, m. pl., *forefathers, ancestors.*
male, adv., *badly.*
maleficium, -ī, n., *harm.*
mālō, mālle, māluī (**magis** and **volō**), *prefer.*
malum, -ī, n., *evil.*
malus, -a, -um (comp., **peior;** sup., **pessimus**), adj., *bad.*
mandātum, -ī, n., *commission, order.*
mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *command.*
maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsus, *remain.*
mānsuētūdō, -inis, f., *compassion.*
manus, -ūs, f., *hand; band.*
Mārcius, -ī, m., *Marcius.*
Mārcus, -ī, m., *Marcus.*
mare, -is, n., *sea.*
Marīa, -ae., f., *Mary.*
marmoreus, -a, -um, adj., *made of marble.*
Mārs, Mārtis, m., *Mars.*
māter, -tris, f., *mother.*
mātrimōnium, -ī, n., *marriage;* **in mātrimōnium dare,** *give in marriage;* **in mātrimōnium dūcere,** *marry.*
Matrona, -ae, f., *the Marne* (river).
mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *make haste, hasten.*
maximē, see **magnopere.**
maximus, -a, -um, sup. of **magnus;** **maximus nātū,** see **nātū.**
medicāmentum, -ī, n., *drug.*
medius, -a, -um, adj., *middle;*

mediā nocte, *midnight;* (in) **mediō colle**, *halfway up the hill.*
meī (gen.), reflex. pron., *of myself.*
melior, -ōris, compar. of **bonus**, *better.*
membrum, -ī, n., *limb.*
memoria, -ae, f., *memory;* **memoriā tenēre**, *to recollect.*
Menapiī, -ōrum, m., a Belgic people.
mēns, mentis, f., *mind, purpose.*
mēnsa, -ae, f., *table.*
mercātor, -ōris, m., *merchant.*
mercātūra, -ae, f., *trade.*
Mercurius, -ī, m., *Mercury.*
mereō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *deserve.*
mergō, -ere, mersī, mersus, *sink.*
merīdiēs, -ēī, m., *midday, noon; the south.*
meus, -a, -um, poss. pron., *my, mine.*
mīles, -itis, m., *soldier;* **novus mīles**, *recruit.*
mīlia, -ium, n., *thousands.*
mīlitāris, -e, *of soldiers, military;* **rēs mīlitāris, reī mīlitāris**, f., *military affairs, art of war.*
mīlle, adj., indecl., *a thousand.*
minae, -ārum, f., *threats.*
Minerva, -ae, f., *Minerva.*
ministrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *attend.*
ministerium, -ī, n., *office, service.*
minor, *less;* see **parvus.**
minus, adv., *less; not.*
mīrābilis, -e, adj., *wonderful.*
mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum, *wonder.*
mīrus, -a, -um, *strange.*
misceō, -ēre, miscuī, mixtus, *mix.*
miser, -era, -erum, adj., *wretched.*
misericordia, -ae, f., *mercy, compassion.*
mittō, -ere, mīsī, missus, *send.*
modus, -ī, m., *manner.*
moenia, -ium, n., *fortifications, walls of a city.*
molestus, -a, -um, adj., *troublesome, irksome.*
moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *advise, warn.*
mōns, montis, m., *mountain;* **sub monte**, *at the foot of the mountain.*
mōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *show.*
mōnstrum, -ī, n., *monster; portent.*
montānus, -ī, m., *mountaineer.*
monumentum, -ī, n., *monument.*
mora, -ae, f., *delay.*
morbus, -ī, m., *disease, sickness.*
mordeō, -ēre, momordī, morsus, *bite.*
Morinī, -ōrum, m., a Belgic people.
morior, morī, mortuus sum, *die.*
moror, -ārī, -ātus sum, *delay.*
mors, mortis, f., *death.*
mortālis, -e, *mortal; deadly.*
mōs, mōris, m., *custom;* pl., *character, manners, habits.*
mōtus, -ūs, m., *movement, revolt.*
moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *move;* with **castra**, *break up.*
mox, adv., *soon.*
mulier, -eris, f., *woman.*
multitūdō, -inis, f., *great number, multitude.*
multum, adv., *much.*
multus, -a, -um, *much;* pl., *many.*
mundus, -ī, m., *world.*
mūnīmentum, -ī, n., *rampart.*
mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *fortify.*
mūnītiō, -ōnis, f., *fortification.*
mūrus, -ī, m., *wall.*
mūs, mūris, m., *mouse.*
mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *change.*

N

nam, conj., *for.*
nārrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tell.*
nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, *be born.*
Nāsīca, -ae, m., *Nasica.*
Naso, -ōnis, m., P. Ovidius Naso, the Roman poet, *Ovid.*
nātiō, -ōnis, f., *nation.*
nātū, m., abl., *by birth;* **maior nātū**, *older;* **maximus nātū**, *eldest.*
nātūra, -ae, f., *nature.*
nauta, -ae, m., *sailor.*
nāvālis, -e, *of ships, naval.*
nāvigium, -ī, n., *boat.*
nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *sail.*
nāvis, -is, f., *ship.*
Nazarēnus, -a, -um, *of Nazareth.*
nē, conj., *that not, lest;* **nē . . . quidem**, *not . . . even*, the emphatic word standing between **nē** and **quidem**.
-ne, interrog. particle (enclitic).
nec, conj. (same as **neque**), *and not.*
necessārius, -a, -um, *necessary, urgent.*
necessitās, -tātis, f., *need, necessity.*
necō, -āre, -āvī, -atus, *put to death.*
negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *deny, say not.*
negōtium, -ī, n., *business; trouble.*
nēmō, —, dat., **nēminī**, m., *no one.*
nepōs, -ōtis, m., *grandson.*
Neptūnus, -ī, m., *Neptune*, god of the sea.
neque, conj., *and . . . not, neither;* **neque . . . neque**, *neither . . . nor.*
Nerviī, -ōrum, m., *the Nervii*, a warlike Belgic people.
neuter, -tra, -trum, gen., **neutrīus**, adj., *neither.*
niger, -gra, -grum, adj., *black.*
nihil, also **nīl**, indecl., n., *nothing.*
nisi, conj., *if not, unless, except.*
nōbilis, -e, *of high rank, noble, well-known, famous;* **nōbilis, -is**, m., *noble.*
noceō, -ēre, -uī, —, *do harm, injure.*
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, *to be unwilling.*
nōmen, -inis, n., *name.*
nōn, adv., *not.*
nōnāgintā, num. adj., indecl., *ninety.*
nōndum, adv., *not yet.*
nōnne, interrog. particle, expecting the answer "*yes.*"
nōnnūllus, -a, -um, adj., *some.*
nọnnumquam, adv., *sometimes.*
nōn sōlum, . . . sed etiam, adv., *not only, . . . but also.*
nōs, nostrum, pron., *we.*
nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtus (used only as adj.), *learn, know.*
noster, -tra, -trum, poss. pron., *our, ours.*
notō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *mark, note.*
nōtus, -a, -um, adj., *familiar, famous.*
novem, num. adj., indecl., *nine.*
Noviodūnum, -ī, n., a town of the Suessiones.
novissimī, -ōrum, m., *those in the rear.*
novus, -a, -um, adj., *new;* **novus mīles**, *recruit.*
nox, noctis, f., *night;* **mediā nocte**, *at midnight;* **proximā nocte**, *on the following night.*
nūbēs, -is, f., *cloud.*
nubila, -ōrum, n., *clouds.*

nūdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *strip, leave unprotected.*
nūllus, -a, -um, gen., **nūllīus,** adj., *no, none, no one.*
num, interrog. particle, expecting the answer "*no*"; *whether.*
Numa, -ae, m., *Numa.*
nūmen, -inis, n., *divinity.*
numerus, -ī, m., *number, account.*
Numitor, -ōris, m., *Numitor.*
numquam, adv., *never.*
nunc, adv., *now.*
nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *announce, report, declare.*
nūntius, -ī, m., *messenger, message.*

O

Ō, interj., *O! Oh!*
ob, prep. (with acc.), *on account of.*
obdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *extend.*
obiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, *throw against, set before, oppose.*
oblītus, -a, -um, *forgetful.*
oblīvīscor, -līvīscī, -lītus sum, *forget.*
obses, -idis, m. and f., *hostage, pledge, security.*
obsideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessus, *besiege.*
obstruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus, *block up, obstruct.*
obtemperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *obey.*
obtineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus, *hold, have, obtain, prevail.*
occāsiō, -ōnis, f., *chance, opportunity.*
occāsus, -ūs, m., *setting.*
occīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus, *kill, slay.*
occultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *hide.*
occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *seize, take possession of.*
occurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursus, *meet.*
octāvus, -a, -um, *eighth.*
octō, num. adj., indecl., *eight.*
octōgintā, num. adj., indecl., *eighty.*
oculus, -ī, m., *eye.*
ōdī, ōdisse, ōsūrus, *hate;* note that the perfect has the force of the present.
officīna, -ae, f., *workshop.*
officium, -ī, n., *office, official employment, duty.*
ōlim, adv., *once, formerly.*
olus, -eris, n., *vegetables, greens.*
ōmen, -inis, n., *omen.*
omittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *let go, neglect, lose.*
omnīnō, adv., *in all.*
omnis, -e, adj., *all, every.*
onus, -eris, n., *burden, weight.*
opera, -ae, f., *work.*
operor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *work.*
opīniō, -ōnis, f., *belief, reputation, expectation.*
oportet, -ēre, -uit, impers., *it is fitting, it is necessary.*
oppidānī, -ōrum, m., *townspeople.*
oppidum, -ī, n., *town.*
oppōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *put against, oppose.*
opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus, *weigh down.*
oppugnātiō, -ōnis, f., *assault, attack, siege.*
oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *storm, attack, besiege.*
optimus, *excellent;* see **bonus.**
opus, operis, n., *work, labor.*
ōra, -ae, f., *coast;* **ōra maritima,** *sea coast.*
ōrātiō, -ōnis, f., *speech, oration.*

orbis, -is, m., *ring, circle.*
ōrdinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *appoint, settle.*
ōrdō, -inis, m., *rank, order, row.*
Orgetorīx, -īgis, m., a Helvetian lord.
orior, orīrī, ortus sum, *spring from, rise.*
ōrnāmentum, -ī, n., *ornament, jewel.*
ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *adorn.*
ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *beg, pray.*
ostendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus, *show.*
ostium, -ī, n., *door, entrance.*
ovis, -is, f., *sheep.*

P

pābulum, -ī, n., *fodder.*
pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *pacify, subdue.*
paean, -ānis, m., *hymn.*
paene, adv., *almost, nearly.*
pāgina, -ae, f., *page.*
Palātium, -ī, n., *Palatine hill.*
palma, -ae, f., *palm, reward.*
palūs, -ūdis, f., *swamp, marsh.*
pālus, -ī, m., *stick, stake.*
pandō, -ere, pandī, passus, *stretch out.*
pār, paris, adj., *equal.*
parātus, -a, -um, adj., *prepared.*
parcō, -ere, pepercī, parsūrus, *spare.*
parēns, -entis, m. and f., *parent.*
pāreō, -ēre, -uī, —, *obey.*
pariēs, -etis, m., *wall* (of a house).
parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *get ready, prepare for, prepare.*
pars, partis, f., *part, side, direction.* **ab superiōre parte**, *from a higher position;* **ex omnibus partibus**, *on all sides, from all sides.*
parum (comp., **minus**; sup., **minimē**), adv., *little, too little.*
parvulus, -a, -um, *tiny.*
parvus, -a, -um (comp., **minor**; sup., **minimus**), adj., *small.*
passus, -ūs, m., *pace;* **mīlle passūs**, *a mile.*
pāstor, -ōris, m., *shepherd.*
patefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factus, *open.*
pateō, -ēre, -uī, —, *lie open, extend.*
pater, -tris, m., *father.*
patior, patī, passus sum, *suffer, permit.*
patria, -ae, f., *native land.*
paucī, -ae, -a, adj., *few.*
paulisper, adv., *for a short time.*
paulō, adv., *by a little, a little;* **paulō ante mediam noctem**, *a little before midnight.*
paulum, -ī, n., *a little.*
paulum, adv., *a little, somewhat.*
pāx, pācis, f., *peace.*
pectus, -oris, n., *breast.*
pecūnia, -ae, f., *riches, wealth.*
pecus, -oris, n., *cattle, herd, flock.*
pedes, -itis, m., *foot soldier;* pl., *infantry.*
pedester, -tris, -tre, *of infantry, infantry* (adj.).
Pedius, -ī, m., *Quintus Pedius.*
peior, peius, *worse;* see **malus**.
pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus, *drive out, put to flight, defeat.*
pendō, -ere, pependī, pēnsus, *pay.*
Pēnelopē, -ēs, acc. **-ēn**, f., *Penelope.*
pēninsula, -ae, f., *peninsula.*
per, prep. (with acc.), *through, by, on account of.*

percipiō, **-ere**, **-cēpī**, **-ceptus**, *feel.*
perdūcō, **-ere**, **-dūxī**, **-ductus**, *lead through, construct, extend.*
perfectus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *perfect.*
perferō, **-ferre**, **-tulī**, **-lātus**, *report.*
perficiō, **-ere**, **-fēcī**, **-fectus**, *finish.*
perfugium, **-ī**, n., *place of refuge, shelter.*
periclitor, **-ārī**, **-ātus sum**, *prove, make trial of.*
perīculum, **-ī**, n., *danger, peril.*
peristȳlium, **-ī**, n., *peristyle.*
perītus, **-a**, **-um**, *skilled, experienced.*
perlūstrō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *wander through, survey.*
permaneō, **-ēre**, **-mānsī**, **-mānsūrus**, *remain through, continue; hold out.*
permittō, **-ere**, **-mīsī**, **-missus**, *intrust, commit.*
permoveō, **-ēre**, **-mōvī**, **-mōtus**, *alarm, influence.*
perpaucī, **-ae**, **-a**, adj., *very few.*
perrumpō, **-ere**, **-rūpī**, **-ruptus**, *break through.*
perscrībō, **-ere**, **-scrīpsī**, **-scrīptus**, *write through, write in full.*
persōna, **-ae**, f., *character.*
personō, **-āre**, **-uī**, **-itus**, *sound.*
perspiciō, **-ere**, **-spexī**, **-spectus**, *look, observe.*
persuādeō, **-ēre**, **-suāsī**, **-suāsus**, *persuade*, governs the dat. followed by **ut** with the subjunctive.
perterreō, **-ēre**, **-uī**, **-itus**, *frighten thoroughly, alarm;* **perterritus**, **-a**, **-um**, *thoroughly frightened.*
pertineō, **-ēre**, **-uī**, —, *extend.*
perturbō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *disturb greatly.*
perveniō, **-īre**, **-vēnī**, **-ventūrus**, *arrive (at).*
pēs, **pedis**, m., *foot.*
petō, **-ere**, **-īvī** or **-iī**, **-ītus**, *seek, ask;* takes acc. of the thing and abl. of the person.
Phoebus, **-ī**, m., *Phoebus.*
pīctūra, **-ae**, f., *picture.*
pīlum, **-ī**, n., *javelin.*
placeō, **-ēre**, **-uī**, **-itus**, *please;* used impersonally, **placet**, *it seems good.*
placidus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *calm.*
Plancus, **-ī**, m., *Plancus.*
plēbs, **plēbis**, f., *common people, plebeians.*
plēnus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *full.*
plērīque, **-ōrumque**, m., *the majority, most.*
plērumque, adv., *generally.*
plūrēs, **-ium**, pl. adj., compar. of **multus**, *more, several.*
plūrimus, superl. of **multus**, *most.*
plūs, **plūris**, compar. of **multum**, *more;* **plūs posse**, *to be more powerful;* **plūrimum posse**, *to be most powerful, have very great influence.*
pluvia, **-ae**, f., *rain.*
pōculum, **-ī**, n., *cup.*
poena, **-ae**, f., *fine, penalty, punishment;* **poenās dare**, *suffer punishment;* **poenam sūmere**, *inflict punishment.*
Poenī, **-ōrum**, m., *Carthaginians.*
poēta, **-ae**, m., *poet.*
polliceor, **-ērī**, **-itus sum**, *promise* (with fut. infin.).
Polyphēmus, **-ī**, m., *Polyphemus.*
Pompēius, **-ī**, m., *Pompey.*
Pompilius, **-ī**, m., *Pompilius.*

pōmum, -ī, n., *fruit, apple.*
pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus, *put, place;* (with **castra**), *pitch.*
pōns, pontis, m., *bridge.*
pontifex, -icis, m., *pontifex* (a Roman high priest).
populor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *lay waste, devastate.*
populus, -ī, m., *people, nation.*
porcus, -ī, m., *pig, swine.*
Porsena, -ae, m., *Porsena.*
porta, -ae, f., *gate.*
portendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus, *predict, portend.*
portentum, -ī, n., *marvel, portent.*
portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *carry.*
portus, -ūs, m., *harbor, port.*
poscō, -ere, poposcī, —, *demand.*
possideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessus, *occupy, possess.*
possum, posse, potuī, *can, able;* **plūs posse,** *to have more influence;* **plūrimum posse,** *to have very great influence.*
post, adv., *afterwards, after.*
post, prep. with acc. (of place), *behind;* (of time), *after.*
posteā, adv., *after, afterwards, thereafter.*
posteritās, -ātis, f., *posterity.*
posterus, -a, -um (comp., **posterior**; sup., **postrēmus**), adj., *following.*
postquam, conj., *after.*
postrēmus, -a, -um, superl. of **posterus,** *last.*
postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *claim, demand.*
potēns, potentis, adj., *powerful.*
potestās, -tātis, f., *power, opportunity.*
potior, -īrī, -ītus sum, *get possession of.*
praeacūtus, -a, -um, *sharp* (*at the end*).
praeambulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *walk before.*
praecēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, *surpass.*
praeceptum, -ī, n., *command, direction.*
praecipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, *instruct, advise, direct, order.*
praecipuē, adv., *especially.*
praedīcō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictus, *foretell.*
praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, *place over* or *in command of.*
praemittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *send ahead.*
praemium, -ī, n., *reward.*
praepōnō, -ere, -posuī, -itus, *place in command of.*
praesēns, -sentis, *present in person, present; immediate.*
praeses, -idis, m., *guardian, protector.*
praesidium, -ī, n., *guard, garrison.*
praestō, -āre, -stitī, -stitus, *excel; to be responsible for;* impers., **praestat,** *it is better;* **officium praestāre,** *to do one's duty.*
praesum, -esse, -fuī, *have command of, be at the head of.*
praeter, prep. (with acc.), *except.*
praetereā, adv., *besides.*
praeterquam, adv., *besides, other than.*
praetervehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectus, *carry by;* in pass., *be carried by, ride by.*
precēs, -um, f., *prayers.*

premō, **-ere**, **pressī**, **pressus**, *press;* pass., *be weighed down, pursue.*

prīmum, adv., *first.*

prīmus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *first, chief; first part of, early;* **prīmā lūce**, *at daybreak;* **quam prīmum**, *as soon as possible;* **prīmō**, *at first.*

prīnceps, **-cipis**, m., *chief.*

prior, **-ius**, adj., *former.*

Prīscus, **-ī**, m., *Priscus.*

prius, adv., *before, previously.*

prīvātus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *private.*

prō, prep. (with abl.), *in front of, in proportion to.*

for, { *instead of.* / *in defense of.* / *in behalf of.* }

probō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *approve.*

Proca, **-ae**, m., *Proca.*

prōcēdō, **-ere**, **-cessī**, **-cessūrus**, *go forward, advance.*

prōdigium, **-ī**, n., *portent, omen, sign.*

prōdō, **-ere**, **-didī**, **-ditus**, *surrender.*

prōdūcō, **-ere**, **-dūxī**, **-ductus**, *lead forward, lead forth.*

proelium, **-ī**, n., *battle.*

profectiō, **-ōnis**, f., *departure.*

prōficiō, **-ere**, **-fēcī**, **-fectus**, *go forward.*

proficīscor, **proficīscī**, **profectus sum**, *set out.*

profugiō, **-fugere**, **-fūgī**, —, *flee.*

prōgredior, **-ī**, **-gressus sum**, *advance, proceed.*

prohibeō, **-ēre**, **-uī**, **-itus**, *keep off, hinder, prohibit.*

prōiciō, **-icere**, **-iēcī**, **-iectus**, *throw forward;* **sē prōicere**, *leap down, expose oneself, fall.*

prōmō, **-ere**, **prōmpsī**, **prōmptus**, *bring forth, produce, render.*

prōmoveō, **-ēre**, **-mōvī**, **-mōtus**, *move forward, promote.*

prope, adv., *near, nearly, almost.*

properō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *hurry, hasten.*

propinquus, **-a**, **-um**, *near, neighboring; related.*

propinquus, **-ī**, m., *relative.*

propior, **-ius** (sup., **proximus**), adj., *nearer.*

prōpōnō, **-ere**, **-posuī**, **-positus**, *set forth, put before, propose.*

proprius, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *one's own.*

propter, prep. (with acc.), *on account of.*

proptereā quod, *because.*

prōsequor, **-sequī**, **-secūtus sum**, *follow, pursue.*

prōsperē, adv., *successfully.*

prōsperus, **-a**, **-um**, *prosperous.*

prōtegō, **-ere**, **-tēxī**, **-tēctus**, *protect.*

prōvehō, **-ere**, **-vexī**, **-vectus**, *carry forward.*

prōvideō, **-ēre**, **-vīdī**, **-vīsus**, *provide.*

prōvincia, **-ae**, f., *province.*

proximē, adv., *next, most recently.*

proximus, **-a**, **-um**, *next;* see **propior**; **proximā nocte**, *on the following night.*

prūdentia, **-ae**, f., *foresight, prudence.*

psallō, **-ere**, **-ī**, —, *play the harp; rejoice.*

pūblicus, **-a**, **-um**, *public.*

puella, **-ae**, f., *girl.*

puer, **puerī**, m., *boy.*

pugna, **-ae**, f., *fight, battle.*

pugnō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *fight.*

pulcher, **-chra**, **-chrum**, adj., *beautiful.*

pulchrē, adv., *beautifully.*
pūritas, -ātis, f., *purity.*
pūrus, -a, -um, *pure, clear.*
putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *think, believe.*

Q

Q. = Quintus, proper name.
quā, adv., *where, by what way.*
quadrāgēsimus, -a, -um, *fortieth.*
quadrāgintā, num. adj., indecl., *forty.*
quadringentī, -ae, -a, *four hundred.*
quaerō, -ere, -sīvī, -sītus, *ask, seek;* takes the acc. of the thing and the abl. of the person with **ē, ex, ā, ab**, or **dē**.
quaestus, -ūs, m., *getting of money, gain.*
quālis, -e, adj., *of what sort? of what kind?*
quam, adv. and conj., *than, as;* with superlatives, *as . . . as possible; how.*
quamobrem, adv., *why?*
quandō, *since.*
quantō opere, *how much?*
quantus, -a, -um, adj., *how great? how much?*
quārtus, -a, -um, *fourth.*
quasi, adv., *as if.*
quattuor, num. adj., indecl., *four.*
quattuordecim, num. adj., indecl., *fourteen.*
-que (an enclitic), *and.*
quī, quae, quod, rel. pron., *who, which, that, what.*
quī, quae, quod, interrog. adj., *what?, which?*
quia, conj., *because.*
quicquid (quisquis), n., *whatever.*
quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, indef. pron. and adj., *whoever, whatever.*
quīdam, quaedam, quiddam, indef. pron., *a certain one.*
quidem, adv., postpositive, *to be sure, indeed, certainly, at least;* **nē . . . quidem**, *not even.*
quiēs, -ētis, f., *repose, rest.*
quīn, conj., *that not, but that.*
quīndecim, num. adj., indecl., *fifteen.*
quīngentī, -ae, -a, *five hundred.*
quīnquāgintā, num. adj., indecl., *fifty.*
quīnque, num. adj., indecl., *five.*
quīntus, -a, -um, *fifth.*
quis, quid, interrog. pron., *who? what?*
quispiam, —, quidpiam, indef. pron., *any one, anything.*
quisquam, —, quicquam, indef. pron., *any one, anything.*
quisque, quaeque, quidque, pron. and adj., *each one, every one.*
quō, rel. adv., *where, whither, to which place, and . . . thither;* interrog. adv., *where? whither?*
quod, conj., *because; that.*
quōmodō, interrog. adv., *how?*
quoque, conj., *also.*
quot, adj., indecl., *how many?*
quum, conj. (same as **cum**), *when, since, although.*

R

rapīna, -ae, f., *robbery, plundering, plunder.*
rapiō, -ere, -uī, raptus, *seize, carry off.*

ratiō, -ōnis, f., *account, theory, manner;* **ratiō pācis,** *a regard for peace.*
ratis, -is, f., *raft.*
ratus, -a, -um, *reckoned, fixed by calculation.*
raucus, -a, -um, *hoarse, discordant.*
recēns, recentis, *fresh, new, recent.*
receptus, -ūs, m., *retreat.*
recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, receptus, *take back, receive;* with **sē,** *retreat, withdraw, recover.*
rēctus, -a, -um, *straight, direct.*
recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *refuse.*
reddō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *give back, restore.*
redeō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itūrus, *go back, return.*
redigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus, *drive back, reduce, render.*
redintegrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *renew.*
reditus, -ūs, m., *return.*
redūcō, -ere, redūxī, reductus, *lead back, withdraw.*
referō, -ferre, rettulī, -lātus, *bring back, report, reconsider.*
reficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, *repair, make over.*
refugiō, -ere, -fūgī, —, *flee back.*
refulgeō, -ere, -sī, —, *shine brightly.*
rēgīna, -ae, f., *queen.*
regiō, -ōnis, f., *region, boundary.*
rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *rule.*
rēgnum, -ī, n., *royal power, kingdom.*
regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctus, *rule, manage.*
Rēgulus, -ī, m., *Regulus.*
reiciō, -ere, reiēcī, reiectus, *throw back, repulse.*
relēgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *banish.*
religiō, -ōnis, f., *sense of duty, religion.*
relinquō, -ere, relīquī, relictus, *leave.*
reliquus, -a, -um, *remaining, the rest of.*
remaneō, -ēre, -mānsī, *remain.*
Remus, -ī, m., *Remus.*
Rēmus, -ī, m., *one of the Remi.*
remittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *send back.*
removeō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *move back, remove.*
repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsus, *repulse.*
reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertus, *find, discover.*
repertor, -ōris, m., *discoverer.*
repleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, *refill, fill up.*
reportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *carry back, bring back.*
requiēscō, -ere, requiēvī, requiētus, *rest, repose.*
requīrō, -ere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītus, *require.*
rēs, reī, f., *thing, affair;* **omnibus rēbus,** *in all respects.*
resistō, -ere, restitī, —, *resist, oppose.*
respondeō, -ēre, -dī, respōnsus, *answer, reply, respond.*
respōnsum, -ī, n., *answer.*
rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, f., *state, republic.*
restituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtus, *restore.*
retineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus, *restrain, detain, retain.*
revertō, -ere, -tī, -sus, and **revertor, -ī, reversus sum,** *turn*

back, return; the perfect stem tenses are from the active forms, the others from the deponent.
rēx, rēgis, m., *king.*
Rhēa, -ae, f., *Rhea.*
Rhēnus, -ī, m., *the Rhine* (river).
Rhodanus, -ī, m., *the Rhone* (river).
rīdeō, -ēre, rīsī, rīsus, *laugh, laugh at.*
rīpa, -ae, f., *bank* (of a river).
Robertus, -ī, m., *Robert.*
rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *ask.*
Rōma, -ae, f., *Rome.*
Rōmānus, -a, -um, adj., *Roman.*
Rōmānus, -ī, m., *a Roman.*
Rōmulus, -ī, m., *Romulus.*
rōs, rōris, m., *dew.*
rosa, -ae, f., *rose.*
rōstrum, -ī, n., *beak;* pl., *rostra.*
rubēns, -entis, *red.*
ruīna, -ae, f., *ruin.*
rūmor, -ōris, m., *rumor, report.*
rumpō, -ere, rūpī, ruptus, *burst.*
ruō, -ere, ruī, ruitūrus, *rush.*
rūpēs, -is, f., *rock, reef.*
rūrsus, adv., *again, anew.*

S

Sabīnī, -ōrum, m., *Sabines.*
Sabīnus, -ī, m., *Sabinus.*
saccus, -ī, m., *bag.*
sacer, sacra, sacrum, adj., *sacred.*
sacerdōs, -ōtis, m. and f., *priest, priestess.*
sacrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *render sacred.*
saepe, adv., *often.*
saevus, -a, -um, *cruel, savage.*
sagittārius, -ī, m., *archer, bowman.*
sāl, salis, m., *salt.*
saltus, -ūs, m., *leap, bound.*
salūs, -ūtis, f., *safety.*
salūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *salute.*
salvātor, -ōris, m., *savior.*
salveō, -ēre, —, —, *to be well;* **salvē** (imperative), *welcome.*
salvus, -a, -um, adj., *safe;* **salvam fac,** *keep, preserve, save.*
sānus, -a, -um, adj., *sound, sane.*
sapiēns, -entis, m., *a wise person.*
sapienter, adv., *wisely.*
satis (also **sat**), adv., *enough, sufficient.*
satisfaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factus, *satisfy,* with dative.
saxum, -ī, n., *stone, rock.*
scelus, -eris, n., *crime.*
scientia, -ae, f., *knowledge.*
sciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *know.*
Scōtī, -ōrum, m., *Scots.*
scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *write.*
scūtum, -ī, n., *shield.*
secundus, -a, -um, *second, following; favorable.*
sēcūrus, -a, -um, adj., *safe, secure.*
sed, conj., *but.*
sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessūrus, *sit.*
sēdēs, -is, f., *seat, abode.*
sēmentis, -is, f., *sowing.*
semper, adv., *always, ever.*
senātor, -ōris, m., *senator.*
senectūs, -ūtis, f., *old age.*
senātus, -ūs, m., *senate.*
senex, -is (comp., **senior**; sup., **maximus nātū**), adj., *old;* as a subst., *old man.*
Senonēs, -um, m., a people of Gaul.
sententia, -ae, f., *feeling, thought, opinion, decision.*
sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, *feel, realize, perceive, think.*
septem, num. adj., indecl., *seven.*

septimus, -a, -um, *seventh.*
Sēquana, -ae, f., *the Seine* (river).
Sēquanus, -ī, m., *a Sequanian.*
sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *follow.*
serva, -ae, f., *slave* (female).
serviō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *be slave to, serve.*
servitūs, -ūtis, f., *slavery.*
Servius, -ī, m., *Servius.*
servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *save, protect, maintain, keep.*
servus, -ī, m., *slave, servant* (male).
sescentī, -ae, -a, num. adj., *six hundred.*
sex, num. adj., indecl., *six.*
sexāgintā, num. adj., indecl., *sixty.*
sī, conj., *if.*
sīc, adv., *so* (manner), *in this way.*
siccum, -ī, n., *dry land.*
siccus, -a, -um, *dry.*
Sicilia, -ae, f., *Sicily.*
sīdus, -eris, n., *constellation;* pl., *heavenly bodies.*
significō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *show, indicate.*
signum, -ī, n., *signal, standard.*
silenter, adv., *silently.*
silva, -ae, f., *forest, woods.*
Silvia, -ae, f., *Silvia.*
similis, -e, adj., *like, similar.*
simul, adv., *at once, as soon as.*
simulācrum, -ī, n., *image, statue.*
simulāns, -antis, adj., *pretending.*
sine, prep. (with abl.), *without.*
singulāris, -e, *single, universal, unique.*
singulī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., *one by one.*
sinister, -tra, -trum, adj., *left, left hand.*
sīquis, sīqua, sīquid, *if any one or thing.*
situs, -ūs, m., *situation.*
socius, -ī, m., *comrade, ally.*
sōl, sōlis, m., *sun;* **sōlis occāsū,** *at sunset.*
soleō, -ēre, -itus sum, *be accustomed.*
solum, -ī, n., *ground, floor.*
sōlus, -a, -um, gen., **sōlīus,** *only, alone.*
solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtus, *loosen, unfasten;* **nāvem (nāvēs) solvere,** or **solvere** alone, *cast off, set sail.*
somnus, -ī, m., *sleep.*
sonitus, -ūs, m., *sound, noise.*
soror, -ōris, f., *sister.*
spargō, -ere, sparsī, sparsus, *scatter.*
Sparta, -ae, f., *Sparta.*
Spartacus, -ī, m., *Spartacus.*
Spartānus, -a, -um, adj., *Spartan.*
spatium, -ī, n., *space, time.*
spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *look at, watch.*
speculātor, -ōris, m., *scout.*
speculum, -ī, n., *mirror.*
spēlunca, -ae, f., *cave.*
spernō, -ere, sprēvī, sprētus, *spurn, despise.*
spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *hope.*
spēs, speī, f., *hope.*
spīrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *breathe.*
spissus, -a, -um, *crowded.*
stabiliō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *make firm, establish.*
statim, adv., *immediately.*
statua, -ae, f., *statue.*
statuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, *determine, establish.*

status, **-ūs**, m., *state, condition.*
stella, **-ae**, f., *star.*
stellātus, **-a**, **-um**, *star-spangled.*
stilus, **-ī**, m., *stilus; pen.*
stō, **-āre**, **stetī**, **stātus**, *stand.*
strepitus, **-ūs**, m., *noise, uproar.*
strīdor, **-ōris**, m., *squeaking.*
studium, **-ī**, n., *zeal; pursuit.*
sub, prep. (with acc. after verbs of motion), *under;* (with words denoting time), *about, towards;* (with abl. to denote place at which), *at the foot of, under.*
subiciō, **-ere**, **-iēcī**, **-iectus**, *throw under, place under.*
subitō, adv., *suddenly.*
sublātus, see **tollō**.
submittō, **-ere**, **-mīsī**, **-missus**, *send secretly.*
subruō, **-ere**, **-ruī**, **-rutus**, *undermine.*
subsequor, **-sequī**, **-secūtus sum**, *follow close upon.*
subsidium, **-ī**, n., *aid, support.*
succēdō, **-ere**, **-cessī**, **-cessūrus**, *approach; succeed.*
Suēbī, **-ōrum**, m., *Swabians.*
Suessiōnēs, **-um**, m., *Suessiones.*
suī (gen.), reflex. pron., *of himself, herself, itself, themselves.*
sum, **esse**, **fuī**, *be.*
summus (superl. of **superus**), *highest, top of.*
sūmō, **-ere**, **sūmpsī**, **sūmptus**, *take, assume, put on.*
super, prep., *over, above.*
Superbus, **-ī**, m., *"the Proud."*
superō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *surpass, conquer, overcome, excel.*
supersedeō, **-ēre**, **-sēdī**, **-sessūrus**, *refrain (from).*
supersum, **-esse**, **-fuī**, *be left over, survive.*
superus, **-ī**, m., *inhabitant of the upper world.*
superus, **-a**, **-um** (comp., **superior**; sup., **suprēmus** or **summus**), *high, above.*
suppetō, **-ere**, **-īvī**, **-ītus**, *be at hand.*
supplicium, **-ī**, n., *punishment.*
suprā, adv., *above.*
suprēmus, **-a**, **-um** (sup. of **superus**), *highest.*
suscipiō, **-ere**, **-cēpī**, **-ceptus**, *take up, undertake, assume.*
suspīciō, **-ōnis**, f., *suspicion.*
sustineō, **-ēre**, **-uī**, **-tentus**, *check, withstand, sustain.*
suus, **-a**, **-um**, poss. pron., *his, her, their, its.*
Syrācūsae, **-ārum**, f., *Syracuse.*

T

T. = **Titus**, proper name.
taberna, **-ae**, f., *shop, booth.*
tabernāculum, **-ī**, n., *tent.*
tablīnum, **-ī**, n., *tablinum* (apartment of a Roman house where the family records were kept).
tabula, **-ae**, f., *tablet, document.*
tacitus, **-a**, **-um**, *silent.*
tālis, **-e**, adj., *of such a kind, such.*
tam, adv. of degree, *so.*
tamen, conj., *nevertheless, still.*
Tanaquil, **-quīlis**, f., *Tanaquil.*
tandem, adv., *at length.*
tangō, **-ere**, **tetigī**, **tāctus**, *touch.*
tantum, adv., *only.*
tantus, **-a**, **-um**, *so great, such.*
tardus, **-a**, **-um**, *slow, late.*
Tarpēia, **-ae**, f., *Tarpeia.*

Tarquinius, **-ī**, m., *Tarquinius, Tarquin.*
tēctum, **-ī**, n., *roof.*
tegō, **-ere**, **tēxī**, **tēctus**, *cover.*
tēlum, **-ī**, n., *dart, weapon.*
tempestās, **-tātis**, f., *storm, bad weather.*
templum, **-ī**, n., *temple.*
temptō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *try, test, attempt.*
tempus, **-oris**, n., *time.*
tendō, **-ere**, **tetendī**, **tentus**, *extend.*
tenebrae, **-ārum**, f., *darkness.*
teneō, **-ēre**, **-uī**, —, *hold.*
tentō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *attempt.*
tergum, **-ī**, n., *back.*
terra, **-ae**, f., *earth, land.*
terreō, **-ēre**, **-uī**, **-itus**, *frighten.*
terribilis, **-e**, *terrible, frightful.*
terror, **-ōris**, m., *fright, terror.*
tertium, adv., *a third time.*
tertius, **-a**, **-um**, *third.*
testūdō, **-inis**, f., *testudo.*
Tiberis, **-is**, acc. **-im**, abl. **-ī**, m., *the Tiber* (river).
Tiberius, **-ī**, m., *Tiberius.*
timeō, **-ēre**, **-uī**, —, *fear.*
timidus, **-a**, **-um**, *fearful, cowardly.*
timor, **-ōris**, m., *fear, dread.*
Titurius, **-ī**, m., *Quintus Titurius Sabinus.*
toga, **-ae**, f., *toga.*
togātus, **-a**, **-um**, *wearing a toga.*
tollō, **tollere**, **sustulī**, **sublātus**, *raise, remove;* **ancorās tollere**, *to weigh anchor.*
tormentum, **-ī**, n., *engine of war.*
tot, adj., indecl., *so many.*
totidem, adj., *just as many.*
tōtus, **-a**, **-um**, gen., **tōtīus**, *whole.*
tractō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *touch, feel.*
trādō, **-ere**, **-didī**, **-ditus**, *give up, hand over, surrender; impart, hand down, teach.*
trādūcō, **-ere**, **-dūxī**, **-ductus**, *lead across.*
trahō, **-ere**, **trāxī**, **tractus**, *draw, drag.*
trāiciō, **-ere**, **-iēcī**, **-iectus**, *throw across, carry across, transport; cross; pierce.*
trānō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātūrus**, *swim across.*
tranquillitās, **-ātis**, f., *tranquillity.*
trāns, prep. (with acc.), *across.*
trānseō, **-īre**, **-iī** (**-īvī**), **-itus**, *go across, cross.*
trānsferō, **-ferre**, **-tulī**, **-lātus**, *carry across.*
trānsfīgō, **-ere**, **-fīxī**, **-fīxus**, *pierce.*
trānsfodiō, **-ere**, **-fōdī**, **-fossus**, *pierce through, stab through.*
trānsversus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *crosswise, oblique.*
trecentī, **-ae**, **-a**, *three hundred.*
trēs, **tria**, *three.*
tribūtum, **-ī**, n., *tax, tribute.*
tricēsimus, **-a**, **-um**, *thirtieth;* **tricēsimus septimus**, *thirty-seventh.*
trīgintā, num. adj., indecl., *thirty.*
triumphō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *triumph.*
Trōia, **-ae**, f., *Troy.*
tū, **tuī**, pers. pron., *you.*
tuba, **-ae**, f., *trumpet.*
tuī (gen.), reflex. pron., *of yourself.*
Tullia, **-ae**, f., *Tullia.*
Tullius, **-ī**, m., *Tullius.*
Tullus, **-ī**, m., *Tullus.*
tum, adv., *then.*
tumultus, **-ūs**, m., *disturbance, tumult.*
tumulus, **-ī**, m., *mound.*

turba, **-ae**, f., *uproar, commotion; crowd.*
turris, **-is**, f., *tower.*
tūtor, **-ōris**, m., *guardian.*
tūtus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *safe.*
tuus, **-a**, **-um**, poss. pron., *your, yours.*
tyrannus, **-ī**, m., *tyrant.*

U

ubi, interrog. adv., *where?* rel. adv., *when, where.*
ubīque, adv., *everywhere.*
Ulixēs, **-is**, m., *Ulysses.*
ūllus, **-a**, **-um**, gen., **ūllīus**, *any.*
ulterior, **-ius** (sup., **ultimus**), adj., *farther;* **in ulteriōre Galliā**, *in farther Gaul.*
ultimus, **-a**, **-um**, *last, extreme.*
ultrā, adv., *beyond, on the other side.*
umerus, **-ī**, m., *shoulder.*
ūnā, adv., *along with.*
unde, adv., *whence.*
undique, adv., *from all sides, on all sides.*
ungō, **-ere**, **ūnxī**, **ūnctus**, *anoint.*
unguentum, **-ī**, n., *ointment.*
ūniō, **-īre**, **-iī**, **-ītus**, *unite.*
ūniversī, **-ōrum**, m., *all together.*
ūnus, **-a**, **-um**, gen., **ūnīus**, *one;* pl., *only, alone.*
urbs, **urbis**, f., *city.*
ūsus, **-ūs**, m., *use.*
ut, conj., *that, in order that, as* (when followed by indicative).
ūter, **ūtris**, m., *skin,* used as a bag or bottle.
uter, **utra**, **utrum**, gen., **utrīus**, adj., *which* (of two); *either.*
uterque, **-traque**, **-trumque**, *each, every.*
utī, see **ut**.
ūtilis, **-e** (comp., **-ior**; sup., **-issimus**), adj., *useful.*
utinam, adv., *would that! O that!*
ūtor, **ūtī**, **ūsus sum**, with abl., *use.*
utrimque, adv., *on both sides.*
utrum, conj., not translated in direct questions; in indirect questions, *whether.*
ūva, **-ae**, f., *grape.*
uxor, **-ōris**, f., *wife.*

V

vacuus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *empty;* **vacuus ab**, *destitute of.*
vadum, **-ī**, n., *shoal, ford.*
vāgītus, **-ūs**, m., *crying.*
vagor, **-ārī**, **-ātus sum**, *wander.*
valeō, **-ēre**, **-uī**, **-itūrus**, *be powerful, be strong.*
vāllum, **-ī**, n., *rampart.*
valor, **-ōris**, m., *value.*
vās, **vāsis**, pl. **vāsa**, **-ōrum**, n., *dish, vessel.*
vastātiō, **-ōnis**, f., *devastation.*
vāstō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, *lay waste.*
vehementer, adv., *violently, extremely, exceedingly.*
vehō, **-ere**, **vexī**, **vectus**, *carry.*
vel, conj., *or;* **vel . . . vel**, *either . . . or.*
Veliocassēs, **-ium**, m., *the Veliocasses.*
vēlōciter (comp., **vēlōcius**; sup., **vēlōcissimē**), adv., *swiftly.*
vēlōx, gen., **vēlōcis**, adj., *swift.*
vēlum, **-ī**, n., *curtain.*
venēnum, **-ī**, n., *poison.*
venerātiō, **-ōnis**, f., *worship.*
Venetī, **-ōrum**, m., *the Veneti,* a maritime people of Gaul.

veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus, *come.*
venter, -tris, m., *belly.*
ventus, -ī, m., *wind.*
verbum, -ī, n., *word.*
vereor, -ērī, -itus sum, *fear, dread.*
vērō, adv., *in truth, but.*
vēritās, -ātis, f., *truth.*
vertō, -ere, vertī, versus, *turn.*
vērus, -a, -um, adj., *true.*
vescor, vescī, with abl., *feed (on), eat.*
vesper, -erī, m., *evening.*
vespertīnus, -a, -um, (*pertaining to*) *evening.*
Vesta, -ae, f., *Vesta.*
Vestālis, -e, adj., *Vestal.*
vester, -tra, -trum, poss. pron., *your, yours.*
vēstibulum, -ī, n., *vestibule.*
vēstīgium, -ī, n., *trace, vestige.*
vetō, -āre, vetuī, vetitus, *forbid.*
vetus, gen., **veteris**, adj., *old.*
vexillum, -ī, n., *banner.*
via, -ae, f., *road, way, journey.*
vice, f. (abl. of **vicis**, *change*), *in turn; in place (of).*
vīcēsimus, -a, -um, *twentieth.*
victor, -ōris, m., *victor, conqueror.*
victōria, -ae, f., *victory.*
vīcus, -ī, m., *village.*
videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus, *see.*
videor, -ērī, vīsus sum, *seem, appear.*
vigilia, -ae, f., *watch* (part of the night).
vigilō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *keep awake, watch*
vīgintī, num. adj., indecl., *twenty.*
vīlla, -ae, f., *farmhouse; country-house.*
vīmen, -inis, n., *pliant twig, osier.*
vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus, *conquer, defeat.*
vinculum, -ī, n., *chain;* pl., *chains, prison.*
vindēmia, -ae, f., *vintage.*
vīnea, -ae, f., *vinea.*
vīnum, -ī, n., *wine.*
violō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *dishonor, violate, break.*
vir, -ī, m., *man.*
virgō, -inis, f., *virgin, maiden.*
Viromanduī, -ōrum, m., *the Viromandui.*
virtūs, -tūtis, f., *virtue, valor, courage, bravery.*
vīs, vīs, f., *force, violence;* pl., **vīrēs, vīrium**, etc., *strength; number.*
vīta, -ae, f., *life.*
vitiātus, -a, -um, *spoiled, tainted.*
vitiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *spoil, taint.*
vīvō, -ere, vīxī, vīctus, *live.*
vīvus, -a, -um, *alive.*
vix, adv., *scarcely.*
vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call.*
Volcānus, -ī, m., *Vulcan*, the god of fire.
volito, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *fly to and fro, flutter, float, flow.*
volō, velle, voluī, —, *be willing, wish.*
volō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *fly.*
voluptās, -tātis, f., *delight.*
Volusēnus, -ī, m., *Volusenus.*
vōtum, -ī, n., *vow, wish.*
vōx, vōcis, f., *voice;* pl., *words.*
vulgus, -ī, n., (*the*) *crowd.*
vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *wound.*
vulnus, -eris, n., *wound.*
vultur, -uris, m., *vulture.*
vultus, -ūs, m., *face, countenance*

Z

Zephyrus, -ī, m., *Zephyrus, west wind.*

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

A

ability, *facultās, -tātis*, f.
able, *possum, posse, potuī*, —.
about, *dē*, with abl.; *ad, circum*, with acc.
abundance, *cōpia, -ae*, f.
accept, *accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus*.
accomplish, *cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus; efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus*.
across, *trāns*, with acc.; *in*, with abl.
act, *agō, agere, ēgī, āctus*.
active, *ācer, ācris, ācre*.
advance, *prōgredior, -ī, -gressus sum; signa īnferre*.
advise, *moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus*.
affair, *rēs, reī*, f.
after, *post*.
again, *rūrsus*.
against, *in, contrā*, with acc.
ago, *ante*.
aid, *auxilium, auxilī*, n.; *subsidium, subsidī*, n.
all, *omnis, -e*.
allow, *patior, patī, passus sum*.
almost, *prope, paene, ferē*.
alone, *sōlus, -a, -um*.
already, *iam*.
although, *cum*.
always, *semper*.
ambassador, *lēgātus, -ī*, m.
Ambiani, *Ambiānī, -ōrum*, m.
among, *inter*, with acc.
and, *et, ac, atque, -que*.
anew, *rūrsus*.
animal, *animal, -ālis*, n.
announce, *nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus*.
another, *alius, alia, aliud*.
answer, *respondeō, ēre, -dī, respōnsus*.
any, *ūllus, -a, -um*.
approach, n., *adventus, -ūs*, m.
approach, v., *adeō, -īre, -īvī, -itus*.
Aquitania, *Aquītānia, -ae*, f.
Ariovistus, *Ariovistus, -ī*, m.
arms, *arma, -ōrum*, n.
army, *exercitus, -ūs*, m.
around, *circum*, with acc.
arrange, *ōrdinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus*.
arrival, *adventus, -ūs*, m.
as, . . . *ut*.
as soon as, *cum prīmum*.
ascertain, *cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus; reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertus*.
ask, *petō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus; quaerō, -ere, -sīvī, -sītus*.
assemble, *conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus*.
assembly, *conventus, -ūs*, m.
assert, *cōnfīrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus*.
associate, *comes, -itis*, m. and f.
assume, *sūmō, -ere, sumpsī, sumptus*.
at, abl. of time or place, locative.
attack, n., *impetus, -ūs*, m.
attack, v., *oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus*.
attempt, *cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum*.
authority, *auctōritās, -tātis*, f.
auxiliary forces, *auxilia, -ōrum*, n.

B

bad, *malus, -a, -um.*
band, *manus, -ūs*, f.
bank, *rīpa, -ae*, f.
battle, *proelium, proelī*, n.
be, *sum, esse, fuī*, —.
bear, *ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus.*
beautiful, *pulcher, -chra, -chrum.*
because, *quod.*
become, *fīō, fierī, factus sum.*
before, *ante*, with acc.
begin, *coepī, coepisse; incipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus; ineō, -īre, -iī, -itus.*
beginning, *initium, initī*, n.
behalf of, *prō*, with abl.
behind, *post*, with acc.
Belgians, *Belgae, -ārum*, m.
believe, *crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus.*
Bellovaci, *Bellovacī, -ōrum*, m.
besides, *praeterquam.*
besiege, *oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
best, *optimus, -a, -um.*
better (it is), *praestat.*
better, *melior, -ius.*
between, *inter*, with acc.
black, *niger, -gra, -grum.*
blame, *culpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
body, *corpus, -oris*, n.
book, *liber, librī*, m.
born (be), *nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum.*
both . . . and, *et . . . et.*
boundary, *regiō, -ōnis*, f.; *fīnis, -is*, m.
boy, *puer, -ī*, m.
brave, *fortis, -e.*
bravely, *fortiter.*
bravery, *virtūs, -tūtis*, f.
break (camp), *moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus.*
bridge, *pōns, pontis*, m.
brief, *brevis, -e.*
bring, *ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus; afferō, -ferre, attulī, allātus.*
bring back, *redūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus; referō, -ferre, rettulī, relātus.*
bring in or upon, *īnferō, -ferre, intulī, illātus.*
bring out, *efferō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātus.*
bring together, *cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, collātus.*
bring (war on), *īnferō, -ferre, -tulī, illātus.*
broad, *lātus, -a, -um.*
brother, *frāter, -tris*, m.
Brutus, *Brūtus, -ī*, m.
build, *aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
building, *aedificium, aedificī*, n.
burn, *incendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsus.*
but, *sed.*
by, *ā, ab*, with abl.

C

Caesar, *Caesar, -aris*, m.
call, *vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
call together, *convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
camp, *castra, -ōrum*, n.
can, *possum, posse, potuī*, —.
captive, *captīvus, -ī*, m.
capture, *capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus; expugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
care, *dīligentia, -ae*, f.
carefully, *dīligenter.*
carry, *ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus; portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
carry away, *efferō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātus.*
carry on war, *bellum gerō.*

carry out, *efferō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātus.*
Cassius, *Cassius, -ī*, m.
Catiline, *Catilīna, -ae*, m.
Cato, *Catō, -ōnis*, m.
cause, *causa, -ae*, f.
cavalry, pl. of *eques, -itis*, m.; *equitātus, -ūs*, m.
censure, *culpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
centurion, *centuriō, -ōnis*, m.
certain, adj., *certus, -a, -um.*
certain one, pron., *quīdam, quaedam, quiddam.*
character, pl. of *mōs, mōris*, m.
check, *sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus.*
chief, *prīnceps, -cipis*, m.
children, *līberī, -ōrum*, m.
choose, *dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus.*
Cicero, *Cicerō, -ōnis*, m.
citizen, *cīvis, -is*, m. and f.
city, *urbs, urbis*, f.
close, *claudō, -ere, clausī, clausus.*
cohort, *cohors, cohortis*, f.
collect, *cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, collātus; cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctus.*
come, *veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus.*
command, n., *imperium, imperī*, n.
command, v., *imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussus.*
command of (be in), *praesum, -esse, -fuī.*
commander-in-chief, *imperātor, -ōris*, m.
companion, *comes, -itis*, m. and f.
compel, *cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctus.*
conceal, *cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
concerning, *dē*, with abl.
confidence, *fidēs, -eī*, f.
conquer, *superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus.*
conqueror, *victor, -ōris*, m.
consider, *cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.*
construct, *īnstruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus.*
consul, *cōnsul, -ulis*, m.
contend, *contendō, -ere, -dī, -tentus.*
control, *imperium, imperī*, n.
country, *patria, -ae*, f.; *fīnēs, -ium*, m.
courage, *virtūs, -ūtis*, f.
cover, *compleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus.*
Crassus, *Crassus, -ī*, m.
cross, *trānseō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itus*
custom, *mōs, mōris*, m.

D

daily, adj., *cotīdiānus, -a, -um.*
daily, adv., *cotīdiē.*
danger, *perīculum, -ī*, n.
dare, *audeō, -ēre, ausus sum.*
daughter, *fīlia, -ae*, f.
day, *diēs, diēī*, m. and f.; **late in the day**, *multō diē;* **following day**, *posterō diē.*
daybreak, at, *prīmā lūce.*
dear, *cārus, -a, -um.*
death, *mors, mortis*, f.
deceive, *fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsus.*
decide, *cōnstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtus; statuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus.*
declare, *cōnfīrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
deep, *altus, -a, -um.*
defeat, *superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus.*
defend, *dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsus.*
defender, *dēfēnsōr, -ōris*, m.
defense of, *prō*, with abl.
delay, n., *mora, -ae*, f.
delay, v., *moror, -ārī, -ātus sum.*

deliver (a **speech**), *habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.*
deny, *negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
departure, *profectiō, -ōnis,* f.
deprive, *nūdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
desire, *cupiditās, -ātis,* f.
desirous, *cupidus, -a, -um.*
destroy, *dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus.*
detain, *retineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus.*
determine, *cōnstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus; statuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus.*
devastate, *populor, -ārī, -ātus sum.*
differ, *differō, -ferre, distulī, dīlātus.*
difficult, *difficilis, -e.*
difficulty, *difficultās, -tātis,* f.
diligence, *dīligentia, -ae,* f.
diligently, *dīligenter.*
direction, *pars, partis,* f.
disappoint, *fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsus.*
discover, *reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertus.*
dismiss, *dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus.*
ditch, *fossa, -ae,* f.
do, *agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus; faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus.*
draw up, *īnstruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus.*
dread, n., *timor, -ōris,* m.
dread, v., *vereor, -ērī, veritus sum.*
drive, *agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus; pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus.*
drive out, *expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus; pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus.*
dwell, *incolō, -ere, -uī, —.*

E

each, *quisque, quidque.*
eager, *cupidus, -a, -um.*
early, *prīmus, -a, -um* (with noun).
earth, *terra, -ae.,* f.
easy, *facilis, -e.*
easily, *facile.*
eight, *octō.*
either . . . or, *vel . . . vel, aut . . . aut.*
encamp, *cōnsīdō, -ere, -sēdī, —.*
encourage, *cohortor, -ārī, -ātus sum.*
end, *fīnis, -is,* m.
enemy, *hostis, -is,* m.; *inimīcus, -ī,* m.
engage (in **battle**), *committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus.*
enjoy, *fruor, fruī, frūctus sum.*
enlist, *cōnscrībō, -ere, -psī, -ptus.*
enroll, *cōnscrībō, -ere, -psī, -ptus.*
enter, *ineō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itus.*
epistle, *epistula, -ae,* f.
equal, *pār, paris.*
esteem, *honor, -ōris,* m.
every, *omnis, -e:* **every one,** *quisque, quidque.*
evident (it **is**), *cōnstat.*
evil, *malus, -a, -um.*
excel, *superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; praestō, -āre, -stitī, -stitus.*
excellent, *optimus, -a, -um.*
extend, *pateō, -ēre, -uī, —.*

F

face to face, *adversus, -a, -um.*
facing, *adversus, -a, -um.*
fail, *dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus.*
faith, *fidēs, -eī,* f.
faithful, *fīdus, -a, -um.*
far, *longē.*
farmer, *agricola, -ae,* m.

farther, *ulterior, -ius.*
father, *pater, -tris,* m.
fear, n., *timor, -ōris,* m.
fear, v., *timeō, -ēre, -uī,* —; *vereor, -ērī, -itus sum.*
few, *paucī, -ae, -a.*
field, *ager, agrī,* m.
fiercely, *ācriter.*
fight, *pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
fill, *compleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus.*
find out, *reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertus; cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus.*
fire, *ignis, -is,* m.
first, *prīmus, -a, -um.*
fit, *idōneus, -a, -um.*
five, *quīnque.*
flee, *fugiō, -ere, fūgī,* —.
fleet, *classis, -is,* f.
flight, *fuga, -ae,* f.
follow, *sequor, sequī, secūtus sum.*
following, *posterus, -a, -um.*
foot (at), *sub,* with abl.
foot, *pēs, pedis,* m.
foot-soldier, *pedes, -itis,* m.
for, *prō,* with abl.
force, *vīs, vīs,* f.
forces, *cōpiae, -ārum,* f.
forest, *silva, -ae,* f.
former, *prior, -ius.*
fortifications, *moenia, -ium,* n.; *mūnītiō, -ōnis,* f.
fortify, *mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus.*
four, *quattuor.*
free, v., *līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
free, adj., *līber, -era, -erum.*
frequent, *crēber, -bra, -brum.*
friend, *amīcus, -ī,* m.
friendly, *amīcus, -a, -um.*
frighten, *terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.*
from, *ā, ab, ē, ex,* with abl.
front of, *prō,* with abl.
full, *plēnus, -a, -um.*

G

Galba, *Galba, -ae,* m.
garrison, *praesidium, praesidī,* n.
gate, *porta, -ae,* f.
gather, *dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus.*
Gaul, *Gallia, -ae,* f.
Gauls, *Gallī, -ōrum,* m.
general, *imperātor, -ōris,* m.
German, *Germānus, -ī,* m.
get possession of, *potior, -īrī, -ītus sum.*
gift, *dōnum, -ī,* n.
girl, *puella, -ae,* f.
give, *dō, -are, dedī, datus.*
give up, *dēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus; trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditus.*
gladly, *libenter.*
glory, *glōria, -ae,* f.; *honor, -ōris,* m.
go, *eō, īre, iī (īvī), itūrus.*
go across, *trānseō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itus.*
go out, *exeō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itūrus.*
go to, *adeō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itus.*
god, *deus, -ī,* m.
goddess, *dea, -ae,* f.
good, *bonus, -a, -um.*
grain, *frūmentum, -ī,* n.
great, *magnus, -a, -um;* **so great**, *tantus, -a, -um;* **how great**, *quantus, -a, -um.*
greatly, *magnopere.*
guard, n., *cūstōs, -ōdis,* m.; *praesidium, praesidī,* n.
guard, v., *dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsus.*
guide, *dux, ducis,* m.

H

hand, *manus*, *-ūs*, f.
happen, *fīō*, *fierī*, *factus sum*.
harm, *noceō*, *-ēre*, *-uī*, —.
hasten, *properō*, *-āre*, *-āvī*, *-ātus*; *contendō*, *-ere*, *-dī*, *-tentus*.
have, *habeō*, *-ēre*, *-uī*, *-itus*.
he, *is*; often not expressed.
head, *caput*, *-itis*, n.
hear, *audiō*, *-īre*, *-īvī*, *-ītus*.
heavy, *gravis*, *-e*.
heavy baggage, *impedīmenta*, *-ōrum*, n.
height, *altitūdō*, *-inis*, f.
help, *auxilium*, *auxilī*, n.
Helvetians, *Helvētiī*, *-ōrum*, m.
hem in, *contineō*, *-ēre*, *-uī*, *-tentus*.
her, *eius*; *suus*, *-a*, *-um* (reflexive).
high, *altus*, *-a*, *-um*; *superus*, *-a*, *-um*.
hill, *collis*, *-is*, m.
himself, *suī* (reflexive); *ipse* (intensive).
hinder, *prohibeō*, *-ēre*, *-uī*, *-itus*.
hindrance, *impedīmentum*, *-ī*, n.
his, *eius*; *suus*, *-a*, *-um* (reflexive).
hither, *citerior*, *-ius*.
hold, *habeō*, *-ēre*, *-uī*, *-itus*; *teneō*, *-ēre*, *-uī*, —.
hold together, *contineō*, *-ēre*, *-uī*, *-tentus*.
home, *domus*, *-ūs*, f.; at home, *domī*.
honor, *honor*, *-ōris*, m.
hope, *spēs*, *-eī*, f.
horn, *cornū*, *-ūs*, n.
horse, *equus*, *equī*, m.
horseman, *eques*, *-itis*, m.
hostage, *obses*, *-idis*, m. and f.
hour, *hōra*, *-ae*, f.
house, *domus*, *-ūs*, f.
how, *quam*, *quōmodō*.
how great, *quantus*, *-a*, *-um*.
how long, *quam diū*.
how many, *quot*.
how much, *quantus*, *-a*, *-um*.
hurl, *iaciō*, *-ere*, *iēcī*, *iactus*.
hurl together, *coniciō*, *-ere*, *-iēcī*, *-iectus*.
hurry, *properō*, *-āre*, *-āvī*, *-ātus*.

I

I, *ego*, *meī*.
if, *sī*.
if not, *nisi*.
immediately, *statim*.
immortal, *immortālis*, *-e*.
in, *in*, with abl.
incredible, *incrēdibilis*, *-e*.
infantry, *peditēs*, *-itum*, m.
inferior, *īnferior*, *-ius*.
influence, n., *auctōritās*, *-tātis*, f.
influence, v., *addūcō*, *-ere*, *-dūxī*, *-ductus*.
inform, *certiōrem facere*; *ēdoceō*, *-ēre*, *-uī*, *-doctus*.
inhabit, *incolō*, *-ere*, *-uī*, —.
injure, *noceō*, *-ēre*, *-uī*, —.
injury, *iniūria*, *-ae*, f.
inner, *interior*, *-ius*.
instruct, *ēdoceō*, *-ere*, *-uī*, *-doctus*.
into, *in*, with acc.
invincible, *invictus*, *-a*, *-um*.
island, *īnsula*, *-ae*, f.
it, *is*, *ea*, *id*; often not expressed.

J

javelin, *pīlum*, *-ī*, n.
join, *coniungō*, *-ere*, *-iūnxī*, *-iūnctus*; *committō*, *-ere*, *-mīsī*, *-missus*.

journey, *iter, itineris*, n.; *via, -ae*, f.
judge, *iūdex, -icis*, m.
Julia, *Iūlia, -ae*, f.
Jura, *Iūra, -ae*, m.

K

keep from, *prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.*
keep in, *contineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus.*
keeper, *cūstōs, -ōdis*, m.
kill, *interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus; occīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus.*
king, *rēx, rēgis*, m.
know, *sciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus.*

L

labor, n., *labor, -ōris*, m.
labor, v., *labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
land, *terra, -ae*, f.
language, *lingua, -ae*, f.
large, *magnus, -a, -um.*
last, *extrēmus, -a, -um.*
law, *lēx, lēgis*, f.
lay waste, *vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; populor, -ārī, -ātus sum.*
lead, *dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus.*
lead across, *trādūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus.*
lead back, *redūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus.*
lead out, *ēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus.*
lead to, *addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus.*
leader, *dux, ducis*, m.
learn, *cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus.*
leave, *relinquō, -ere, relīquī, relictus.*
left, *sinister, -tra, -trum.*
legion, *legiō, -ōnis*, f.
length, *longitūdō, -inis*, f.
Lentulus, *Lentulus, -ī*, m.
less, *minor, minus.*
lest, *nē*, with subjunctive.
letter, *littera, -ae*, f.; *epistula, -ae*, f.
levy, *cōnscrībō, -ere, -psī, -ptus.*
liberty, *lībertās, -ātis*, f.
lie open, *pateō, -ēre, -uī, —.*
lieutenant, *lēgātus, -ī*, m.
life, *vīta, -ae*, f.
light, n., *lūx, lūcis*, f.
light, adj., *levis, -e.*
like, *similis, -e.*
line of battle, *aciēs, -ēī*, f.
line of march, *agmen, -minis*, n.
little, adv., *paulum.*
live, *vīvō, -ere, vīxī, vīctus.*
live in, *incolō, -ere, -uī, —.*
location, *locus, -ī*, m.
long, adj., *longus, -a, -um.*
long, adv., *diū.*
lord, *dominus, -ī*, m.
lose, *āmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus; dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus.*
love, *amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
love, *amor, -ōris*, m.
low, *īnferus, -a, -um.*

M

make, *faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus.*
man, *vir, -ī*, m.; *homō, -inis*, m. and f.
manage, *regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctus.*
manners, pl. of *mōs, mōris*, m.
many, *multī, -ae, -a.*
march, v., *iter facere.*
march, n., *iter, itineris*, n.
Marcus, *Mārcus, -ī*, m.
marsh, *palūs, -ūdis*, f.
master, *dominus, -ī*, m.; *magister, -trī*, m.
me, see *I*.
meantime, *intereā.*
meet, *occurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursus.*

meeting, *conventus, -ūs*, m.
memory, *memoria, -ae*, f.
merchant, *mercātor, -ōris*, m.
message, *nūntius, nūntī*, m.
messenger, *nūntius, nūntī*, m.
middle, *medius, -a, -um.*
midnight, *media nox.*
mile, *mīlle passūs.*
mistress, *domina, -ae*, f.
mother, *māter, -tris*, f.
mountain, *mōns, montis*, m.
move, *moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus.*
move forward, *prōmoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus.*
movement, *mōtus, -ūs*, m.
much, *multus, -a, -um.*
must, *dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus;* or pass. periphrastic.
my, *meus, -a, -um.*
myself, *meī.*

N

name, *nōmen, -inis*, n.
nation, *nātiō, -ōnis*, f.
native land, *patria, -ae*, f.
nature, *nātūra, -ae*, f.
near, *ad, prope.*
nearer, *propior, -ius.*
nearly, *paene, prope.*
neither, conj., *neque.*
neither, adj., *neuter, -tra, -trum.*
nevertheless, *tamen.*
new, *novus, -a, -um.*
next, *proximus, -a, -um.*
night, *nox, noctis*, f.
nine, *novem.*
no, *nūllus, -a, -um.*
no one, *nūllus, -a, -um; nēmō* —, dat. *nēminī*, m.
noise, *clāmor, -ōris*, m.
none, *nūllus, -a, -um; nēmō*, —, dat. *nēminī*, m.
nor, *neque.*
not, *nōn.*
not only . . . but also, *nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam.*
nothing, *nihil*, indecl., n.
number, *numerus, -ī*, m.
numerous, *crēber, -bra, -brum.*

O

oath, *iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī*, n.
obey, *pāreō, -ēre, -uī*, —.
of (concerning), *dē*, with abl.
often, *saepe.*
old, *senex, senis.*
on, *in*, with abl.
on account of, abl. of cause, or *ob* with acc.
on all sides, *undique.*
one, *ūnus, -a, -um.*
one hundred, *centum.*
only, *sōlus, -a, -um.*
opportunity, *facultās, -tātis*, f.; *potestās, -tātis*, f.
oppose, *resistō, -ere, restitī*, —.
or, *aut, vel, an.*
oration, *ōrātiō, -ōnis*, f.
order, *iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussus* (with acc.); *imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus* (with dat.).
other, *alius, -a, -ud.*
ought, *dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.*
our, *noster, -tra, -trum.*
out of, *ē, ex*, with abl.
outer, *exterus, -a, -um.*
over, *in*, with abl.
overcome, *superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*

P

pace, *passus, -ūs*, m.
pacify, *pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
part, *pars, partis*, f.

pass the winter, *hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
peace, *pāx, pācis,* f.
people, *populus, -ī,* m.
peril, *perīculum, -ī,* n.
permit, *licet, -ēre, licuit; patior, patī, passus sum.*
persuade, *persuādeō, -ēre, -sī, -sus.*
picture, *pictūra, -ae,* f.
pitch (camp), *pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus.*
place, n., *locus, -ī,* m.
place, v., *pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus.*
place before, *antepōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus.*
place in command of, *praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus; praepōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus.*
plan, *cōnsilium, cōnsilī,* n.
please, *placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.*
pledge, *fidēs, -eī,* f.
plenty, *cōpia, -ae,* f.
Pompey, *Pompēius, Pompēī,* m.
port, *portus, -ūs,* m.
possession (get), *potior, potīrī, potītus sum.*
possible (as), *quam* with superlative.
power, *potestās, -tātis,* f.
powerful, *potēns, potentis.*
praise, *laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
prefer, *mālō, mālle, māluī; antepōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus.*
prepare, *parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
presence, *cōnspectus, -ūs,* m.
present, *dōnum, -ī,* n.
private, *prīvātus, -a, -um.*
prohibit, *prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.*
promise, *polliceor, -ērī, -itus sum.*
promote, *prōmoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus.*
protection, *praesidium, praesidī,* n.
province, *prōvincia, -ae,* f.
pupil, *discipulus, -ī,* m.
put, *pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus.*
put to flight, *pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus.*

Q

queen, *rēgīna, -ae,* f.
quick, *celer, celeris, celere.*
quickly, *celeriter.*

R

rank, *ōrdō, -inis,* m.
rather (comparative).
read, *legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus.*
rear, *novissimum agmen.*
receive, *accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus.*
recently (most), *proximē.*
reckon, *exīstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
recruit, *novus mīles.*
region, *regiō, -ōnis,* f.
remain, *maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsus.*
remaining, *reliquus, -a, -um.*
Remi, *Rēmī, -ōrum,* m.
reply, *respondeō, -ēre, -dī, -spōnsus.*
report, n., *rūmor, -ōris,* m.
report, v., *nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; referō, -ferre, rettulī, -lātus.*
republic, *rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae,* f.
repulse, *reiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus.*
resist, *resistō, -ere, restitī,* —.
respects, in all, *omnibus rēbus.*
respond, *respondeō, -ēre, -dī, -sus.*
rest, *reliquus, -a, -um.*
restrain, *retineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus.*
retain, *retineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus.*
retreat, *recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus.*
return, *revertō, -ere, -tī, -sus; revertor, -ī, reversus sum.*

revolt, *mōtus, -ūs*, m.
revolution, *rēs novae.*
reward, *praemium, praemī*, n.
Rhine, *Rhēnus, -ī*, m.
Rhone, *Rhodanus, -ī*, m.
ridge, *iugum, -ī*, n.
right, *dexter, -tra, -trum.*
river, *flūmen, -inis*, n.
road, *via, -ae*, f.
Roman, n. *Rōmānus, -ī*, m.
Roman, adj., *Rōmānus, -a, -um.*
Rome, *Rōma, -ae*, f.
rose, *rosa, -ae*, f.
row, *ōrdō, -inis*, m.
royal power, *rēgnum, -ī*, n.
rule, *regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctus.*
rumor, *rūmor, -ōris*, m.
run, *currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursus.*

S

Sabinus, *Sabīnus, -ī*, m.
safe, *tūtus, -a, -um.*
safety, *salūs, -ūtis*, f.
sail, *nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
sailor, *nauta, -ae*, m.
sake of, *causā*, with genitive.
same, *īdem, eadem, idem.*
save, *servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
say, *dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus; loquor, loquī, locūtus sum.*
scarcity, *inopia, -ae*, f.
scatter, *differō, -ferre, distulī, dīlātus.*
scout, *explōrātor, -ōris*, m.
sea, *mare, -is*, n.
seashore, *lītus, -oris*, n.
see, *videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus.*
seek, *petō, -ere, -iī (-īvī), -ītus.*
seem, *videor, -ērī, vīsus sum.*
seize, *capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus; occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
select, *dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus.*
senate, *senātus, -ūs*, m.
senator, *senātor, -ōris*, m.
send, *mittō, -ere, mīsī, missus.*
send ahead, *praemittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus.*
send away, *āmittō, -ere, āmīsī, āmissus.*
send back, *remittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus.*
send in different directions, *dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus.*
Sequanian, *Sēquanus, -ī*, m.
servant, *servus, -ī*, m.; *serva, -ae*, f.
set fire to, *incendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsus.*
set free, *līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
set out, *proficīscor, -ī, profectus sum.*
setting, *occāsus, -ūs*, m.
settle, *cōnsīdō, -ere, -sēdī, —.*
seven, *septem.*
several, *complūrēs, -a.*
severe, *gravis, -e.*
sharp, *ācer, ācris, ācre.*
sharply, *ācriter.*
ship, *nāvis, -is*, f.
shore, *lītus, -oris*, n.
short, *brevis, -e.*
shout, *clāmor, -ōris*, m.
show, *doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctus; mōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
shut, *claudō, -ere, clausī, clausus.*
side, *pars, partis*, f.; *latus, -eris*, n.
sight, *cōnspectus, -ūs*, m.
signal, *signum, -ī*, n.
since, *cum.*
sister, *soror, -ōris*, f.
six, *sex.*
six hundred, *sescentī, -ae, -a.*

size, *magnitūdō, -inis*, f.
slaughter, *caedēs, -is*, f.
slave, *servus, -ī*, m.
slavery, *servitūs, -ūtis*, f.
slay, *occīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus; interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus.*
small, *parvus, -a, -um.*
so, *ita* (manner); *tam* (degree).
so great, *tantus, -a, -um.*
soldier, *mīles, -itis*, m.
some one, *aliquis, aliquid.*
some . . . others, *aliī . . . aliī.*
somewhat, *paulum.*
son, *fīlius, fīlī*, m.
speak, *loquor, loquī, locūtus sum.*
speech, *ōrātiō, -ōnis*, f.
speed, *celeritās, -tātis*, f.
spend winter, *hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
spy, *explōrātor, -ōris*, m.
stand, *stō, -āre, stetī, stātus.*
standard, *signum, -ī*, n.
star, *stella, -ae*, f.
state, *cīvitās, -tātis*, f.; *rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae*, f.
stone, *lapis, -idis*, m.
storm, v., *oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
storm, n., *tempestās, -tātis*, f.
stormy weather, *hiems, hiemis*, f.
story, *fābula, -ae*, f.
strength, *vīrēs, vīrium*, f.
strengthen, *cōnfīrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
strip, *nūdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
subdue, *pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
such, *tantus, -a, -um.*
Suessiones, *Suessiōnēs, -um*, m.
suffer, *patior, patī, passus sum.*
suitable, *idōneus, -a, -um.*
summer, *aestās, -tātis*, f.
summon, *convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
sun, *sōl, sōlis*, m.
sunset, at, *sōlis occāsū.*
superior, *superior, -ius.*
supplies, *commeātus, -ūs*, m.
supply, *cōpia, -ae*, f.
surpass, *superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; praestō, -āre, -stitī, -stitus.*
surrender, n., *dēditiō, -ōnis*, f.
surrender, v., *dēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus; trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditus.*
survive, *supersum, -esse, -fuī.*
suspicion, *suspīciō, -ōnis*, f.
swamp, *palūs, -ūdis*, f.
swift, *celer, celeris, celere; vēlōx, vēlōcis.*
swiftly, *celeriter.*
swiftness, *celeritās, -tātis*, f.
sword, *gladius, gladī*, m.

T

table, *mēnsa, -ae*, f.
take, *capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus; sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus.*
take back, *recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus.*
take by storm, *expugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
tall, *altus, -a, -um; longus, -a, -um.*
teach, *doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctus.*
teacher, *magister, -trī*, m.
tell, *nārrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
ten, *decem.*
tenth, *decimus, -a, -um.*
territory, pl. of *fīnis, -is*, m.
than, *quam.*
that, conj., *ut;* not expressed after verbs of saying, thinking, and the like.
that, demon. pron., *is, ea, id; ille, illa, illud.*

that of yours, *iste, ista, istud.*
that, rel. pron., *quī, quae, quod.*
theirs, gen. pl. of *is; suus, -a, -um,* (reflexive).
there, *ibi.*
thing, *rēs, reī,* f.
think, *putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum; exīstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
third, *tertius, -a, -um.*
this, *hic, haec, hoc.*
thousand, *mīlle.*
three, *trēs, tria.*
through, *per,* with acc.
throw, *iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactus.*
throw back, *reiciō, -ere, -iēcī -iectus.*
time, *tempus, -oris,* n.
tired, *dēfessus, -a, -um.*
to, *ad,* with acc.
toil, *labor, -ōris,* m.
tongue, *lingua, -ae,* f.
top, *summus, -a, -um.*
torture, *cruciātus, -ūs,* m.
toward, *ad,* with acc.
tower, *turris, -is,* f.
town, *oppidum, -ī,* n.
tree, *arbor, -oris,* f.
trench, *fossa, -ae,* f.
troops, *cōpiae, -ārum,* f.
trumpet, *tuba, -ae,* f.
trust, *crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus.*
try, *cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum.*
tumult, *tumultus, -ūs,* m.
twenty-five, *vīgintī quīnque.*
two, *duo, duae, duo.*
two hundred, *ducentī, -ae, -a.*

U

unconquerable, *invictus, -a, -um.*
under, *sub.*
understand, *intellegō, -ere, -ēxī, -lēctus.*
undertake, *incipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus.*
unfriendly, *inimīcus, -a, -um.*
unhappy, *miser, misera, miserum.*
unite, *coniungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus.*
unless, *nisi.*
unlike, *dissimilis, -e.*
unwilling, *nōlō, nōlle, nōluī.*
upon, *in* (with acc. or abl.).
upper, *superior, -ius.*
us, pl. of *ego.*
use, *ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum.*
useful, *ūtilis, -e.*
useless, *inūtilis, -e.*

V

vain (in), *frūstrā.*
valor, *virtūs, -ūtis,* f.
van, *prīmum agmen.*
Veneti, *Venetī, -ōrum,* m.
very (superlative).
victor, *victor, -ōris,* m.
victory, *victōria, -ae,* f.
view, *cōnspectus, -ūs,* m.
village, *vīcus, -ī,* m.
violence, *vīs, vīs,* f.
virtue, *virtūs, -ūtis,* f.
visit, *adeō, -īre, -īvī, -itus.*
voice, *vōx, vōcis,* f.

W

wage, *gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus.*
wall, *mūrus, -ī,* m.
want, *inopia, -ae,* f.
war, *bellum, -ī,* n.
warn, *moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.*
war-ship, *nāvis longa.*

watch, *vigilia, -ae,* f.; *cūstōs, -ōdis,* m.
water, *aqua, -ae,* f.
way, *via, -ae,* f.
we, *nōs.*
weapon, *tēlum, -ī,* n.
weary, *dēfessus, -a, -um.*
weather (stormy), *hiems, hiemis,* f.; *tempestās, -tātis,* f.
well, *bene.*
what, *quis, quid* (substantive); *quī, quae, quod* (adjective).
when, *cum, ubi.*
where, *ubi.*
wherefore, *cūr.*
whether, *utrum, num.*
which, *quī, quae, quod.*
which of two, *uter, utra, utrum.*
white, *albus, -a, -um.*
who, *quī, quae, quod* (relative); *quis, quid* (interrog.).
whole, *tōtus, -a, -um.*
why, *cūr, quamobrem.*
wide, *lātus, -a, -um.*
width, *lātitūdō, -inis,* f.
willing, *volō, velle, voluī.*
wind, *ventus, -ī,* m.
wing (of an army), *cornū, -ūs,* n.
winter, n., *hiems, hiemis,* f.
winter quarters, *hīberna, -ōrum,* n.
wisely, *sapienter.*
wish, *volō, velle, voluī.*
with, *cum,* with abl.
withdraw, *exeō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itūrus; redūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus.*
without, *sine,* with abl.
withstand, *sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus.*
woman, *fēmina, -ae,* f.
woods, *silva, -ae,* f.
word, *verbum, -ī,* n.
work, n., *opera, -ae,* f.
work, v., *labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
worn out, *dēfessus, -a, -um.*
worse, *peior, peius.*
would that, *utinam.*
wound, n., *vulnus, -eris,* n.
wound, v., *vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.*
wretched, *miser, -era, -erum.*
write, *scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus.*
wrong, *iniūria, -ae,* f.

Y

year, *annus, -ī,* m.
yet, *tamen.*
yoke, *iugum, -ī,* n.
you, *tū, tuī.*
young, *iuvenis, -e.*
young man, *adulēscēns, -centis,* m.
your, *tuus, -a, -um; vester, -tra, -trum.*
yourself, *tuī* (reflexive).

INDEX

References are to sections

Q

Smith, ... F.7365

Be... Latin

DATE	NAME	DATE